

## LATINE REDDENDA:

EXERCISES FROM

### THE BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK.

---

THE authors of the "Beginner's Latin Book" are of the opinion that a separate edition of the exercises for turning English into Latin will be a great convenience to teachers.

After the exercises have been done once with the help of the special vocabularies and under the direction and criticism of the teacher, it will be found useful to review them again and again, sometimes orally, sometimes in writing, with all helps in the way of rules, special vocabularies, and model sentences removed. The pupil is thus left to depend entirely upon his previous study and faithful attention to his teacher's instructions.

It is believed also that teachers who use other elementary Latin books will be glad to have, in cheap and convenient form, a set of exercises which they can use as supplementary to their regular work. For such, an edition is published with an English-Latin vocabulary.

Both editions have the *Glossarium Grammaticum* for the aid of those who wish to conduct recitations in Latin.

---

#### INTRODUCTION PRICES.

Edition with *Glossarium Grammaticum* (bound in paper), 20 cents.

Edition with *Glossarium Grammaticum* and English-Latin Vocabulary (bound in cloth), 30 cents.

Amey [redacted] Roseoe -  
Hillside Academy  
Glenville  
THE Nova Scotia  
475  
C69

# BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK.

BY

WILLIAM C. COLLAR, A.M.,  
HEAD-MASTER ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL,

AND

M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M.,  
PRINCIPAL CHAUNCY-HALL SCHOOL, BOSTON.

*Longum iter est per praecepta, breve et efficax per exempla.*  
*long the way is by rules short and easy by examples*

SENECA.

HALIFAX, N. S. :  
T. C. ALLEN & COMPANY.

BOSTON, U.S.A., AND LONDON :  
PUBLISHED BY GINN & COMPANY.

1899., 1900 + 1901 + 1912



ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL.

---

COPYRIGHT, 1886, BY  
WILLIAM C. COLLAR AND M. GRANT DANIELL.

---

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

TYPOGRAPHY BY J. S. CUSHING & Co., BOSTON, U.S.A.

---

PRESSWORK BY GINN & Co., BOSTON, U.S.A.

Viola Roscoe

{ no contraction

## PREFACE.

THE aim of this book is to serve as a preparation for reading, writing, and, to a less degree, for speaking Latin. It is designed primarily for boys and girls who are to begin the study of Latin at an early age; but as all who would get from Latin the best mental discipline, or lay a broad and firm foundation for Latin scholarship, must traverse pretty much the same road, and as Latin is begun in this country by most learners before any other foreign language is studied, a beginner's Latin book for those who take up the study at the age of ten or twelve need not be essentially different from one designed for learners of fourteen or fifteen. The most important difference would lie in the knowledge of the terminology and principles of English grammar that might be deemed an indispensable prerequisite. As a matter of fact, children come to the study of Latin with all degrees of ignorance of English grammar, and the minimum of necessary knowledge for the beginner is unquestionably very small. What minimum is considered essential for those who use this book, is indicated on page 6. It is hoped, therefore, that the contents of the book will justify its title; that it does not assume too much, and is not too difficult for the least mature who are likely to use it, and that it will not be found too much simplified,—too juvenile, for those who begin Latin in high schools and academies. Simplicity, clearness, and directness have been studied throughout. The system of inflected forms, which is seldom mastered, but the mastery of which is an indis-

36784

pensable condition of further pleasant, successful, and profitable study, is slowly but very fully developed, with the addition of abundant and varied exercises. For convenience, as well as on educational grounds, the paradigm of the verb is given in one block, instead of in fragments detached and dispersed, and everywhere the active and passive forms are placed side by side, to be compared, and learned as they are treated, simultaneously.

The idea underlying and controlling the plan is the maximum of practice with the minimum of theory, on the principle that the thorough acquisition of the elements of Latin must be more of art than science,—more the work of observation, comparison, and imitation, than the mechanical following of rules, or the exercise of analysis and conscious inductive reasoning.

The book contains :—

1. A brief introduction explaining the Roman and English methods of pronunciation, the necessary paradigms, an outline of the most important principles of syntax, and a large number of exercises for translation into English and into Latin, accompanied by short explanatory notes.

2. About twenty-five simple Latin dialogues, added to as many chapters. Some of these are on subjects of the lessons, and include a good many grammatical terms; some are on various topics of school and holiday life; and others on subjects historical and mythological.

3. Easy selections for translation, consisting besides a number of fables, of extracts from *Viri Romae*, *Nepos*, *Ovid*, *Catullus*, *Cæsar*, and *Cicero*, some interspersed with the lessons, others added at the end of the book.

Those who seek in a first Latin book a complete presentation of the facts and principles of the Latin language, will not be satisfied with this volume. But, in the opinion of the authors, there is no error in elementary instruction in Latin more common and more deplorable than that of failing to

discriminate between the relatively important and unimportant; between what is suited to the beginning and what to the more advanced stages of the study. It is not too much to say that a very great part of the barrenness and futility of the teaching and study of Latin in schools is due to this lack of discrimination, and to a false conception of thoroughness. It is not intended to imply that a hard and fast line can be drawn, still less is this book offered as a realization in this respect of the ideal. The ideal is never realized. But it has been the constant aim to make just this distinction: to determine everywhere, in the light of much observation and reflection and of long experience, what should be made the subject of immediate study, and what should be postponed; what is entitled to prominence, and what ought to be subordinated. Some excellent teachers think that the subjunctive mood should have no place in a preparatory Latin book; and undoubtedly the syntax of the subjunctive does involve too many and too great difficulties for such a work, if anything more than an outline of some commoner uses is attempted. On the other hand, the learner can hardly read any Latin without encountering forms of the subjunctive. The best way then seems to be to construct a large number of very short sentences for practice on the forms, which shall exhibit, in the briefest compass, some important and most frequently recurring uses of the mood, more especially because the ways of translating the subjunctive cannot be illustrated from the isolated forms in the paradigms, as in the other moods. This idea has been worked out in part in Chapter LIV., the forms having been previously left untranslated.

The *colloquia* have been added, not as an integral and necessary part of the lessons, but to serve as an incentive to the moderate use of Latin orally in recitation, and to afford convenient exercises for training the ear and for enlarging the vocabulary of the learner. The grammatical terms have

been drawn chiefly from the *Institutiones* of Rudimann. The *colloquium* on page 5 has been borrowed from Dr. H. Meurer's *Lateinisches Lesebuch*, and suggestions and parts of the materials for a very few others have been derived from the same source; also two or three of the passages for translation, and here and there some sentences in the exercises. Whoever examines these *colloquia* with a critical eye, will find some words which are confined to the vocabularies of grammarians and commentators, and a very few others employed in senses for which it would be embarrassing to be required to cite classical authority. For example, the word *pensum* is used often in the sense of a schoolboy's task, something to be done or learned, a lesson. This word doubtless meant strictly a spinner's task. But in classical Latin it had already approached the meaning *task* in general, and it is but a very slight extension of its application to employ it as it is in the *colloquia*. Such a moderate decanting of new wine into old bottles, it is hoped may be excused. Still if any teacher thinks that the Latinity of his pupils will be injured by the use of the *colloquia*, it is optional with him to omit them altogether, without losing the continuity of the lessons.

The complaint is very common, and its justice must be acknowledged, that first Latin books are often excessively and needlessly arid and wooden. Accordingly an effort has been made, while following a rigorously scientific method in the development of the successive subjects, to impart something of attractiveness, interest, freshness, and variety to the study of the elements of Latin by means of the *colloquia*, the choice of extracts for translation (introduced as early as possible), and the mode of treatment in every part, extending even to the choice of Latin words, and to the construction of many of the exercises.

Usage is not fixed in respect to the so-called principal parts of verbs, a few of the later school manuals giving the

nominative masculine of the perfect participle, instead of the supine, except in the case of neuter or intransitive verbs. It has been thought better in this book to follow the prevailing practice, only to treat the form that has been called the supine in this connection, not as the supine,—which in most cases it is not and cannot be, since, as is well known, only about 230 verbs can be proved to have a supine,—but as the neuter of the perfect participle.<sup>1</sup> Thus the learner is guarded against errors and is spared the perplexity of having to memorize now one, now another form.

It is hoped that this book can be finished and reviewed by the average learner in a year, and that the transition then to *Viri Romae*, *Nepos*, or *Cæsar* will not prove too difficult. More than two-thirds of the words used belong to the vocabulary of *Cæsar*, and only a trifle less than two-thirds to that of *Nepos*. In the case of young pupils it may be advisable to omit the translation of the English exercises into Latin, beginning with Chapter LV., till after the selections for translation at the end of the book have been read.

It remains to acknowledge the generous assistance of several scholars. Professor George M. Lane, of Harvard University, Professor George L. Kittredge, of Exeter Academy, N.H., George F. Forbes, A.M., and D. O. S. Lowell, A.M., both of the Roxbury Latin School, and Marshall W. Davis, A.B., of Thayer Academy, Braintree, read and criticised the work in manuscript. Mr. Forbes and Mr. Lowell also read the proof-sheets and made important suggestions and corrections. The authors feel especially indebted to John Tetlow, A.M., Head-Master of the Boston Girls' High and Latin Schools and author of *Inductive Lessons in Latin*, for critically reading the proof-sheets, and for materially contributing to the improvement of the book by

---

<sup>1</sup> This plan has been followed by Dr. R. F. Leighton in his *First Steps in Latin*.

the correction of errors, and by the suggestions of his conscientious and exact scholarship.

Thanks are due to Mr. J. S. Cushing, under whose personal direction the book has been printed, for the patience, care, and skill which he has constantly exercised to make the work typographically as faultless as possible.

WM. C. COLLAR.

M. GRANT DANIELL.

BOSTON, Sept. 1, 1886.

The authors desire to express their grateful acknowledgments to Miss Caroline O. Stone, of the Roxbury Latin School, and to Professor E. M. Wallank, of Fort Worth, Texas, for the correction of errors that had been overlooked in the first editions.

1889.

his con-

ose per-  
atience,  
o make

R.  
IELL.

nowledg-  
y Latin  
Worth,  
rlooked

## CONTENTS.

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. Introductory: Alphabet, Syllables, Quantity, Accent, Cases, Gender . . . . .	1-6
II. First Declension. — Direct Object. — Possessive Dative. — Indirect Object . . . . .	7-12
III. Second Declension. — Words in <i>us</i> and <i>um</i> . — Predicate Noun . . . . .	13-17
IV. First and Second Declensions. — Agreement of Adjectives. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 58 . . . . .	17-19
V. Second Declension. — Words in <i>er</i> . — Ablative of Agent . . . . .	20-21
VI. Second Declension. — Words in <i>er</i> . — Paradigms of Adjectives of First and Second Declensions . .	22-24
VII. The Verb <b>Sum</b> : Paradigm . . . . .	25-26
VIII. The Verb <b>Sum</b> : Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 80 . . . . .	27-29
IX. The Verb <b>Sum</b> : Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 85 . . . . .	30-31
X. First Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb <b>Amō</b> .	32-34
XI. First Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — Ablative of Means. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 95 . . . .	35-38
XII. First Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive . . . .	39-41
XIII. Third Declension: Mute Stems. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 111 .	41-43
XIV. Second Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb <b>Moneō</b>	44-46
XV. Second Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive .	46-49



CHAPTER	PAGE
XVI. Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 126 . . . . .	49-52
XVII. Review of First and Second Conjugations. — Ablative of Separation. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 133 . . . . .	53-55
XVIII. Third Declension: Liquid Stems. — Ablative of Time. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 139 . . . . .	56-58
XIX. Third Declension: Sibilant Stems. — Ablative of Manner. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 148 . . . . .	59-62
XX. Third Declension: Stems in <i>i</i> . — Apposition. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 162 . . . . .	62-67
XXI. Third Declension: Mixed Stems. — Rules of Gender. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 173 . . . . .	68-72
XXII. Third Declension: Review . . . . .	72-73
XXIII. Third Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb <b>Regō</b> , . . . . .	74-76
XXIV. Third Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 187. — Passage for Translation, 188 . . . . .	76-80
XXV. Third Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 195 . . . . .	80-84
XXVI. Review. — Passage for Translation, 199 . . . . .	84-86
XXVII. Irregular Adjectives. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 204 . . . . .	86-89
XXVIII. Comparison of Adjectives. — Declension of the Comparative. — Ablative with Comparatives. — Passage for Translation, 215 . . . . .	89-92
XXIX. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 222 . . . . .	93-96
XXX. Fourth Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb <b>Audiō</b> . . . . .	96-98
XXXI. Fourth Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive . . . . .	99-100

# CONTENTS.

xi

	PAGE
and	
ive.	
. . .	49-52
—	
. . .	53-55
of	
. . .	56-58
ive	
. . .	59-62
—	
. . .	62-67
of	
. . .	68-72
. . .	72-73
gō,	74-76
u-	
ni-	
as-	
. . .	76-80
u-	
—	
. . .	80-84
. . .	84-86
. . .	86-89
e	
. . .	89-92
. . .	93-96
. . .	96-98
99-100	

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXII. Fourth Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 234 . . . . .	101-103
XXXIII. Third Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb <b>Capiō</b> . . . . .	104-105
XXXIV. Third Conjugation: Verbs in <i>iō</i> . — Tenses of the Indicative; Present Imperative; Present and Perfect Infinitive . . . . .	106-107
XXXV. Review of the Four Conjugations. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 242 . . . . .	108-110
XXXVI. Fourth Declension . . . . .	110-112
XXXVII. Fifth Declension. — Ablative of Specification. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 261 . . . . .	112-115
XXXVIII. Special Paradigms. — Passage for Translation, . . . . .	115-116
XXXIX. Personal and Possessive Pronouns. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 269 . . . . .	117-119
XL. Determinative Pronouns. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 274 . . . . .	120-122
XLI. Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	123-125
XLII. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns. — Agreement of Relative . . . . .	126-130
XLIII. Review of Pronouns. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 290. . . . .	
Passage for Translation, 291 . . . . .	130-134
XLIV. Compounds of <b>Sum</b> . — Dative . . . . .	134-137
XLV. Deponent Verbs: First and Second Conjugations. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 302 . . . . .	137-140
XLVI. Deponent Verbs: Third and Fourth Conjugations. — Ablative with <b>Ūtor</b> , etc. — Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting . . . . .	140-142
XLVII. Numerals. — Accusative of Extent . . . . .	143-146
XLVIII. Irregular Verbs: <b>Volō</b> , <b>Nōiō</b> , <b>Maiō</b> . — Passage for Translation, 320 . . . . .	146-149
XLIX. Irregular Verbs: <b>Ferō</b> and its compounds . . . . .	149-152
L. Irregular Verbs: <b>Eō</b> , <b>Fiō</b> . — <i>Colloquium</i> , 332, . . . . .	152-156
LI. Prepositions. Expressions of Place. — Passage for Translation, 339 . . . . .	156-160

CHAPTER	PAGE
LII. Partitive Genitive. — Descriptive Ablative and Genitive. — Dative with Intransitives. — Dative of Service . . . . .	160-161
LIII. Derivation. — Comparison of Words . . . . .	162-164
LIV. The Subjunctive: Sequence of Tenses. — Forms. — Purpose Clauses with <b>Ut</b> and <b>Nē</b> . . . . .	164-171
LV. The Subjunctive: Relative of Purpose . . . . .	171-172
LVI. The Subjunctive: Result Clauses with <b>Ut</b> and <b>Nē</b> . . . . .	173-174
LVII. The Subjunctive: <b>Cum</b> Temporal; <b>Cum</b> Causal and Concessive. — Passage for Translation, 378 . . . . .	175-178
LVIII. The Subjunctive: Indirect Questions . . . . .	178-180
LIX. The Subjunctive: Wishes and Conditions. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 388 . . . . .	180-184
LX. The Subjunctive and Imperative. — Passage for Translation, 394 . . . . .	184-187
LXI. The Infinitive . . . . .	187-188
LXII. Accusative and Infinitive: Indirect Discourse. — Passage for Translation, 407 . . . . .	189-194
LXIII. Participles . . . . .	194-196
LXIV. Participles: Ablative Absolute . . . . .	197-199
LXV. Impersonal Verbs: <b>Miseret</b> , etc. — Intransitive Verbs in Passive. — Passage for Translation, 421 . . . . .	200-203
LXVI. Periphrastic Conjugations: Dative of Agent . . . . .	204-207
LXVII. Gerund. — Gerundive. — Supine . . . . .	208-210
<hr/>	
READING LESSONS: Letters. — Fables. — Cæsar's Two Invasions of Britain. — Customs and Habits of the Britons . . . . .	211-222
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY. . . . .	223-259
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	260-273
GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM . . . . .	274-276

PAGE

nd  
a-  
. 160-161  
. 162-164  
s.  
. 164-171  
. 171-172  
t  
. 173-174  
l  
,  
. 175-178  
. 178-180  
.  
180-184  
  
184-187  
187-188  
  
189-194  
194-196  
197-199  
  
200-203  
204-207  
208-210  
  
211-222  
223-259  
260-273  
274-276

It is suggested to teachers who are much pressed for time, that the following sections may be omitted without too serious loss : —

93, II.; 118, II.; 124; 127; 143, II.; 160; 171; 173; 178; 185, II.; 193, II.; 196; 197; 220, III.; 263; 274; 277, II.; 285; 288; 330; 345; 394; 421; 428.

Attention is also called to the note introductory to Chapter LV. Should it be necessary to curtail still more, it is recommended that it be done by occasionally omitting alternate sentences in the exercises to be translated into Latin.

W. C. C.

M. G. D.

BOSTON, June, 1891.

# BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK.

## CHAPTER I.

### INTRODUCTORY.

It is suggested to teachers who are not experienced in teaching Latin that this chapter may, perhaps, be most profitably used for reference. Pupils will catch pronunciation quickly from the lips of the teacher; and as they make mistakes, they will be interested in being referred to the rules of pronunciation. It is therefore advised that the teacher begin with the *Colloquium*, page 5, pronouncing slowly each sentence, the pupils following successively, and then together. In the same way the teacher might then construe literally.

**1. ALPHABET.**—The Latin alphabet has no *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.

**2. VOWELS.**—Vowels may be long (marked thus  $\bar{\phantom{a}}$ ), short (marked thus  $\acute{\phantom{a}}$ ), or common<sup>1</sup> (marked thus  $\text{^}$ ). The long vowel occupies double the time of the short in pronouncing.

**3. CONSONANTS.**—Of the consonants

The mutes are: P-mutes . . . **p, b, f**

T-mutes . . . **t, d**

K-mutes . . . **k, c, g, q (u)**

The liquids are . . . **l, m, n, r**

The sibilant is . . . **s**

The double consonants are . . . **x = cs,<sup>2</sup> z = ds.**

<sup>1</sup> That is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

<sup>2</sup> Also represents the combinations *hs, qu, gs, vs.*

## 4. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, ROMAN METHOD.

*Vowels.*

ā	is sounded like	the last <i>a</i> in	<i>papā'</i> .
ǣ	"	"	the first <i>a</i> in <i>papǣ'</i> .
ē	"	"	<i>e</i> in <i>they</i> .
ĕ	"	"	<i>e</i> in <i>met</i> .
ī	"	"	<i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> .
î	"	"	<i>i</i> in <i>pin</i> .
ō	"	"	<i>o</i> in <i>holy</i> .
ŏ	"	"	<i>o</i> in <i>wholly</i> . <sup>1</sup>
ū <sup>2</sup>	"	"	<i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i> .
ũ	"	"	<i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i> .

*Diphthongs.*

ae	is sounded like	<i>ai</i> in	<i>aisle</i> .
au	"	"	<i>ou</i> in <i>our</i> .
ei	"	"	<i>ei</i> in <i>eight</i> .
oe	"	"	<i>oi</i> in <i>boil</i> .
eu	"	"	<i>eu</i> in <i>feud</i> .
ui	"	"	<i>we</i> .

*Consonants.*

Consonants generally have the same sounds as in English. But observe the following:—

c	is sounded like	<i>c</i> in	<i>come</i> .
g	"	"	<i>g</i> in <i>get</i> .
j	"	"	<i>y</i> in <i>yes</i> .
s	"	"	<i>s</i> in <i>sun</i> . <sup>3</sup>
t	"	"	<i>t</i> in <i>time</i> . <sup>4</sup>
v	"	"	<i>w</i> in <i>wine</i> .
ch	"	"	<i>k</i> in <i>kite</i> .

<sup>1</sup> That is, as the word is commonly pronounced; the sound heard in *holy*, shortened.

<sup>2</sup> In *qu*, and also commonly in

*gu* and *su* before a vowel, *u* is a semi-vowel or consonant, and is pronounced like *w*.

<sup>3</sup> Never like *z*. <sup>4</sup> Never like *sh*.

## 5. SYLLABLES.

1. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: **ae-gri-tū'-dō**, *sickness*.

2. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the vowel following: **a-mā'-bi-lis**, *amiable*.

3. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: **im'-pro-bus**, *bad*; **ho-spes**, *guest*.

4. But in compound words the division must show the component parts: **ab'-est** (**ab**, *away*; **est**, *he is*), *he is away*.

5. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the one next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

## 6. QUANTITY.

1. A vowel is short before a vowel (with few exceptions) or *h*, also probably before *nt* and *nd*: **pō-ē'-ma**, *poem*; **grā'-tī-ac**, *thanks*; **nī'-hil**, *nothing*; **a'-mānt**, *they love*; **mo-nēn'-dus**, *to be advised*.

2. Diphthongs, vowels representing diphthongs, vowels resulting from contraction, and vowels followed by *nf*, *ns*, *j*, and commonly *gn*, are long: **in-ī'-quus** (**inaequus**), *unequal*; **cō'-gō** (**cōāgō**), *collect*; **cōn'-fe-rō**, *bring together*; **mēn'-sa**, *table*; **hū'-jus**, *of him*; **mā'-gnus**, *great*. In this book only long vowels are marked, unless for some special reason.



3. A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **vō'-cēs**, *voices*; **ae'-dēs**, *temple*.

4. A syllable is long if it has a short vowel followed by two or more consonants (except a mute followed by *l* or *r*), or by *x* or *z*; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: **sunt**,<sup>1</sup> *they are*; **tem'-plum**, *temple*; **dux**,<sup>1</sup> *leader*.

5. A syllable is common if it has a short vowel followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: **te'-nē-brae**, *darkness*. The vowel is pronounced short.

The above statements are useful in determining the place of the accent.

#### 7. ACCENT.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first: **tu'-ba**, *trumpet*.

2. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when the penult is long, otherwise on the antepenult: **prae-dī'-cō**, *foretell*; **prae'-di-cō**, *declare*; **ille'-cē-brae**, *snares*; **pa-ter'-nus**,<sup>2</sup> *paternal*.

(1) Several words, called *enclitics*, of which the commonest are **ne**, the sign of a question, and **que**, *and*, are appended to other words, and such words are then accented on the syllable preceding the **ne** or **que**: **amat'-ne**, *does he love?* **dōna'-que**, *and gifts*.

8. ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION. — By this method the above rules relating to syllables (5) and accent (7) are observed, and words are pronounced substantially as in English; but final *es* is sounded as in English *ease*, and final *ōs* (acc. plur.) as in *dose*.

<sup>1</sup> **u** pronounced like *oo* in *foot*.

the penult is short, the *syllable* is

<sup>2</sup> Here, though the *vowel* of

long by 6. 4.

The following *colloquium* may be used, if the teacher wishes, for practice, and to illustrate the foregoing statements. See introductory note, page 1.

## 9.

## COLLOQUIUM.

*Augustus.* Quid tibi vīs?      *What do you wish (for yourself)?*

*Iūlus.* Tēcum ambulāre velim.      *I should like to take a walk with you.*

*A.* Ego nōlō; domī manēre mālō.      *I don't want to; I prefer to stay at home.*

*I.* Cūr māvīs?      *Why do you prefer (that)?*

*A.* Ego et frāter vesperī cum patre ambulāre mālumus.      *My brother and I had rather take a walk at evening with our father.*

*I.* Cūr mēcum per silvās vagārī nōn vultis?      *Why don't you want to roam with me through the woods?*

*A.* Quod vesperī amoenitāte fruī mālumus quam sōlis ardōre.      *Because we had rather enjoy the pleasantness of evening than the heat of the sun.*

*I.* At jam saepe mēcum ambulāre nōluistī.      *But often before now you have not wanted to walk with me.*

*A.* Nōn rēctē dicis; nōn est causa cūr tēcum ambulāre nōlim; at cum hortus avī satis amplius sit et lacum silvamque contineat, ibi mālumus lūdere. Si vīs, nōbiscum venī.      *What you say is not true; there is no reason why I should not want to walk with you; but since grandfather's garden is large, and has a pond and grove, we had rather play there. If you like, come with us.*

## 10. CASES.

1. The names of the cases in Latin are: *nominative, vocative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative.*

2. The vocative is the case of address, but it does not differ in form from the nominative, except in the singular of nouns and adjectives in *us* of the second declension, and hence is not elsewhere given separately in the paradigms.

3. Another case, the *locative*, which denotes the place of an action, is mostly confined to proper names, and has the form of the ablative (sometimes dative) singular or plural, or of the genitive singular.

**11. GENDER.** — The gender of Latin nouns is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning, but much oftener by the termination.

1. Nouns denoting males are *masculine*: **agricola**, *farmer*; **Cicerō**, *Cicero*.

2. Nouns denoting females are *feminine*: **rēgīna**, *queen*; **Tullia**, *Tullia*.

3. Names of rivers, winds, and months are *masculine*: **Padus**, *Po*; **aquilō**, *north wind*; **Jānuārius**, *January*.

4. Names of countries, towns, islands, and trees, are *feminine*: **Āfrica**, *Africa*; **Rōma**, *Rome*; **Sicilia**, *Sicily*; **pirus**, *pear-tree*.

5. Indeclinable nouns are *neuter*: **fās**, *right*.

Other rules of gender will be given under the several declensions.

---

It is assumed that the learner knows the names and functions of the parts of speech in English, and the meanings of the common grammatical terms, such as *subject and predicate, case, mood, tense, voice, declension, conjugation*, etc. So much knowledge is absolutely essential for entering upon the study in the following lessons.

## CHAPTER II. 1.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

12. The stem<sup>1</sup> ends in *a*.

13. GENDER. — The gender is feminine; but see general rules, 11.

14.

## PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.V.	tub <b>a</b> , <i>a trumpet</i> .	N.V.	tub <b>ae</b> , <i>trumpets</i> .
G.	tub <b>ae</b> , <i>of a trumpet</i> .	G.	tub <b>ārum</b> , <i>of trumpets</i> .
D.	tub <b>ae</b> , <i>to or for a trumpet</i> .	D.	tub <b>īs</b> , <i>to or for trumpets</i> .
Ac.	tub <b>am</b> , <i>a trumpet</i> .	Ac.	tub <b>ās</b> , <i>trumpets</i> .
Ab.	tub <b>ā</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>with a trumpet</i> .	Ab.	tub <b>īs</b> , <i>with trumpets</i> .

1. For the reason why the vocative case is not given separately in the paradigm see 10. 2.

2. Examples of the locative case (10. 3) in this declension are: **Rōmae**, *at Rome*; **Āthēnīs**, *at Athens*.

15. TERMINATIONS. — These consist of case-endings, joined with the final letter of the stem. But sometimes the final letter of the stem is lost, and sometimes the case-ending.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.V.	<b>a</b> . . . . .	<b>ae</b>	
G.	<b>ae</b> . . . . .	<b>ārum</b>	
D.	<b>ae</b> . . . . .	<b>īs</b>	
Ac.	<b>am</b> . . . . .	<b>ās</b>	
Ab.	<b>ā</b> . . . . .	<b>īs</b>	

<sup>1</sup> The stem is the common base to which certain letters are added to express the relation of the word to other words.

<sup>2</sup> The ablative is variously ren-

dered, according to its connection. It is therefore recommended that, in declining words, no translation of the ablative be given till its use has been illustrated. See p. 20, n. 1.

16. Observe that the genitive and dative singular and nominative plural are alike; also the dative and ablative plural.

17. In Latin there is no article: *tuba* may be translated *a trumpet*, *the trumpet*, or *trumpet*.

18. The pupil should commit to memory the table of terminations.

## 2.

## 19.

## VOCABULARY.

## NOUNS.

*aquila*, F., *eagle*.  
*cauda*, F., *tail*.  
*columba*, F., *dove*.  
*filia*,<sup>1</sup> F., *daughter*.  
*puella*, F., *girl*.  
*rēgina*, F., *queen*.  
*rosa*,<sup>2</sup> F., *rose*.  
*via*, F., *road, street, way*.

ADJECTIVES.<sup>3</sup>

*alba*, *white*.  
*bona*, *good*.  
*dūra*, *hard*.  
*lāta*, *wide, broad*.  
*longa*, *long*.  
*māgna*, *large*.  
*mala*, *bad*.  
*parva*, *small, little*.

## VERBS.

*est*, (*he, she, it*) *is*.  
*sunt*, (*they*) *are*.

*habet*, (*he, she, it*) *has*.  
*habent*, (*they*) *have*.

20. Observe that in the above verb-forms the singular ends in *t*, and the plural in *nt*.

## NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

## 21.

## EXERCISES.

I.<sup>4</sup> 1. *Viae lātae*. 2. *Via lāta*. 3. *Viās lātās*. 4. *Viam lātām*. 5. *Cauda longa*. 6. *Caudās longās*. 7. *Caudam longam*. 8. *Caudae longae*. 9. *Columbās parvās*. 10. *Co-*

<sup>1</sup> *Filia* and *dea*, *goddess*, have a dative and ablative plural in *-ābus*, but this is mostly confined to legal and religious language.

<sup>2</sup> CAUTION: Do not pronounce *s* like *z*, if you use the Roman method. See page 2, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> The masculine and neuter of adjectives will be taken up in connection with nouns of the second declension.

<sup>4</sup> Observe that the adjective takes the case and number of the noun to which it belongs.

lumbae parvae. 11. Columba parva. 12. Columbam parvam. 13. Rosam albam. 14. Rosae albae. 15. Rosa alba. 16. Rosās albās. 17. Rēgīna mala. 18. Rēgīnās malās.

II. In like manner give the nominative and accusative in both numbers of the words meaning *little girl, great eagle, good queen, wide street*. Decline together **rosa alba, via longa, bona puella**.

## 3.

## 22.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Via est longa. 2. Dūra est via. 3. Puellae rosās habent. 4. Rēgīna columbam habet. 5. Rosae sunt albae. 6. Cauda est alba. 7. Caudae sunt longae. 8. Aquila caudam habet. 9. Puellae tubās habent. 10. Aquilae sunt māgnae.

II. 1. Via dūra est longa. 2. Puella bona rosam habet. 3. Columba caudam parvam habet. 4. Rēgīnae albās rosās habent. 5. Rosa parva est alba. 6. Aquila māgna est alba. 7. Tubae māgnae sunt longae. 8. Puella tubam longam habet. 9. Filiae bonae columbās habent. 10. Aquila māgna lātam caudam habet.

23. Notice the order of the words in the above sentences, and see wherein it differs from the order in English. You will find that—

1. The adjective is commonly placed after its noun. When placed before the noun it is for emphasis.

2. The verb commonly comes at the end of the sentence, but **est** and **sunt** are less frequently so placed.

3. The object commonly comes before the verb.

24. Observe that the subject is in the nominative case, and that the verb agrees with it in number, as in English.

25. Observe that the verb **habet** (**habent**) is transitive, and has its object in the accusative.

26. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.

## 4.

## 27.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. The roads are broad. 2. The streets are long. 3. Queens have doves. 4. The girl has a rose. 5. Eagles have tails. 6. The dove is white. 7. The girl has a trumpet. 8. The eagle is large. 9. The rose is white. 10. The girls are small.

II. 1. The long way is hard. 2. Good girls have roses. 3. Doves have small tails. 4. Great eagles have broad tails. 5. The good queen has a dove. 6. The little girls have large trumpets. 7. The little dove is white. 8. The queen is good. 9. The good queen has a little daughter. 10. A little girl has a white rose.

28. Answer the following in Latin:<sup>1</sup>—

1. Estne<sup>2</sup> via lāta? 2. Habetne puella rosam? 3. Habentne aquilae caudās longās? 4. Quid (*what*) habet rēgīna bona? 5. Quid habent puellae bonae? 6. Habentne columbae caudās?

## 5.

## 29.

## VOCABULARY.

## NOUNS.

**āla**, f., wing.

**Britannia**, f., Britain.

**Cornēlla**, f., Cornelia.

**Galba**, m., Galba.

**hōra**, f., hour.

**lūna**, f., moon.

## ADJECTIVES.

**multa**, much (pl. many).

**plēna**, full.

**prima**, first.

**secunda**, second.

## VERBS.

**amat**, (*he, she, it*) loves.

**amant**, (*they*) love.

**dat**, (*he, she, it*) gives.

**dant**, (*they*) give.

## CONJUNCTION.

**et**, and.

## ADVERB.

**nōn**, not.

<sup>1</sup> Every answer should form a complete sentence. To the question **est-ne via longa?** the answer should be **via est longa.**

<sup>2</sup> The particle **ne** is appended to some word in a sentence, after the verb, as a sign of a question, and is not to be translated by any separate word.

## GENITIVE AND DATIVE.

## 30.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Lūnae plēnae. 2. Lūnārum plēnārum. 3. Lūnīs plēnīs. 4. Hōrārum primārum. 5. Hōrīs primīs. 6. Fīlia Galbae.<sup>1</sup> 7. Fīliūs Cornēliae. 8. Rosīs albīs. 9. Columbae parvae. 10. Aquilārum ālārum.

II. 1. The queen's daughter. 2. The queens' daughters. 3. For the girl's rose. 4. Of the wings of the dove. 5. For Cornelia's daughter. 6. Of Britain. 7. For eagles. 8. Of the long streets. 9. For the little girls. 10. To the small trumpet.

## 6.

## 31.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Puellae (*dative*) est rosa. 2. Puella rosam habet. 3. Rēgīnīs sunt columbae. 4. Rēgīnae columbās habent. 5. Rosa puellae est alba. 6. Rosae puellārum sunt albae. 7. Galba fīliae<sup>2</sup> columbam dat. 8. Cornēlia puellis rosās dat. 9. Galba Cornēliae aquilam dat. 10. Galba et Cornēlia fīliās habent.

II. 1. Fīliae Cornēliae rosās albās habent. 2. Cornēlia puellae parvae rosam māgnam dat. 3. Est<sup>3</sup> hōra prīma lūnae plēnae. 4. Hōra est<sup>3</sup> secunda et lūna est plēna. 5. Māgna est rosa puellae parvae. 6. Galba puellae tubam parvam dat. 7. Columbae albae sunt fīliae bonae. 8. Multae et longae sunt Britanniae viae. 9. Britannia rēgīnam bonam habet. 10. Galba fīliīs bonae rēgīnae rosās multās dat.

32. The first sentence in I. is literally translated *to the girl is a rose*. Evidently the meaning is *the girl has a rose*, the same as that of the second. The dative thus used with **est** or **sunt** is called the **Dative of the Possessor**, or the **Possessive Dative**.

<sup>1</sup> Galba's daughter. The genitive is often to be translated by the English possessive.

<sup>2</sup> Translate, *his daughter*.

<sup>3</sup> It is.



**33.** Examine the seventh sentence in I. The transitive verb **dat** has a direct object, **columbam**; but it also has a dative limiting it, **filiae**. This dative is called an **Indirect Object**. Find other illustrations of the following:

**34. RULE OF SYNTAX.**—The indirect object is put in the dative.

7.

35.

## EXERCISES.

1. Before turning the following sentences into Latin, translate mentally 2, 6, and 10, in **31. II.**, taking the words as they stand. Observe that the indirect object precedes the direct.

2. In the following exercises try to cast each sentence into the Latin form before thinking of the Latin words. Thus, the sixth sentence will take the form, *the girl to the queen a rose gives*; and the eighth, *to a girl little is a rose little*, or *a girl little a rose little has*.

I. 1. It<sup>1</sup> is the first hour. 2. There<sup>2</sup> is a full moon. 3. The moon is full. 4. The dove is small. 5. The tail of the eagle is broad. 6. The girl gives the queen<sup>3</sup> a rose. 7. The queen's roses are white. 8.<sup>4</sup> A little girl has a little rose. 9. The first hour is a long one.<sup>2</sup> 10. Galba gives the girl's some<sup>2</sup> roses.

II. 1. The queen's daughter has a white rose. 2. The queen of Britain gives the girl a great rose. 3. It is the second hour of the full moon. 4. The daughters of Cornelia are small girls.<sup>5</sup> 5. The daughters of Cornelia are good little<sup>6</sup> girls.<sup>5</sup> 6. The little dove's tail is a long one. 7. The wings of eagles are long and broad. 8. Eagles have long, broad<sup>7</sup> wings. 9. The little dove has a white tail. 10.<sup>4</sup> Many doves have white tails.

<sup>1</sup> Omit. Compare **31. II. 3** and **4**.

<sup>2</sup> Omit.

<sup>3</sup> That is, *to the queen*. Compare **31. I. 7, 8, and 9**; and **31. II. 2, 6, and 10**.

<sup>4</sup> Translate in two ways, like

**31. I., 1** and **2, 3** and **4**.

<sup>5</sup> Nominative.

<sup>6</sup> In Latin, *good and little*.

<sup>7</sup> *Long and broad*.

## CHAPTER III. 1.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

**36.** The stem ends in *o*.

**37. GENDER.** — Nouns ending in *um* are neuter; most others are masculine; but see general rules for gender, **11. 4**.

**38. PARADIGMS.<sup>1</sup>**

<b>Hortus, garden.</b>		<b>Bellum, war.</b>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V. hort <u>us</u> , ē	hort <u>ī</u>	N.V. bell <u>um</u>	bell <u>a</u>
G. hort <u>ī</u>	hort <u>ōrum</u>	G. bell <u>ī</u>	bell <u>ōrum</u>
D. hort <u>ō</u>	hort <u>īs</u>	D. bell <u>ō</u>	bell <u>īs</u>
Ac. hort <u>um</u>	hort <u>ōs</u>	Ac. bell <u>um</u>	bell <u>a</u>
Ab. hort <u>ō</u>	hort <u>īs</u>	Ab. bell <u>ō</u>	bell <u>īs</u>

**39.** The vocative singular of nouns in *us* of this declension ends in *ē*.

1. As these are the only Latin nouns having a form for the vocative different from the nominative, this peculiarity is best regarded and treated as an exception.

**40.** Examples of the locative case (**10. 3**) in this declension are: **Corinthī**, at Corinth; **Thūriīs**, at Thurii.

**41. TERMINATIONS.**

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc.	Neut.	Masc.	Neut.
N.V. <u>us</u> , ē	<u>um</u>	<u>ī</u>	<u>a</u>
G. <u>ī</u>	<u>ī</u>	<u>ōrum</u>	<u>ōrum</u>
D. <u>ō</u>	<u>ō</u>	<u>īs</u>	<u>īs</u>
Ac. <u>um</u>	<u>um</u>	<u>ō</u>	<u>a</u>
Ab. <u>ō</u>	<u>ō</u>	<u>īs</u>	<u>īs</u>

**42.** Although the stem ends in *o*, the *o* does not appear except in the dat. and abl. singular and in the gen. and acc. plural.

<sup>1</sup> For peculiarities of nouns in *ius* and *iūm* see **79**.

## 2.

## 43.

## VOCABULARY.

## NOUNS.

*Masculine.*

**amicus**, friend.  
**clbus**, food.  
**discipulus**, pupil.  
**dominus**, lord, master.  
**equus**, horse.  
**servus**, slave or servant.

*Neuter.*

**bracchium**, arm. (79.)  
**dōnum**, gift.  
**ōvum**, egg.  
**pīlum**, javelin.  
**pōculum**, cup.  
**vinum**, wine.

## ADJECTIVES.

**dēfessus**, -a, -um, tired.  
**dūrus**, -a, -um, hard.  
**grātus**, -a, -um, pleasing.  
**novus**, -a, -um, new.

## VERBS.

**laudat**, (he, she, it) praises.<sup>1</sup>  
**laudent**, (they) praise.  
**portat**, (he, she, it) carries.  
**portant**, (they) carry.

**44.** Adjectives of the first and second declensions have three terminations to mark the different genders: **bonus**, masculine; **bona**, feminine; **bonum**, neuter. The feminine of the adjective is declined like **tuba**, the masculine like **hortus**, and the neuter like **bellum**. The full declension of **bonus** is given on page 24.<sup>2</sup>

1. Form the masculine and neuter of all the adjectives in 19 and 29.

## NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

## 45.

## EXERCISES.

1. 1. Amīcī bonī. 2. Amīcus bonus. 3. Amīcōs bonōs.
4. Amīcum bonum. 5. Pōculum novum. 6. Pōcula nova.
7. Equus dēfessus. 8. Equum dēfessum. 9. Equōs dēfessōs.
10. Equī dēfessī. 11. Pōcula māgna. 12. Servōs malōs.

<sup>1</sup> **Laudat** may be translated *praises, is praising, or does praise*. So of the other verb-forms.

<sup>2</sup> In declining adjectives, it will be found advantageous to decline each gender separately.

II. 1. In like manner form the nominative and accusative in both numbers of the words meaning *long*<sup>1</sup> *javelin*, *hard master*, *small horse*, *good wine*. Decline together **bonus cibus, servus malus, vinum novum**.

46. Examine the following sentences:—

**Galba est amicus**, *Galba is a friend*.

**Galba et Cornelia sunt amici**, *Galba and Cornelia are friends*.

1. Observe in these examples that the subject and predicate nouns are in the same case, just as in English.

47. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate referring to the same person or thing as the subject is in the same case.

### 3.

#### 48.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Dōnum est grātum**. 2. **Servus bonus est dēfessus**. 3. **Amicus pīlum portat**. 4. **Discipulus ovum dūrum habet**. 5. **Equus dēfessus cibum portat**. 6. **Dōna sunt pōcula parva**. 7. **Discipulus brachia longa habet**. 8. **Domini servōs laudant**. 9. **Dominus servum laudat**. 10. **Servi pōcula parva portant**. 11. **Novum equum laudat**. 12. **Equos novos laudant**.

II. 1. The servant has the cup. 2. The servants have the cups. 3. The pupil has wine and eggs. 4. The master has good food. 5. The gifts are long javelins. 6. The master and the slave are good friends. 7. The little horses are tired. 8. The new pupil has a big<sup>2</sup> cup. 9. They praise the second horse. 10. He is praising the good master. 11. They have some<sup>3</sup> good friends. 12. The slave carries the cups and wine.

<sup>1</sup> The adjective must be of the same gender as the noun.

<sup>2</sup> See page 19, note 1.

<sup>3</sup> Omit.

## 4.

## GENITIVE AND DATIVE.

## 49.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Amīcīs bonīs. 2. Amīcō bonō. 3. Amīcī bonī.  
4. Amīcōrum bonōrum. 5. Pōculō novō. 6. Pōculōrum  
novōrum. 7. Pōculīs novīs. 8. Equī dēfessī. 9. Equīs  
dēfessīs. 10. Equōrum dēfessōrum. 11. Equō dēfessō.  
12. Servīs bonīs.

II. In like manner, form the genitive and dative in both numbers of the words meaning *long javelin*, *hard master*, *small horse*, *good wine*. Decline together **bonus amīcus**, **discipulus malus**, **dōnum grātum**.

## 5.

## 50.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dōnum amīci bonī est grātum. 2. Servī bonī dominōrum malōrum sunt dēfessī. 3. Amīcīs discipulī dat<sup>1</sup> pīla multa. 4. Amīcō bonō discipulī sunt pīla multa. 5. Amīcī bonōrum discipulōrum pīla multa habent. 6. Equus dēfessus cibum dominī portat. 7. Longa sunt bracchia servī bonī. 8. Dōna dominī servīs sunt grāta. 9. Puellīs parvīs ōva alba dant.<sup>1</sup> 10. Servī rēgīnīs ōva aquilārum dant.

II. 1. The gift is pleasing to the good friend. 2.<sup>2</sup> The slave has the master's cup. 3.<sup>2</sup> The servants have the masters' cups. 4. The master gives the slave<sup>3</sup> a hard egg. 5. The food of the master is wine and eggs. 6. The master praises the little pupil's cup. 7. The tired horses are carrying gifts for the friend. 8. The girl has many new<sup>4</sup> friends. 9. The broad cup is pleasing to the new pupil. 10. The eagle's eggs are gifts of the good servant.

<sup>1</sup> When there is no subject expressed in the sentence, how is the verb to be rendered?

<sup>2</sup> Translate in two ways. See 32.

<sup>3</sup> Not accusative.

<sup>4</sup> Many and new.

## 6.

51. Answer the following in Latin:<sup>1</sup>—

1. Quid portat Jacōbus (*James*)? 2. Portatne dominō<sup>2</sup> vīnum et ōva? 3. Nōne<sup>3</sup> portat ōva columbae albae? 4. Laudatne caudam longam equi albi? 5. Quid, Jacōbe, habet dominī filia in (*in*) pōculō?

Form and answer five other questions in Latin.

## CHAPTER IV. 1.

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

## 52.

## VOCABULARY.

## NOUNS.

Masculine.<sup>4</sup>

agricola, -ae, farmer.  
nauta, -ae, sailor.  
poēta, -ae, poet.  
carrus, -ī, wagon.  
rēmus, -ī, oar.  
ventus, -ī, wind.

## Neuter.

frūmentum, -ī, grain.  
pābulum, -ī, fodder.

## ADJECTIVES.

clārus, -a, -um, famous.  
peritus, -a, -um, skilful.  
quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.  
quīntus, -a, -um, fifth.  
tertius, -a, -um, third.  
validus, -a, -um, strong, sturdy.

## PREPOSITION.

in (with ablative), in, on.  
in (with accusative), into, to.

53. In the preceding exercises an adjective qualifying a noun has had the same termination as the noun. Now observe the following examples: **agricola bonus**, a good farmer; **agricolae bonī**, of a good farmer; **agricolae bonō**, to or for a good farmer, etc. Here the adjective has a different termination from the noun. Since **agricola** is masculine, the adjective that goes with it must have the masculine form, as well as the same number and case.

<sup>1</sup> See note 1, p. 10.

<sup>2</sup> *for*, not *to*, the master.

<sup>3</sup> When **ne** is appended to **nōn**, the answer *yes* is expected. See

note 2, p. 10. So in English, a question asked with *not* expects the answer *yes*.

<sup>4</sup> See 11. 1.

**54. RULE OF SYNTAX.**—Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

**55.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Agricola<sup>1</sup> validi. 2. Agricolam validum. 3. Agricolās validōs. 4. Agricola validus. 5. Agricolae validō. 6. Agricolārum validōrum. 7. Agricola valide.

II. 1. A skilful sailor (*nom. and acc.*). 2. Skilful sailors (*nom. and acc.*). 3. Of a skilful sailor. 4. For a skilful sailor. 5. Skilful sailor (*voc.*). 6. For skilful sailors. 7. Of a famous poet. 8. Of famous poets. 9. Pleasing poets. 10. A pleasing poet (*nom. and acc.*).

**2.****56.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Hortus agricolae māgnus est. 2. Agricola validus hortum māgnum habet. 3.<sup>1</sup> Agricolae (*dat.*) est hortus māgnus. 4. Nautae rēmus longus est. 5. Poēta vīnum bonum agricolae perītī laudat. 6. Hōra est quārta. 7.<sup>2</sup> Lūna est plēna. 8. Pābulum equī albī est frūmentum. 9. Dominus servum perītum laudat. 10.<sup>3</sup> Nautae (*dat.*) grāta sunt ōva et vīnum agricolae bonī.

II. 1. Ō<sup>4</sup> agricola valide, carrus est plēnus frūmentī. 2. Domine bone, secunda hōra est, et discipulus est dēfessus. 3. Hortōs agricolārum perītōrum laudant. 4. Pōculum māgnum est vīnī plēnum. 5. Agricola bonus equō validō dat pābulum.

<sup>1</sup> See 32.

<sup>2</sup> We may translate, *there is a full moon, it is a full moon, or the moon is full.* There is nothing in Latin answering to our *it* and *there* used in this way at the beginning of a sentence.

<sup>3</sup> Translate this sentence without changing the order of the words, and you will feel the emphasis imparted to *nautae* from its position.

<sup>4</sup> Ō sometimes accompanies the vocative.

with their

3. Agri-  
lae validō.

ilful sailors  
or a skilful  
ful sailors.  
9. Pleasing

ola validus  
ortus māg-  
um bonum  
Lūna est  
Dominus  
sunt ōva et

frūmentī.  
s est dē-  
t. 4. Pō-  
onus equō

tence with-  
ler of the  
eel the em-  
utae from  
panies the

## 3.

## 57.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. The poet likes<sup>1</sup> the farmer's wine. 2.<sup>2</sup> Farmers have large wagons and strong horses. 3. Skilful sailors like a good breeze. 4. In the garden there<sup>3</sup> are many roses. 5. The poet and his<sup>3</sup> daughter are in the wagon. 6. The horse carries the farmer's grain. 7. There is wine in the little girl's cup. 8. There are many<sup>4</sup> small girls in the street. 9. Galba carries fodder for the horses. 10. The food of the little dove is grain.

II. 1. My (Ō) good friend, the master's cup is full. 2. The servant gives the queen<sup>5</sup> a large cup. 3. The strong sailors are carrying javelins in their<sup>3</sup> arms. 4. In the strong wagon is good fodder for the farmer's horses. 5. In the poet's gardens there are many friends. 6. Farmers have horses, wagons, doves, eggs, and<sup>3</sup> wine.

## 4.

## 58.

## COLLOQUIUM.

Datne<sup>6</sup> Carolus (*Charles*) amīcō cymbam (*boat*)?

Carolus amīcō cymbam et rēmōs dat.

Quid in cymbā habet Carolus?

Carolus rēmum et pīlum in cymbā habet.

Quota (*what*) hōra est?<sup>7</sup> Hōra est quīnta.

Quid in carrō habet rūsticus (*countryman*) validus?

Quid in pōculō dēsīderat (*wants*) rūsticus dēfessus?

<sup>1</sup> Occasionally words occur in the English exercises which are purposely not given as definitions in the vocabularies, but by a little thought the pupil will understand what Latin word is meant.

<sup>2</sup> Translate in two ways.

<sup>3</sup> Omit.

<sup>4</sup> Many and small.

<sup>5</sup> Not accusative.

<sup>6</sup> Remember that **ne** is appended as the sign of a question.

<sup>7</sup> What time is it? or, What is the time of day?



# CHAPTER V. 1.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

59.

## PARADIGM.

Puer, boy.		TERMINATIONS.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. puer	puerī	—	ī
G. puerī	puerōrum	ī	ōrum
D. puerō	puerīs	ō	īs
Ac. puerum	puerōs	um	ōs
Ab. puerō <sup>1</sup>	puerīs	ō	īs

60.

## VOCABULARY.

gener, -erī, M., son-in-law.	tener, -era, -erum, tender.
liberi, -ōrum, (pl.) M., children.	sextus, -a, -um, sixth.
socer, -erī, M., father-in-law.	ā (ab), prep. w. abl., by, away from.
vir, virī, M., man, hero.	amātur, (he, she, it) is loved.
asper, -era, -erum, rough.	amantur, (they) are loved.
liber, -era, -erum, <sup>2</sup> free.	laudātur, (he, she, it) is praised.
miser, -era, -erum, poor, wretched.	laudantur, (they) are praised.
puerī, general word for children.	
liberī, children of free parents.	

61. *The farmer is praised by the queen* would be expressed in Latin thus: **Agricola ā (or ab) rēgīnā laudātur**; and *The queen is praised by the farmer*, thus: **Rēgīna ab (not ā) agricolā laudātur**.

Observe that in the first sentence, **rēgīnā**, and in the second, **agricolā**, denotes the person by whom the thing is done (the agent); also, that these words are in the ablative, and are preceded by **ā** or **ab**. The ablative thus used, together with the preposition, answers the question *by whom?* and is called the **ABLATIVE OF AGENT**.

<sup>1</sup> To translate **puerō**, "with, from, by a boy," as is commonly done, is wholly wrong. *With a boy* would be **cum puerō**; *from, or by a boy*, **ā puerō**. See p. 7, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> Decline the masculine of adjectives in **er** in this lesson like **puer**. The full declension is given on p. 24.

**62. RULE OF SYNTAX.** — The agent with passive verbs is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*, — *ab* before vowels or *h*, *ā* or *ab* before consonants.

**63.** Read again **53** and **54**, then add the proper terminations of the adjectives, and translate the following:—

I. 1. Generī bon-, gener bon- (*nom. and voc.*). 2. Vir māgn-, ā virō māgn-, 3. Ab agricolā dēfess- agricolae miser-. 4. Ā rēgīnā tener-. 5. Puerī asper-.

II. 1. By the bad father-in-law. 2. By the rough sailor. 3. By the children of the hero. 4. The free men (*nom. and acc.*). 5. Of the wretched sons-in-law.

## 2.

**64.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Gener virī servus est. 2. Puer bonus ab amīcō laudātur. 3. Liberī ā nautā asperō amantur. 4. Puella tenera columbās parvās amat. 5. Columbae parvae ā puellā tenerā amantur. 6. Miserī servī ā dominō bonō laudantur. 7.<sup>1</sup> Lātā in viā sunt puerī multī et asperī. 8. Equī validī agricolae ā liberīs laudantur. 9. Fīlia socerī est misera. 10. Virī filiās poētae laudant.

II. 1. The sons-in-law of the men are farmers. 2. Good men are praised by their<sup>2</sup> friends. 3. The boy is loved by the rough sailors. 4. The sixth boy is a new one.<sup>2</sup> 5. The tired children are in the farmer's wagon. 6. The tender dove is loved by the little girl. 7. Poor slaves are not praised by their rough masters. 8. The strong man is in the poet's garden. 9. The heroes are praised by the pupils. 10. They love the daughter of the poor sailor.

<sup>1</sup> Adjective, preposition, noun, the three are combined. What is is often the order where, as here, the English order? <sup>2</sup> Omit.

## CHAPTER VI. 1.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

65.

## PARADIGM.

Ager, <i>field</i> .		TERMINATIONS.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. ager	ag-ī	—	ī
G. agrī	agrōrum	ī	ōrum
D. agrō	agrīs	ō	īs
Ac. agrum	agrīs	um	ōs
Ab. agrō	agrīs	ō	īs

Observe that the above terminations are the same as those on page 20. Wherein does the declension of **ager** differ from that of **puer**?

66.

## VOCABULARY.

aper, apri, M., *boar*.culter, cultri, M., *knife*.faber, -bri, M., *smith*.liber,<sup>1</sup> -bri, M., *book*.magister, -tri, M., *master*.minister, -tri, M., *servant*.aeger, aegra, aegrum,<sup>2</sup> *sick*.niger, nigra, nigrum, *black*.pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,  
*beautiful, handsome*.ruber, rubra, rubrum, *red*.septimus, -a, -um, *seventh*.magister, *a superior, director*; hence, *master of a school, etc.*dominus (43), *master of a household, slaves, etc.*minister, *an inferior, attendant, servant*.servus (43), *a serving man, slave*.

67. Most nouns in *er* are declined like **ager**, and most adjectives in *er* like **aeger**. The most important nouns and adjectives that keep the *e* before *r* in all the cases were given in the vocabulary, 60, and should now be committed to memory.

68. Decline together **equus niger, bonus faber, aper asper, vir aeger**.

<sup>1</sup> Distinguish **liber**, *free*, from **liber**, *book*.<sup>2</sup> See p. 24.

## 2.

## 69.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Socer est faber. 2. Magister est discipulī amīcus. 3. Generī virī sunt ministrī. 4. Culter puerō est grātus. 5. Librī magistrī discipulīs sunt grātī. 6. Vinum rubrum ā fabrō dēfessō amātur. 7. Librī poētae ā magistrō aman- tur. 8. Puellae pulchrae virīs rosās rubrās dant. 9. Nauta cultrum longum habet. 10.<sup>1</sup> Librōs multōs in bracchiīs por- tat puer.

II. 1. The fathers-in-law are smiths.<sup>2</sup> 2. The masters are loved by their pupils. 3. The man's son-in-law is a servant. 4. The knives are pleasing to the little boy. 5. The pretty<sup>3</sup> cups are liked by the boys and girls. 6. A girl gives a man<sup>4</sup> a beautiful rose. 7. The sailors have many long knives. 8. The children of the master are carrying<sup>5</sup> the books in their arms. 9. The smith's son-in-law has children. 10. There is a rough boar in the farmer's field.

## 70. Answer the following in Latin:—

1. Quis (*who*) est amīcus poētae? 2. Quis est socer Carolī? 3. Ubi (*where*) sunt discipulī magistrī? 4. Amantne hodiē (*to-day*) pēnsū (*task*)? 5. Nōne Carolus columbae frūmentum hodiē dat? 6. Quae (*who, fem.*) rosās rubrās habet? 7. Quis bracchia longa habet? 8. Quis est vir liber? 9. Ubi est equus rūstici? 10. Quae puellās pulchrās habet? 11. Rēginane puellās pulchrās habet? 12. Ubi sunt Jacōbī amīci?

<sup>1</sup> What is peculiar in the order of the words? Translate as the words stand, and see what word is made emphatic by its position.

<sup>2</sup> What case is used after *est*

and *sunt*? Compare the first three sentences in I. See rule, 47.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 19, note 1.

<sup>4</sup> Not accusative.

<sup>5</sup> Not passive. See p. 14, note 1.

## ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

71.

## PARADIGMS.

*Bonus, good.*

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Sing. N.V.	bon us, ē	bon a	bon um
G.	bon ī	bon ae	bon ī
D.	bon ō	bon ae	bon ō
Ac.	bon um	bon am	bon um
Ab.	bon ō	bon ā	bon ō
Plur. N.V.	bon ī	bon ae	bon a
G.	bon ōrum	bon ārum	bon ōrum
D.	bon īs	bon īs	bon īs
Ac.	bon ōs	bon ās	bon a
Ab.	bon īs	bon īs	bon īs

*Liber, free.*

Sing. N.V.	liber	liber a	liber um
G.	liber ī	liber ae	liber ī
D.	liber ō	liber ae	liber ō
Ac.	liber um	liber am	liber um
Ab.	liber ō	liber ā	liber ō
Plur. N.V.	liber ī	liber ae	liber a
G.	liber ōrum	liber ārum	liber ōrum
D.	liber īs	liber īs	liber īs
Ac.	liber ōs	liber ās	liber a
Ab.	liber īs	liber īs	liber īs

*Aeger, sick.*

Sing. N.V.	aeger	aegra	aegr um
G.	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr ī
D.	aegr ō	aegr ae	aegr ō
Ac.	aegr um	aegr am	aegr um
Ab.	aegr ō	aegr ā	aegr ō
Plur. N.V.	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegra
G.	aegr ōrum	aegr ārum	aegr ōrum
D.	aegr īs	aegr īs	aegr īs
Ac.	aegr ōs	aegr ās	aegra
Ab.	aegr īs	aegr īs	aegr īs

## CHAPTER VII.

THE IRREGULAR VERB *Sum* (stems *es*, *fu*), *I am*.

**72.** Principal parts, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*.

**73.** For convenience the inflection of *sum* is given in full. Directions will be given from time to time as to what parts are to be learned.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>sum</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>I am</i> .	<i>sumus</i> , <i>we are</i> .
2. <i>es</i> , <i>thou art</i> . <sup>2</sup>	<i>estis</i> , <i>you are</i> .
3. <i>est</i> , <i>he (she, it) is</i> .	<i>sunt</i> , <i>they are</i> .

## IMPERFECT.

1. <i>eram</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>I was</i> .	<i>erāmus</i> , <i>we were</i> .
2. <i>erās</i> , <i>thou wast</i> .	<i>erātis</i> , <i>you were</i> .
3. <i>erat</i> , <i>he was</i> .	<i>erant</i> , <i>they were</i> .

## FUTURE.

1. <i>erō</i> , <sup>4</sup> <i>I shall be</i> .	<i>erimus</i> , <i>we shall be</i> .
2. <i>eris</i> , <i>thou wilt be</i> .	<i>eritis</i> , <i>you will be</i> .
3. <i>erit</i> , <i>he will be</i> .	<i>erunt</i> , <i>they will be</i> .

## PERFECT.

1. <i>fuī</i> , <i>I have been, was</i> .	<i>fuimus</i> , <i>we have been, were</i> .
2. <i>fuistī</i> , <i>thou hast been, wast</i> .	<i>fuistis</i> , <i>you have been, were</i> .
3. <i>fuit</i> , <i>he has been, was</i> .	{ <i>fuērunt</i> , or <i>fuēre</i> , <i>they have been, were</i> .

## PLUPERFECT.

1. <i>fueram</i> , <i>I had been</i> .	<i>fuērāmus</i> , <i>we had been</i> .
2. <i>fuērās</i> , <i>thou hadst been</i> .	<i>fuērātis</i> , <i>you had been</i> .
3. <i>fuerat</i> , <i>he had been</i> .	<i>fuērant</i> , <i>they had been</i> .

<sup>1</sup> *Sum* for *esum*.

<sup>2</sup> Or, *you are*, as in the plural. But in translating into Latin be careful to use the singular form

of the verb, if by you one person only is meant.

<sup>3</sup> *Eram* for *esam*.

<sup>4</sup> *Erō* for *esō*.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. fuerō, *I shall have been.*
2. fueris, *thou wilt have been.*
3. fuerit, *he will have been.*

## PLURAL.

- fuerimus, *we shall have been.*
- fueritis, *you will have been.*
- fuerint, *they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.<sup>1</sup>

## PRESENT.

- | SING.  | PLUR. |
|--------|-------|
| 1. sim | sīmus |
| 2. sis | sītis |
| 3. sit | sint  |

## IMPERFECT.

- | SING. | PLUR.   |
|-------|---------|
| essem | essēmus |
| essēs | essētis |
| esset | essent  |

## PERFECT.

1. fuerim
2. fueris
3. fuerit

- fuerimus
- fueritis
- fuerint

## PLUPERFECT.

- fuissem
  - fuissem
  - fuissem
- fuissemus
  - fuissetis
  - fuisissent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

2. es, *be thou.*

## PLURAL.

- este, *be ye.*

## FUTURE.

2. estō, *thou shalt be.*
3. estō, *he shall be.*

- estōte, *ye shall be.*
- suntō, *they shall be.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT, esse, *to be.*

PERFECT, fuisse, *to have been.*

FUTURE, futūrus esse, *to be about to be.*

## PARTICIPLE.

futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*

<sup>1</sup> No meanings can be given to the subjunctive that are not misleading. Its forms are therefore

better left untranslated until its use has been illustrated. The subjunctive is treated on pp. 164-186.

## CHAPTER VIII. 1.

## THE VERB Sum.

**74.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive.

**75.**

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Sunt, erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Erō, eram, sum. 5. Erās, es, eris. 6. Estis, eritis, erātis. 7. Es, este. 8. Esse.

II. 1. I am, we are, I was, we were, I shall be, we shall be. 2. He was, they were, he is, they are, he will be, they will be. 3. You (*sing.*) will be, are, were. 4. You (*plur.*) will be, are, were. 5. Be ye, be thou. 6. To be.

## 2.

From this point the vocabularies follow the exercises, and it is recommended that the pupil go through the exercises mentally, referring to the vocabularies for the meanings of words. Before *writing* the translations into Latin the vocabularies should be reviewed, but the task of committing to memory will then be found an easy one.

**76.**

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Inimicus pilum habet. 2. Inimicō est pilum. 3. Somnus puerō erit grātus. 4. Līberī agricolae erunt dēfessī. 5. Minerva āram in oppidō habēbat. 6. Minervae in oppidō erat āra. 7. In terrā virī, in aquā rānae sunt. 8. Inimicī erāmus incolārum malōrum. 9. Oculī domini dūrī erant magnī et nigrī. 10.<sup>1</sup> Dominō dūrō erant oculi magnī et nigrī. 11.<sup>1</sup> Dominus dūrus oculōs magnōs et nigrōs habēbat. 12. Cōsiliū fabri perītī bonum erat.

<sup>1</sup> What word is better left untranslated, though needed in the Latin?



II. 1.<sup>1</sup> The farmer had a wagon. 2. I shall be the man's friend. 3. There<sup>2</sup> is a large town on<sup>3</sup> the island. 4. There was a red egg on the table. 5. Children were carrying the food of the men. 6. A boy gave a smith<sup>4</sup> some<sup>2</sup> javelins. 7. In the town are enemies of the inhabitants. 8. They were praising the words of the sturdy farmer. 9. The poet's gifts will be pleasing to Minerva. 10. Boys, be ye strong and skilful.

## 3.

## 77.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Eritis validō in carrō agricolae perītī. 2. Erās nōnus discipulus et filius poētae erat octāvus. 3. Ō miser serve, tū (*thou*) es inimicus pulchrae Minervae. 4. Amīcus erō Minervae māgnae. 5.<sup>5</sup> Agricolīs arātra dūra et valida dabant virī. 6. In Britannīa sunt oppida multa et māgna. 7. Puer bone, es amīcus equī miserī.

II. 1. A girl gave a sick sailor<sup>6</sup> some wine and water. 2. The wine she carried in a pretty<sup>7</sup> cup. 3. He praised the maiden's<sup>7</sup> pretty cup and the ruddy wine. 4. The maiden and the sailor were inhabitants of Britain. 5. Britain is a large island, and has handsome towns.

## 78.

## VOCABULARY.

aqua, -ae, F., *water*.

āra, -ae, F., *altar*.

arātrum, -i, N., *plough*.

cōnstillum, -i, N., *advice, plan*.

incola, -ae, M. & F., *inhabitant*.

inimicus, -i, M., *enemy*.

insula, -ae, F., *island*.

mēsa, -ae, F., *table*.

<sup>1</sup> Translate in two ways.

<sup>2</sup> Omit. See p. 18, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> See vocabulary, 52.

<sup>4</sup> Indirect object, see 33 & 34.

<sup>5</sup> Compare the order with that

of 69. I. 10, and see the note there. What name is given to the dative agricolis?

<sup>6</sup> See 69. II. 6, and note.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 19, note 1.

**Minerva**, -ae, F., *Minerva*, goddess of wisdom.  
**nōnus**, -a, -um, adj., *ninth*.  
**octāvus**, -a, -um, adj., *eighth*.  
**oculus**, -ī, M., *eye*.

**oppidum**, -ī, N., *town*.  
**rāna**, -ae, F., *frog*.  
**somnus**, -ī, M., *sleep*.  
**terra**, -ae, F., *earth, land*.  
**verbum**, -ī, N., *word*.

**amābat**, (*he she it*) *was loving, loved*.  
**dabat**, (*he, she, it*) *was giving, gave*.  
**habēbat**, (*he, she, it*) *was having, had*.  
**laudābat**, (*he, she, it*) *was praising, praised*.  
**portābat**, (*he, she, it*) *was carrying, carried*.

**amābant**, *they were loving, loved*.  
**dabant**, *they were giving, gave*.  
**habēbant**, *they were having, had*.  
**laudābant**, *they were praising, praised*.  
**portābant**, *they were carrying, carried*.

**79.** Nouns in *ius* and *ium* contract the genitive ending *ii* to *i*: **cōnsili**. **Filius** (*son*) and **genius** (*guardian deity*), and proper nouns in *ius*, drop the *e* of the vocative: **fili**, **Mercuri**, *Mercury*. But the word is accented as if the longer form were used.

## 4.

## 80.

## COLLOQUIUM.

Nōne aquam in pōculō habet faber?

Minimē. Faber in pōculō habet novum vīaum.  
no

Dēsideratne Galba somnum grātum?  
wishes

Certō, nam hodiē est Galba dēfessus.  
certainly for to-day

Ubi est amīcus agricolae pigrī?  
lazy

Est in oppidō, nam nōn amābat amīcī cōnsilium.

Ubi sunt arma agricolārum validōrum?  
tools

Agricolārum equī, carrī, arātra sunt in agrō.

## CHAPTER IX. 1.

## THE VERB Sum.

**81.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive. See pp. 25 and 26.

**82.**

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Fuit, fuerat, fuerit. 2. Fuērunt, fuerant, fuerint.  
3. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 4. Fuerō, fueram, fuī.  
5. Fuerās, fueris, fuistī. 6. Fuistis, fueritis, fuerātis.  
7. Fuisse.

II. 1. I have been, we have been, I had been, we had been, I shall have been, we shall have been. 2. He has been, they have been. he had been, they had been, he will have been, they will have been. 3. You (*sing.*) will have been, had been, have been. 4. You (*plur.*) will have been, had been, have been. 5. To have been.

## 2.

**83.**

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. In Graeciā erant templa multa. 2. In Graeciā erant templa deōrum et deārum. 3. Aurum erat in statuā Minervae. 4. Minervae fuit statua māgna et clāra. 5. Minerva statuam māgnam et clāram habēbat. 6. Multae et pulchrae erant Graeciae statuae. 7. Nōn alta erant pulchra Graeciae templa. 8. Fluvī Graeciae nōn lātī et altī erant. 9. Clārī fuērunt multī Graeci. 10. Graecōrum antīquōrum erit glōria sempiterna.

II. 1. They had been in the towns of the Greeks. 2. The monuments of Greece were temples and statues. 3. The statue of Minerva had a shield and spear. 4. The arms of the Greeks were shields and spears. 5. The gods had many statues in Greece. 6. The red roses will be pleasing to the

queen. 7. The man's children are in the street. 8. He has been on the farmer's horse. 9. The children are carried in the poet's arms. 10. Many inhabitants of Britain have been skilful sailors.

## 84.

## VOCABULARY.

**altus**, -a, -um, adj., *deep, high*.

**antiquus**, -a, -um, adj., *ancient*.

**arma**, -ōrum, n. (plur.), *arms*.

**aureus**, -a, -um, adj., *of gold, golden*.

**aurum**, -ī, n., *gold*.

**dea**, -ae, f., *goddess*. p. 8, n. 1.

**decimus**, -a, -um, adj., *tenth*.

**deus**, -ī, m., *god* (262).

**fluvius**, -ī, m., *river* (79).

**glōria**, -ae, f., *glory*.

**Graecia**, -ae, f., *Greece*.

**Graecus**, -ī, m., *a Greek*.

**hasta**, -ae, f., *spear*.

**monumentum**, -ī, n., *monument*.

**scūtum**, -ī, n., *shield*.

**sempiternus**, -a, -um, adj., *everlasting*.

**statua**, -ae, f., *statue*.

**templum**, -ī, n., *temple*.

## 3.

## 85.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## DUO PUERĪ.

two

Ubi est Carolus hodiē? Nōnne est in scholā?

Charl.

school

Minimē. Est in fluviō; nam habet cymbam parvam, et libenter nāvigat.

likes sailing

Unde Carolō est cymba? Where did C. get a boat?

whence to Charles is a boat.

Ab avunculō, nam Carolus ab avunculō amātur.

from uncle

Quid in cymbā portat Carolus?

Nesciō; procul dubiō prandium; etenim in animō

I don't know

doubtless

luncheon

for

mind

habet . . .

Quid in animō habet?

Valē, bone amīce, crās patēbit.

good by

to-morrow

it will be open = the secret will be out.

26

# CHAPTER X.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

86.

**Ā-VERBS.****Amō** (stem **amā**), *love*.PRINCIPAL PARTS: <sup>1</sup> **amō**, **amāre**, **amāvī**, **amātum**.

## INDICATIVE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT.

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.*

am <b>ō</b>	am <b>āmus</b>
am <b>ās</b>	am <b>ātis</b>
am <b>at</b>	am <b>ant</b>

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*I am loved, etc.*

am <b>or</b>	am <b>āmur</b>
am <b>āris, or-re</b>	am <b>āminī</b>
am <b>ātur</b>	am <b>antur</b>

## IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.*

am <b>ābam</b>	am <b>ābāmus</b>
am <b>ābās</b>	am <b>ābātis</b>
am <b>ābat</b>	am <b>ābant</b>

*I was loved, etc.*

am <b>ābar</b>	am <b>ābāmur</b>
am <b>ābāris, or-re</b>	am <b>ābāminī</b>
am <b>ābātur</b>	am <b>ābantur</b>

## FUTURE.

*I shall love, etc.*

am <b>ābō</b>	am <b>ābimus</b>
am <b>ābis</b>	am <b>ābitis</b>
am <b>ābit</b>	am <b>ābunt</b>

*I shall be loved, etc.*

am <b>ābor</b>	am <b>ābimur</b>
am <b>āberis, or-re</b>	am <b>ābiminī</b>
am <b>ābitur</b>	am <b>ābuntur</b>

## PERFECT.

*I have loved, I loved, etc.*

amāv <b>ī</b>	amāv <b>imus</b>
amāv <b>istī</b>	amāv <b>istis</b>
amāv <b>it</b>	amāv <b>ērunt, or-re</b>

*I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amāt <b>us</b>	{ <b>sum</b>	amāt <b>ī</b>	{ <b>sumus</b>
	{ <b>es</b>		{ <b>estis</b>
	{ <b>est</b>		{ <b>sunt</b>

<sup>1</sup> Certain forms of the verb are called, from their importance, *principal parts*. These forms are the first person of the present indicative, showing the *present stem*; the present infinitive, showing the *conjugation*; the first person of the

perfect indicative, showing the *perfect stem*; and the perfect participle, showing the *participle stem*. The neuter of the participle is given, as intransitive verbs have the perfect participle only in that gender.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had loved, etc.**I had been loved, etc.*

amāv eram	amāv erāmus	amāt us	{	eram	amāt ī	{	erāmus
amāv erās	amāv erātis						
amāv erat	amāv erant						

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amāv erō	amāv erīmus	amāt us	{	erō	amāt ī	{	erīmus
amāv eris	amāv eritis						
amāv erit	amāv erint						

SUBJUNCTIVE.<sup>1</sup>

## PRESENT.

am em	am ēmus	am er	am ēmur
am ēs	am ētis	am ēris, or -re	am ēminī
am et	am ent	am ētur	am entur

## IMPERFECT.

am ārem	am ārēmus	am ārer	am ārēmur
am ārēs	am ārētis	am ārēris, or -re	am ārēminī
am āret	am ārent	am ārētur	am ārentur

## PERFECT.

amāv erim	amāv erīmus	amāt us	{	sim	amāt ī	{	sīmus
amāv eris	amāv eritis						
amāv erit	amāv erint						

## PLUPERFECT.

amāv issem	amāv issēmus	amāt us	{	essem	amāt ī	{	essēmus
amāv issēs	amāv issētis						
amāv isset	amāv issent						

<sup>1</sup> See p. 26, note.

## IMPERATIVE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT.

am **ā**, *love thou.*am **āre**, *be thou loved.*am **āte**, *love ye.*am **āminī**, *be ye loved.*

## FUTURE.

am **ātō**, *thou shalt love.*am **ātor**, *thou shalt be loved.*am **ātō**, *he shall love.*am **ātor**, *he shall be loved.*am **ātōte**, *you shall love.*am **antō**, *they shall love.*am **antor**, *they shall be loved.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. am **āre**, *to love.*am **ārī**, *to be loved.*PERF. am **āvisse**, *to have loved.*am **ātus esse**, *to have been loved.*FUT. am **ātūrus esse**, *to be about to love.*am **ātum irī**, *to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. am **āns, -antis**, *loving.*\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>1</sup>FUT. am **ātūrus, -a, -um**, *about to love.*GER.<sup>2</sup> am **andus, -a, -um**, *to be loved.*\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>1</sup>PERF. am **ātus, -a, -um**, *having been loved.*

## GERUND.

G. am **andī**, *of loving.*D. am **andō**, *for loving.*Ac. am **andum**, *loving.*Ab. am **andō**, *by loving.*

## SUPINE.

Ac. am **ātum**, *to love.*Ab. am **ātū**, *to love, to be loved.*<sup>1</sup> Observe that the Latin has neither a perfect active nor a present passive participle.<sup>2</sup> Gerundive, sometimes less correctly called *future passive participle*.

## CHAPTER XI. 1.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

**87.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **amō**.<sup>1</sup>

**88.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Amātis, amābātis, amābitis. 2. Amātur, amābātur, amābitur. 3. Amat, amābat, amābit. 4. Amantur, amābantur, amābuntur. 5. Amō, amor. 6. Amās, amāris. 7. Amāmus, amāmur. 8. Amābitis, amābiminī. 9. Amābat, amābātur. 10. Amāre, amārī.

II. 1. He loves, he is loved. 2. He will love, he will be loved. 3. They were loved, they were loving. 4. I shall love, I shall be loved. 5. You (*sing.*) love, you are loved. 6. They loved, they were loving, they will love. 7. You (*plur.*) are loving, you were loving, you will be loving. 8. Love (*sing.*), be loved. 9. To be loved, to love.

**2.****89.****EXERCISES.**

**Laudō, praise; portō, carry; superō, conquer.**

I. 1. Laudat, portat, superat. 2. Laudātur, portātur, superātur. 3. Laudābitur, portābitur, superābitur. 4. Laudāsne? portābāsne? superābisne? 5. Laudāmur, portābāmur, superābimur. 6. Laudā, portā, superā. 7. Superāre, portāre, laudārī. 8. Nōn superāminī, nōn portābāminī, nōn laudābiminī. 9. Laudāre, portāminī, superāte. 10. Laudor, portābar, superābor.

II. 1. Thou praisest, you carry, he conquers. 2. He is praised, they are carried, they will be conquered. 3. I praise, I was carrying, I shall conquer. 4. Thou art praised, thou

<sup>1</sup> Notice how frequently the letter *r* marks a form as passive. Where is it absent in the first three tenses?



art carried, thou art conquered. 5. Praise (thou), carry, conquer. 6. He will be conquered, he was praised, it is carried. 7. To conquer, to be carried, to be praised. 8. Do we carry? are we conquered? are we praised? 9. I am not carried, he was not conquered, they are not praised. 10. Thou wilt praise, he will be praised, they were carried.

**90.** *Examine the following sentences:—*

1. **Agricola ā rēgīnā laudātur**, *the farmer is praised by the queen.*
2. **Agricola rēgīnae verbīs laudātur**, *the farmer is praised by the words of the queen.*
3. **Servī gladiīs armantur**, *the slaves are being armed with swords.*

On the first example see **61** and **62**. In the second and third, observe that there is no **ā** or **ab** used with **verbīs** and **gladiīs**.

These ablatives, **verbīs** and **gladiīs**, answer the questions *by what? with what? by means of what?* The ablative thus used is called the **Ablative of Means or Instrument**.

**91. RULE OF SYNTAX.**—**Means and Instrument are expressed by the ablative without a preposition.**

### 3.

#### 92.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Puellae rosās amant. 2. Rosae albae ā puellīs amantur. 3. Homērus virōs Graecōs laudābat. 4. Ab<sup>1</sup> Homērō laudābantur virī Graecī. 5. Oppidum nōminābant Rōmam.<sup>2</sup> 6. Oppidum Rōma<sup>3</sup> nōminābātur. 7. Servōs gladiīs armābimus. 8. Inimīcus gladiō vulnerātur. 9. Inimīcus ā Galbā vulnerātur. 10. Ō Rōmānī, servōs hastīs armāte.

II. 1. Sing, good boy. 2. Many goddesses were loved by the Greeks. 3. The boy will put the doves to flight.

<sup>1</sup> Before words beginning with  
use **ab**, not **ā**.

<sup>2</sup> Predicate accusative.

<sup>3</sup> Predicate nominative. See **47**.

4. The doves will be put to flight by the boy. 5. We shall invite friends and enemies. 6. Friends and enemies will be invited. 7. The Romans were not loved by the Greeks. 8. You will be summoned by a golden<sup>1</sup> trumpet. 9. The slaves will be armed with javelins. 10. The black horse was wounded by a spear.

## 4.

## 93.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dum nōs (*we*) labōrāmus, cantat caecus poēta.  
2. Quid (*what*) cantābat caecus poēta dum labōrābāmus?  
3. Dum in oppidō ambulant dominī, servī labōrant in agrō.  
4. Puerī vigilābunt dum somnus grātus virōs dēfessōs recreābit. 5. Nauta dēfessus aquā frigidā recreābitur. 6. Equī dēfessī pābulō bonō recreābuntur. 7. Verba bona discipulī ā magistrō laudābantur. 8. Mūrī altī ab oppidānīs aedificābantur. 9.<sup>2</sup> Multōs et altōs mūrōs aedificābant oppidānī. 10. Nōn ā pigrīs virīs oppidum aedificābātur.

II. 1. While the man was working, the boy was singing.  
2. While the master is being refreshed with sleep, the servant is watching. 3. Pleasant sleep refreshes the weary boy.  
4. By pleasant sleep the boy will be refreshed. 5. A high wall is being built by the townsmen. 6. A famous Roman was called the Sword<sup>3</sup> of Rome. 7. They called a famous Roman the Sword<sup>4</sup> of Rome. 8. The tired farmer is refreshed by food and sleep.<sup>5</sup> 9. We will walk in the streets of the town, while the farmers are working<sup>6</sup> in the fields. 10. Sing, O blind poet, while we toil.

<sup>1</sup> *Golden*, aureā or ex aurō. The material of which a thing is made is expressed in Latin either by an adjective or by ē (*ex*) with the ablative. How is it in English?

<sup>2</sup> Compare, for order, 77. I. 5, and 69. I. 10, and note.

<sup>3</sup> *Sword*, in the nominative case, just as if *was* took the place of *was called*. See 92. I. 6, and note.

<sup>4</sup> *Sword*, in the accusative case. See 92. I. 5, and note.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. 5 and 6 in I.

<sup>6</sup> Imitate 4 in I.

## 94.

## VOCABULARY.

aedificō, 1, *build*.  
 ambulō, 1, *walk*.  
 armō, 1, *arm*.  
 cantō, 1, *sing*.  
 fugō, 1, *put to flight*.  
 invitō, 1, *invite, summon*.  
 labōrō, 1, *work, toil*.  
 laudō, 1, *praise*.  
 nōminō, 1, *name, call*.  
 portō, 1, *carry*.  
 recreō, 1, *refresh*.  
 superō, 1, *surpass, conquer*.  
 vigilō, 1, *watch*.  
 vulnerō, 1, *wound*.

aqua,<sup>1</sup> -ae, F., *water*.  
 aureus, -a, -um, adj., *golden*.  
 caecus, -a, -um, adj., *blind*.  
 dum, adv., *while*.  
 ē (ex), prep. w. abl., *out of, from*.  
 frigidus, -a, -um, adj., *cold*.  
 gladius, -ī, M., *sword (79)*.  
 Homērus, -ī, M., *Homer*.  
 Itālia, -ae, F., *Italy*.  
 mūrus, -ī, M., *wall*.  
 oppidānus, -ī, M., *townsman*.  
 piger, -gra, -grum, adj., *lazy*.  
 Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome*.  
 Rōmānus, -ī, M., *a Roman*.

## 5.

## 95.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## PATER ET FĪLIOLUS.

Father and little son.

P. Quae, mī filiōle, in pēnsō hodiernō tractābantur?  
what my little son lesson to-day's treat or discuss

F. Tractābantur cāsus ablātīvus atque verbum amō.  
case and

P. Quid significat Anglicē verbum amō?  
means in English

F. Amō significat "love."

P. Dē ablātīvō quoque mihi nārrā.  
about also me tell

F. Rēgulam dē ablātīvō tibi nārrābō.  
rule you

P. Rēgulamne tibi dabat magister?

F. Certē, rēgulam dē ablātīvō instrūmentī. Cum ablātīvō instrūmentī nunquam pōnitur praepositiō; ante ablātīvum agentis semper pōnitur praepositiō ā vel ab.  
certainly instrument with never is put preposition before of agent always or

P. Optimē, mī puer; tibi erit mālum rubrum.  
well done apple

<sup>1</sup> Words are sometimes purposely repeated in the vocabularies.

## CHAPTER XII. 1.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

**96.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **amō**.

**97.** The compound tenses are formed by combining forms of the verb **sum** with the perfect passive participle. The participle (declined like **bonus**) agrees in gender and number with the subject: **amāta est**, *she was loved*; **amātī sunt**, *they were loved*.

#### 98. EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Amāvī**, **amāverat**, **amāverit**. 2. **Amātus est**, **amātus erat**, **amātus erit**. 3. **Amāverunt**, **amāverant**, **amāverint**. 4. **Amāvī**, **amātus sum**. 5. **Amāverāmus**, **amātī erāmus**. 6. **Amāveritis**, **amātī eritis**. 7. **Amāvisse**, **amātus esse**.

II. 1. You loved, you have been loved. 2. You had loved, you had been loved. 3. You will have loved, you will have been loved. 4. He has loved, he has been loved. 5. We had loved, we had been loved. 6. To have been loved, to have loved.

#### 2.

#### 99. EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Laudātus est**, **portātus est**, **superātus est**. 2. **Laudāvitne?** **portāveratne?** **superāveritne?** 3. **Portāvistī**, **laudāvistis**, **superāvit**. 4. **Superāverās**, **portāveris**, **laudāveritis**. 5. **Laudātī estis**, **portāta sunt**, **superātus es**. 6. **Nōne laudātae sunt?** **nōne portātae estis?** **nōne superātae sumus?** 7. **Portāvī**, **laudātus sum**, **superātus eram**. 8. **Nōn laudāvimus**, **nōn portāverimus**, **nōn superāverō**. 9. **Laudāvisse**, **portāvisse**, **superāvisse**. 10. **Portātus esse**, **superātus esse**, **laudātus esse**.

II. 1. They have carried, we have been praised, you have been conquered. 2. Have I praised? have you been carried? had they conquered? 3. We had been carried, I shall have

praised, they will have been conquered. 4. You had not carried, thou hadst not praised, thou hadst not been conquered. 5. To have been conquered, to have praised, to have carried. 6. I had praised, I had been conquered, I (*fem.*) had been carried. 7. Has it not been praised? will it not have been carried? have they not been conquered? 8. We (*fem.*) had been carried, thou wilt have praised, he conquered. 9. They praised, you carried, we conquered. 10. I was praised, thou wast conquered, it was carried.

## 3.

**100.** In Latin, the words for *my, thy, your, our, his, her, its,* and *their*, are very often omitted when they are not emphatic. Accordingly, in the exercises to be turned into Latin, for the present, leave these words untranslated.

**101.****EXERCISES.**

**I.** 1. Pūgna fortūnā mūtātā est. 2. Fortūna pūgnam mūtāvit. 3. Rōmānī Graccōs superāverant. 4. Graecī ā Rōmānīs superatī erant. 5. Virī multī et ēgregiī agrōs arāvērunt. 6. Ministrī scūtīs armātī sunt. 7. Agricola ēgregius ā ministrō miserō vituperātus est. 8. Agrī lātī ab agricolīs arātrō māgnō arātī sunt. 9. Magister malōs discipulōs vituperāvit. 10. Poēta pūgnās et victōriās virōrum clārōrum cantāvit.

Read again the explanations and rules on pp. 20, 21, and 36.

**II.** 1. An eagle changed the fortune of the battle. 2. We shall witness a battle on the broad river. 3. Many good men will have been blamed by their enemies. 4. The boys will have recited to their master. 5. The land in Italy has been ploughed with iron ploughs. 6. The master freed his pupils from their hard tasks (*abl.*). 7. The goddess Minerva has been praised by many poets. 8. The victories of famous men have been sung by the poets. 9. The tyrant armed a great number of slaves with swords.

fin  
See

N.V.  
G.  
D.  
Ac.  
Ab.

N.V.  
G.  
D.  
Ac.  
Ab.

## 102.

## VOCABULARY.

arō, 1, *plough*.liberō, 1, *free, set free*.mūtō, 1, *change*.recitō, 1, *read aloud, recite*.spectō, 1, *look at, witness*.superō, 1, *surpass, conquer*.vituperō, 1, *blame, censure*.ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., *excellent*.ferreus, -a, -um, adj., *of iron, iron*.fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune*.numerus, -i, m., *number*.pēsum, -i, n., *task, lesson*.pūgna, -ae, f., *battle*.scūtum, -i, n., *shield*.terra, -ae, f., *earth, land*.tyrannus, -i, m., *tyrant*.victōria, -ae, f., *victory*.

## CHAPTER XIII. 1.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

103. The stem ends in a consonant or in *i*.

104. Consonant stems are named, according to their final letter, *mute stems, liquid stems, sibilant stems*. See 3.

## MUTE STEMS.

## 105.

## PARADIGMS.

Prīnceps, m.,

*chief.*

Stem prīncip-

Rēx, m.,

*king.*

St. rēg-

Jūdex, m.,

*judge.*

St. jūdic-

Aetās, f.,

*age.*

St. aetāt-

Caput, n.,

*head.*

St. capit-

## SINGULAR.

N.V. princeps

rēx

jūdex

aetās

caput

G. principis

rēgis

jūdicis

aetātis

capitis

D. principī

rēgī

jūdicī

aetātī

capitī

Ac. principem

rēgem

jūdicem

aetātem

caput

Ab. principē

rēge

jūdice

aetāte

capite

## PLURAL.

N.V. principēs

rēgēs

jūdicēs

aetātēs

capita

G. principum

rēgum

jūdicum

aetātum

capitum

D. principibus

rēgibus

jūdicibus

aetātibus

capitibus

Ac. principēs

rēgēs

jūdicēs

aetātēs

capita

Ab. principibus

rēgibus

jūdicibus

aetātibus

capitibus

Pēs, M., foot.      Mīlēs, M., soldier.		TERMINATIONS.	
St. ped-      St. milit-		MASC. & FEM.	
SINGULAR.		Sing.	Plur.
N.V. pēs	mīlēs	s	ēs
G. pedis	militis	is	um
D. pedi	militi	i	ibus
Ac. pedem	militem	em	ēs
Ab. pede	milite	e	ibus
PLURAL.		NEUTER.	
N.V. pedēs	militēs	—	a
G. pedum	militum	is	um
D. pedibus	militibus	i	ibus
Ac. pedēs	militēs	—	a
Ab. pedibus	militibus	e	ibus

106. Observe that the vowel before the final consonant of the stem is not always the same in the nominative as in the other cases.

107. Consonant stems may be found by dropping the termination of the genitive singular. But there are some exceptions.

108. Decline **grex**, **poēma**, **servitūs**. Decline together **lapis asper**, **fidus comēs**, and **mīlēs aeger**. For the nouns, see 110.

## 2.

## 109.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Poēta comitī aegrō poēma grātum recitāvit. 2. Comēs poētae poēmate grātō liberātus est cūrā.<sup>1</sup> 3. Māgnus erat equitum numerus. 4. Militēs multī ā servō dominī invītātī sunt. 5. Gregēs albōs habent agricolae<sup>2</sup> īnsulae vīcinae. 6. Ager vīcinus lapidēs multōs et asperōs habet. 7. In agrō vīcinō sunt lapidēs multī et asperī. 8. Servitūs ā virīs nōn est amāta. 9. Pēs puerī lapide asperō vulnerātus est. 10. Rēgis amīcī ā militibus gladiīs et pīlis sunt fugātī.

II. 1. The king has changed the fortune of the war. 2. The fortune of the war was changed by the king. 3. The

<sup>1</sup> from care. See 101. II. 6.

<sup>2</sup> The subject.

soldiers will free the king. 4. The king will be freed by the soldiers. 5. The king had armed the soldiers with shields and spears. 6. Dædalus fitted wings to his son. 7. Wings were fitted to his son by Dædalus. 8. We shall read aloud the poems of Homer. 9. The girl sings for the weary soldier and is praised.

## 110.

## VOCABULARY.

comēs, -itis, M. & F., companion.	servitūs, -ūtis, F., slavery.
equēs, -itis, M., horseman.	voluptās, -ātis, F., pleasure.
grex, gregis, M., flock, herd.	
lapis, -idis, M., stone.	aptō, 1, fit.
milēs, -itis, M., soldier.	Daedalus, -i, M., Dædalus, builder of the Labyrinth.
pēs, pēdis, M., foot.	fillius, -i, M., son (79).
poēma, -ātis, N., poem.	vicinus, -a, -um, adj., neighboring.
rēx, rēgis, M., king.	

## 3.

## 111.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA.

brother                      little sister

S. Quid hodiē nārrāvit magister in scholā?  
to-day                      school

F. Nārrāvit dē Īcarō, Daedalī filiō.

S. Mihi quoque dē Īcarō Latīnē nārrā. Fuitne Īcarus  
me                      also                      in Latin  
puer malus?

F. Minimē malus sed miserrimus. Habēbat ālās; ālās cērā  
not                      unfortunate                      wings                      wax  
aptāverat Daedalus; Īcarus ēvolāvit et cērā sōle liquefacta  
flow away                      sun                      was melted  
est. Tum . . .  
then

S. Tum . . . quid?

F. Mihi nōn sunt verba Latīna. Itaque haesitō.  
words                      that is why                      hesitate

S. Ergō nārrā Anglicē. Nam linguam Anglicam intellegō.  
well, then                      language                      understand

F. Minimē. Latīnē tibi nārrō, nōn Anglicē.  
by no means



# CHAPTER XIV.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

112.

**Ē-VERBS.****Moneō** (stem **monē**), *advise*.PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō**, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitum**.

## INDICATIVE.

## ACTIVE.

*I advise, etc.*

mon <b>eō</b>	mon <b>ēmus</b>
mon <b>ēs</b>	mon <b>ētis</b>
mon <b>et</b>	mon <b>ent</b>

## PASSIVE.

*I am advised, etc.*

mon <b>eor</b>	mon <b>ēmur</b>
mon <b>ēris, or -re</b>	mon <b>ēminī</b>
mon <b>etur</b>	mon <b>entur</b>

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising, etc.*

mon <b>ēbam</b>	mon <b>ēbāmus</b>
mon <b>ēbās</b>	mon <b>ēbātis</b>
mon <b>ēbat</b>	mon <b>ēbant</b>

*I was advised, etc.*

mon <b>ēbar</b>	mon <b>ēbāmur</b>
mon <b>ēbāris, or -re</b>	mon <b>ēbāminī</b>
mon <b>ēbātur</b>	mon <b>ēbantur</b>

## FUTURE.

*I shall advise, etc.*

mon <b>ēbō</b>	mon <b>ēbimus</b>
mon <b>ēbis</b>	mon <b>ēbitis</b>
mon <b>ēbit</b>	mon <b>ēbunt</b>

*I shall be advised, etc.*

mon <b>ēbor</b>	mon <b>ēbimur</b>
mon <b>ēberis, or -re</b>	mon <b>ēbiminī</b>
mon <b>ēbitur</b>	mon <b>ēbuntur</b>

## PERFECT.

*I have advised, I advised, etc.*

monu <b>ī</b>	monu <b>imus</b>
monu <b>istī</b>	monu <b>istis</b>
monu <b>it</b>	monu <b>ērunt, or -re</b>

*I have been (was) advised, etc.*

monit <b>us</b>	{ <b>sum</b>	monit <b>ī</b>	{ <b>sumus</b>
	{ <b>es</b>		{ <b>estis</b>
	{ <b>est</b>		{ <b>sunt</b>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised, etc.*

monu <b>eram</b>	monu <b>erāmus</b>
monu <b>erās</b>	monu <b>erātis</b>
monu <b>erat</b>	monu <b>erant</b>

*I had been advised, etc.*

monit <b>us</b>	{ <b>eram</b>	monit <b>ī</b>	{ <b>erāmus</b>
	{ <b>erās</b>		{ <b>erātis</b>
	{ <b>erat</b>		{ <b>erant</b>

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monu <b>erō</b>	monu <b>erimus</b>	monit <b>us</b> {	<b>erō</b>	monit <b>I</b> {	<b>erimus</b>
monu <b>eris</b>	monu <b>eritis</b>		<b>eris</b>		<b>eritis</b>
monu <b>erit</b>	monu <b>erint</b>		<b>erit</b>		<b>erunt</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

mon <b>eam</b>	mon <b>eāmus</b>	mon <b>ear</b>	mon <b>eāmur</b>
mon <b>eās</b>	mon <b>eātis</b>	mon <b>eāris, or-re</b>	mon <b>eāminī</b>
mon <b>eat</b>	mon <b>eant</b>	mon <b>eātur</b>	mon <b>eantur</b>

## IMPERFECT.

mon <b>ērem</b>	mon <b>ērēmus</b>	mon <b>ērer</b>	mon <b>ērēmur</b>
mon <b>ērēs</b>	mon <b>ērētis</b>	mon <b>ērēris, or-re</b>	mon <b>ērēminī</b>
mon <b>ēret</b>	mon <b>ērent</b>	mon <b>ērētur</b>	mon <b>ērentur</b>

## PERFECT.

monu <b>erim</b>	monu <b>erimus</b>	monit <b>us</b> {	<b>sim</b>	monit <b>I</b> {	<b>simus</b>
monu <b>eris</b>	monu <b>eritis</b>		<b>sīs</b>		<b>sitis</b>
monu <b>erit</b>	monu <b>erint</b>		<b>sit</b>		<b>sint</b>

## PLUPERFECT.

monu <b>issem</b>	monu <b>issēmus</b>	monit <b>us</b> {	<b>essem</b>	monit <b>I</b> {	<b>essēmus</b>
monu <b>issēs</b>	monu <b>issētis</b>		<b>essēs</b>		<b>essētis</b>
monu <b>isset</b>	monu <b>issent</b>		<b>esset</b>		<b>essent</b>

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

mon <b>ē</b> , advise thou.	mon <b>ēre</b> , be thou advised.
mon <b>ēte</b> , advise ye.	mon <b>ēminī</b> , be ye advised.

## FUTURE.

mon <b>ētō</b> , thou shalt advise.	mon <b>ētor</b> , thou shalt be advised.
mon <b>ētō</b> , he shall advise.	mon <b>ētor</b> , he shall be advised.
mon <b>ētōte</b> , you shall advise.	
mon <b>entō</b> , they shall advise.	mon <b>entor</b> , they shall be advised.

ACTIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PASSIVE.
PRES. mon <b>ēre</b> , <i>to advise.</i>	mon <b>ērī</b> , <i>to be advised.</i>	
PERF. monu <b>isse</b> , <i>to have advised.</i>	monit <b>us esse</b> , <i>to have been adv'd.</i>	
FUT. monit <b>ūrus esse</b> , <i>to be about to advise.</i>	monit <b>um irī</b> , <i>to be about to be advised.</i>	

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mon <b>ēns, -entis</b> , <i>advising.</i>	
FUT. monit <b>ūrus, -a, -um</b> , <i>about to advise.</i>	GER. mon <b>endus, -a, -um</b> , <i>to be advised.</i>
	PERF. monit <b>us, -a, -um</b> , <i>having been advised.</i>

## GERUND.

- G. mon **endī**, *of advising.*  
 D. mon **endō**, *for advising.*  
 Ac. mon **endum**, *advising.*  
 Ab. mon **endō**, *by advising.*

## SUPINE.

- Ac. monit **um**, *to advise.*  
 Ab. monit **ū**, *to advise, to be advised.*

## CHAPTER XV. 1.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

**113.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **monēō**.

**114.**

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Monet, monētur. 2. Monēbat, monēbātur. 3. Monēbit, monēbitur. 4. Monē, monēre. 5. Monēte, monēminī. 6. Monēbimus, monēbimur. 7. Monēmus, monēmur. 8. Monēbās, monēs. 9. Monēbis, monēris. 10. Monērī, monēre.

- II. 1. You are advising, you will be advised, you were advised. 2. Advise ye, be ye advised. 3. We do advise,

we are advising, we shall be advising. 4. We were advising, we were advised. 5. They are advised, they advised, they were advising. 6. They will advise, they will be advised.

## 2.

## 115.

## EXERCISES.

**Habeō**, have, or hold; **dēleō**,<sup>1</sup> destroy; **terreō**, frighten.

I. 1. Habet, dēlēbat, terrēbit. 2. Nōne habēmus? nōne dēlēbāmus? nōne terrēbimus? 3. Dēlēs, habēbās, terrēbunt. 4. Habēte, terrēte, dēlēte. 5. Dēlētur,<sup>2</sup> habēbātur, terrēbātur.<sup>2</sup> 6. Terrēre, dēlēri, habēri. 7. Habetne? dēlētur? terrēbatne? 8. Dēlēbitur, habēbantur, terrēbiminī. 9. Nōn terrēmus, nōn dēlēbunt, nōn habent. 10. Habēbuntur, terrentur, dēlēbantur.

II. 1. We are held, they will be destroyed, he was frightened. 2. I frighten, thou hast (you have), he destroys. 3. To have, to destroy, to be frightened. 4. Is he frightened? are they destroyed? were you held? 5. Destroy (thou), have (ye), frighten (ye). 6. Have we not? does he not frighten? did they not destroy? 7. You will be frightened, it is held, we were frightened. 8. I was holding, he was destroying, you were frightening. 9. I shall destroy, we shall frighten, they have.

## 3.

## 116.

## EXERCISES.

Before translating the following exercises, review the tables of declensions and terminations, pp. 41 and 42.

I. 1. Poenam merēbis, sī memoriam nōn exercēbis.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For principal parts of **dēleō**, see vocabulary, 119.

<sup>2</sup> The present, which denotes continued action, means *it is being* (destroyed); the imperfect, *he was being* (frightened).

<sup>3</sup> Translate as if it were the present tense; but in Latin the future is necessary, because future time is meant. Cf. 93. I. 4. Observe the difference between the Latin and English idioms.

2. Exercē memoriam, comēs. 3. Studium memoriam auget. 4. Militēs ā ducibus exercentur et docentur. 5. Perīcula mīlitēs nōn terrant. 6. Perīculum nōn timēbit mīlēs. 7. Oppidum ā mīlitibus tenētur. 8. Jūdicēs poenīs malōs coercent. 9. Quid vidēs? 10. Multa videō.

II. 1. The tyrant is restrained. 2. The water of the river was increased. 3. The leader will have a statue. 4. The faithful comrade advises his friend. 5. The friend is advised by his faithful companion. 6. Lazy slaves fear a hard master. 7. A hard master is feared by lazy slaves. 8. Italy is the land of famous poets. 9. The soldiers will not be terrified by dangers. 10. The boy remembered the master's words.

**117.** *Malōs* (I. 8), *bad men*, and *multa* (I. 10), *many things*, are examples of the frequent use in Latin of an adjective without a noun. Compare, in English, *the good*, *the wise*.

## 4.

**118.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Equōs et equitēs multōs in viā videō. 2. Cŷrus, prīmus Persārum rēx,<sup>1</sup> nōmina<sup>2</sup> mīlitum memoriā tenēbat. 3. Sī oppidum dēlēbunt, poenam merēbunt. 4. Prīncipēs ā templō deī prohibēbimus. 5. Voluptātēs memoriae augēbantur. 6. Studiō augētur memoria. 7. Mīlitēs ā prīncipe monēbantur. 8. Rēx māgnū mīlitum numerum tenēbat. 9. Prīnceps equitēs pigrōs exercēbat.

II. 1. In ancient states there were many slaves. 2. Why had the ancient Romans many slaves? 3. We saw the great number of horsemen in the road and were frightened. 4. Roman boys were often taught by Greek slaves. 5. Greek slaves often taught Roman boys. 6. The horsemen were trained by the king's son. 7. Many horses and horsemen are seen in the town. 8. The chief will deserve a great victory.

<sup>1</sup> *Rēx*, in apposition with *Cŷrus*. See **157**.      <sup>2</sup> *names*.

## 119.

## VOCABULARY.

**coerceō**, 2, -uī, -itum, *check, restrain.*

**exerceō**, 2, -uī, -itum, *train, exercise.*

**habeō**, 2, -uī, -itum, *have, hold.*

**mereō**, 2, -uī, -itum, *deserve, merit.*

**prohibeō**, 2, -uī, -itum, *prevent, keep off.*

**terreō**, 2, -uī, -itum, *frighten.*

**timeō**, 2, -uī, —, *fear.*

**augeō**, 2, **auxi**,<sup>1</sup> **auctum**, *increase.*

**dēleō**, 2, -ēvī,<sup>2</sup> -ētum, *destroy.*

**doceō**, 2, -uī, **doctum**,<sup>3</sup> *teach.*

**teneō**, 2, -uī, **tentum**,<sup>4</sup> *keep, hold.*

**videō**, 2, **vidi**,<sup>5</sup> **visum**, *see; passive, seem.*

**antiquus**, -a, -um, *adj., old, ancient.*

**cīvitās**, -ātis, *F., state.*

**cūr**, *adv., why?*

**Cŷrus**, -ī, *M., Cyrus.*

**dux**, **ducis**, *M. & F., leader, general.*

**fīdus**, -a, -um, *adj., faithful.*

**memoria**, -ae, *F., memory.*

**memoriā teneō**, *remember.*

**periculum**, -ī, *N., danger.*

**poena**, -ae, *F., punishment.*

**quid**, *interrog. pron., what?*

**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, *Roman (94).*

**saepe**, *adv., often.*

**sī**, *conj., if.*

**studium**, -ī, *N., zeal, study.*

**templum**, -ī, *N., temple.*

## CHAPTER XVI. 1.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

**120.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **moneō**.

## 121.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Monuit**, **monuerat**, **monuerit**. 2. **Monuērunt**, **monuerant**, **monuerint**. 3. **Monuī**, **monitus sum**. 4. **Monuerit**, **monitus erit**. 5. **Monuistī**, **monuerās**, **monueris**. 6. **Monitus est**, **monitus erat**, **monitus erit**. 7. **Monuisse**, **monitus esse**.

II. 1. You have advised, you had advised, you will have advised. 2. They have been advised, they had been advised,

<sup>1</sup> **Auxi** for **aug-si**. See p. 1, n. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Only **fleō**, *weep*, **neō**, *spin*, and the compounds of the obsolete **pleō**, *fill*, are conjugated like **dēleō**, with the perfect in **ēvī**.

<sup>3</sup> Observe, not **docitum**.

<sup>4</sup> Observe, not **tenitum**.

<sup>5</sup> **Vidi**. Perfect stem formed by lengthening the vowel of the present stem, **vid** to **vid**.

they will have been advised. 3. I had advised, I had been advised. 4. He has advised, he has been advised. 5. We have advised, we have been advised. 6. To have been advised, to have advised.

## 2.

## 122.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Habuit, dēlēvit, terruit. 2. Habuistī, dēlēvistī, terruistī. 3. Nōn dēlēvimus, nōn dēlēverāmus, nōn dēlēverimus. 4. Dēlētum est, territus erat, habita sunt. 5. Habuerōne? estne territa? suntne dēlētae? 6. Nōnne habuerātis? nōnne dēlētum erat? nōnne terruērunt? 7. Terruisse, dēlēvisse, habitus esse. 8. Dēlēverās, territus erās, habuistis. 9. Habuerint, dēlētum erit, habuērunt. 10. Dēlēta sunt, habitī sumus, territae estis.

II. 1. They have had, they have frightened, they have destroyed. 2. I had had, I had been frightened, I had destroyed. 3. Have you had? had he destroyed? has he frightened? 4. We had not destroyed, they (*fem.*) had not been frightened, you had not destroyed. 5. We have had, we shall have destroyed, we had been frightened. 6. To have destroyed, to have been held, to have been frightened. 7. Have you been frightened? had they (*neut.*) been destroyed? has she had? 8. I have destroyed, I have not had, I shall not have been frightened. 9. They will have had, they will have been frightened, they (*neut.*) will have been destroyed. 10. Have you not had? did they not destroy? have you (*fem.*) not been frightened?

## 3.

## 123.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Rēx Rōmam obsēderat. 2. Rōma ā rēge obsēssa erat. 3. Scriba cum (*with*) rēge sedēbat. 4. Īra ferōcem (*fierce*) animum virī mōvit. 5. Rēgulī conjugī et liberis

alimenta praebuērunt Rōmānī. 6. Captīvī retentī sunt. 7. Novamne lūnam vīdistī? 8. Aquila in (on) templō sēdit. 9. Poēta flēvit quia filius captīvus erat. 10. Caesar oppidum Galliae obsēdit.

II. 1. The town was besieged by the general. 2. Why did the general besiege the town? 3. The king is sitting<sup>1</sup> with his clerk. 4. The minds of the men were moved with anger. 5. Regulus was retained (as) a prisoner.<sup>2</sup> 6. Regulus deserved great glory. 7. The new moon has been seen. 8. The commander's daughter was a prisoner. 9. We wept because we were prisoners. 10. The town had been besieged by Pyrrhus.

## 4.

## 124.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mīlitibus māgna praemia ā rēge praebita sunt. 2. Mīlītēs timuērunt quia elephantōs vīdērunt. 3. Numerum verbōrum auximus. 4. Caesar mīlītēs in oppidō retinuerat. 5. Jūdicium bonōrum memoria nunquam dēlēbitur. 6. Multa Rōmānōrum monumenta<sup>3</sup> dēlēta sunt. 7. Dux castra ab oppidō mōverat. 8. Dominus servōs in servitūte tenuit. 9. Multa verba in memoriā mānsērunt. 10. Mīlitis conjunx in Minervae templō sedēbat.

II. 1. The king furnished food for his weary soldiers. 2. Elephants had frightened the horses of the Romans. 3. Have you increased the number of your friends? 4. Caesar's soldiers were besieged in the town. 5. The sword of the tyrant has restrained the judge. 6. War has destroyed many monuments<sup>3</sup> of great men. 7. The camp had been moved away from the town. 8. We weep if our children are held in slavery. 9. Shall you remain in Italy?

<sup>1</sup> Not passive.

<sup>2</sup> Predicate nom.; see 47.

<sup>3</sup> When a noun is limited both

by an adjective and a genitive, the order often is: *adjective, genitive, noun*. Cf. 118. I. 2 and 8.



## 125.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>fleō</b> , 2, <b>flevi</b> , <b>fletum</b> , <i>weep, bewail.</i>	<b>captivus</b> , -ī, m., <i>prisoner, captive.</i>
<b>maneō</b> , 2, <b>mānsi</b> , <b>māsum</b> , <i>remain, await.</i>	<b>castra</b> , -ōrum, (pl.) n., <i>camp.</i>
<b>moveō</b> , 2, <b>mōvi</b> , <sup>1</sup> <b>mōtum</b> , <i>move.</i>	<b>conjunx</b> , <b>conjugis</b> , f., <i>wife.</i>
<b>ob-sideō</b> , 2, - <b>sēdi</b> , <sup>1</sup> - <b>sēssum</b> , <i>besiege.</i>	<b>elephantus</b> , -ī, m., <i>elephant.</i>
<b>praebeō</b> , 2, - <b>ui</b> , - <b>itum</b> , <i>furnish.</i>	<b>ira</b> , -ae, f., <i>anger.</i>
<b>re-tineō</b> , 2, - <b>tinui</b> , - <b>tentum</b> , <i>keep back, retain.</i>	<b>lūna</b> , -ae, f., <i>moon.</i>
<b>sedeō</b> , 2, <b>sēdi</b> , <sup>1</sup> <b>sēssum</b> , <i>sit.</i>	<b>novus</b> , -a, -um, adj., <i>new.</i>
<b>alimentum</b> , -ī, n., <i>food, support.</i>	<b>nunquam</b> , adv., <i>never.</i>
<b>animus</b> , -ī, m., <i>mind.</i>	<b>praemium</b> , -ī, n., <i>reward.</i>
<b>Caesar</b> , -aris, m., <i>Cæsar.</i> (134.)	<b>Pyrrhus</b> , -ī, m., <i>Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.</i>
	<b>quia</b> , conj., <i>because.</i>
	<b>Rēgulus</b> , -ī, m., <i>Rēgulus, a Roman.</i>
	<b>scriba</b> , -ae, m., <i>clerk.</i> (11. 1.)

## 5.

## 126.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

*P.* Latīnē mibi interrogantī respondē sī possīs. Quae  
to me asking answer you can what  
 īnsula Graeciae est parva quidem sed clāra?  
to be sure

*D.* Admodum clāra est Ithaca īnsula, ubi habitābat Ulixēs.  
very where Ulysses

*P.* Rēctē, mī puer, Ulixēs Ithacae rēx fuit et dux īn bellō  
right leader  
 ēgregius. Quis cantāvit dē Ulixē ēgregiō?

*D.* Homērus, poēta caecus, quī antem Ulixem nunquam  
blind who however never  
 viderat.

*P.* Tenēsne memoriā nōmen fidī servī Ulixis?  
name

*D.* Servus Ulixis fidus erat Eumaeus.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 49, note 5.

## CHAPTER XVII. 1.

## REVIEW.

## 127.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Magister discipulōs invitāvit. 2. Nōne ā magistrō discipulī invitātī sunt? 3. Vīdistīne agricolārum arātra ferrea? 4. Milītēs lapidēs magnōs portābant. 5. Rēx ab oppidō castra mōvit. 6. Gregis custōdēs lapidibus fugātī sunt. 7. Mī<sup>1</sup> fili, poēmata Homēri recitāvistīne? 8. Sī oppidūm tenuerimus, victōriam merēbimus. 9. Conjugēs milītum pūgnam spectābant et flēbant. 10. In Italiā antiquā ā Pyrrhō Epīri rēge superātī sunt Rōmānī.

II. 1. We shall see the flocks in the fields. 2. The king was not frightened by the elephant.<sup>2</sup> 3. Horses are frightened by elephants.<sup>2</sup> 4. The townsmen were sitting on the wall. 5. The prisoners were wounded by the soldiers with their swords. 6. My boy, what are you looking at? 7. Do you not see the horsemen's swords? 8. Do you remember the poems of the Roman poet? 9. The king's sons were finding fault with fortune. 10. Why are the townsmen armed with swords?

**128.** *Examine the two following groups of sentences:—*

1. **Iter ab Arare Helvētīī āverterant**, *the Helvetii had turned their course from the Arar.*
2. **Arāneās dēiciam dē pariete**, *I will brush down the cobwebs from the wall.*
3. **Hannibal ex Italiā excēssit**, *Hannibal withdrew from Italy.*
1. **Nōs cūrā liberābis**, *you will free us from care.*
2. **Oculīs sē privāvit**, *he deprived himself of his sight (eyes).*
3. **Homo cibō caret**, *the man is in want of food.*

**129.** The verbs have the general idea of *separation*; and in the first group the ablative with a preposition, in the second the ablative

<sup>1</sup> Vocative singular of *meus*, *my*.

<sup>2</sup> Prep. not necessary.

alone, answers the question *from what? of what?* Observe further, that the verbs of the first group are compounds of *ā, dē, ex*, and the "separation" is *literal*, or *physical*; in the second group the "separation" is *figurative*, or less literal.

**130. RULE OF SYNTAX.**—Separation is expressed by the ablative with *ā (ab), dē, ē (ex)*, in connection with verbs compounded with these prepositions,<sup>1</sup> or by the ablative alone with simple verbs meaning *to set free, deprive, or want*.

## 2.

## 131.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hunc (*him*) *ā* tuis *arcebis*. 2. Filius regis Rōmānōs cūrā liberāvit. 3. Rōmānī *ā* filiō regis cūrā liberātī sunt. 4. Vir aeger aquā privātus est. 5. Servī servitūte liberābuntur. 6. Dux Rōmānus Corinthum multīs statuīs privāvit. 7. Servī, equīs dēfessīs aquam praebēte. 8.<sup>2</sup> Sāturnus Italōs agrī cultūram docuit. 9. Liber vīnī erat deus et in Italiā templa multa habēbat. 10. Avārī militēs ārās dōnīs spoliāt. 11. Mī puer, equus pābulō et aquā caret.

Before translating the following sentences, read over the explanations and rules on pp. 20, 21, and 36, and consider what expressions are equivalent to the Latin ablative of *agent* with *ā* or *ab*, the ablative of *means*, and the ablative of *separation*.

II. 1. They deprived the sick man of water. 2. The state was freed from the tyrant by Brutus. 3. The Italians were taught by Saturn. 4. The leader adorned the town with statues. 5. The horsemen are in want of swords and horses. 6. Corinth was robbed of many statues by a Roman general. 7. The goddess will keep off the Romans

<sup>1</sup> With other verbs than those indicated in 129 and 130, of similar meaning, the preposition is sometimes used and sometimes omitted.

<sup>2</sup> Observe the two accusatives, one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*, with *doceō*.

from her temple. 8. The town was destroyed by the plans of the general. 9. Will not the Romans be kept off from the temple? 10. They thrust forth the leaders from the town. 11. The leaders are hustled out of town.

## 132.

## VOCABULARY.

*agrī cultūra*, -ae, F., *agriculture*.

*avārus*, -a, -um, adj., *greedy*.

*arceō*, 2, -uī, -tum, *keep off*.

*Brūtus*, -ī, M., *Brutus*, a Roman.

*careō*, 2, -uī, -itum, *want, lack*.

*causa*, -ae, F., *cause*.

*Corinthus*, -ī, F., *Corinth* (11. 4).

*custōs*, -ōdis, M. & F., *keeper*.

*Ēpirus*, -ī, F., *Epirus* (11. 4).

*exturbō*, 1, *thrust out*.

*Italus*, -ī, M., *an Italian*.

*Liber*, -erī, M., *Bacchus*, god of wine.

*meus*, -a, -um, poss. adj., *my, mine*.

*ōrnō*, 1, *adorn*.

*privō*, 1, *deprive*. [*agriculture*.

*Sāturnus*, -ī, M., *Saturn*, god of

*spoliō*, 1, *rob, despoil*.

*tuus*, -a, -um, poss. adj., *thy, your*.

## 3.

## 133.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

*P.* Dic mihi, puer, elephantōsne aliquandō vīdistī?  
tell ever

*D.* Certē, praeceptor, elephantōs māgnōs et parvōs vīdī.

*P.* In agrīsne?

*D.* Minimē vērō; in circō et interdum in viīs.  
indeed circus sometimes

*P.* Quis rēx clārus elephantōrum auxiliō pūgnābat?  
what aid

*D.* Pyrrhus, rēx Ēpīrī, ita pūgnābat.

*P.* Nōnne elephantī equōs Rōmānōrum terrēbant?

*D.* Terrēbant. Militēs quoque terrēbantur.  
yes also

*P.* Superāvitne Pyrrhus Rōmānōs?

*D.* Saepe superāvit.  
often

*P.* Quibus armīs pūgnant elephantī?  
with what

*D.* Dentibus, proboscide, pedibus, capite pūgnant.  
tusks trunk feet

## CHAPTER XVIII. 1.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

## LIQUID STEMS.

## 134.

## PARADIGMS.

<b>Cōnsul, m.,</b> <i>consul.</i> St. cōnsul-	<b>Pater, m.,</b> <i>father.</i> St. patr-	<b>Pāstor, m.,</b> <i>shepherd.</i> St. pāstōr-	<b>Leō, m.,</b> <i>lion.</i> St. leōn-
SINGULAR.			
N.V. cōnsul	pater	pāstor	leō
G. cōnsul <b>is</b>	patr <b>is</b>	pāstōr <b>is</b>	leōn <b>is</b>
D. cōnsul <b>ī</b>	patr <b>ī</b>	pāstōr <b>ī</b>	leōn <b>ī</b>
Ac. cōnsul <b>em</b>	patr <b>em</b>	pāstōr <b>em</b>	leōn <b>em</b>
Ab. cōnsul <b>e</b>	patr <b>e</b>	pāstōr <b>e</b>	leōn <b>e</b>
PLURAL.			
N.V. cōnsul <b>ēs</b>	patr <b>ēs</b>	pāstōr <b>ēs</b>	leōn <b>ēs</b>
G. cōnsul <b>um</b>	patr <b>um</b>	pāstōr <b>um</b>	leōn <b>um</b>
D. cōnsul <b>ibus</b>	patr <b>ibus</b>	pāstōr <b>ibus</b>	leōn <b>ibus</b>
Ac. cōnsul <b>ēs</b>	patr <b>ēs</b>	pāstōr <b>ēs</b>	leōn <b>ēs</b>
Ab. cōnsul <b>ibus</b>	patr <b>ibus</b>	pāstōr <b>ibus</b>	leōn <b>ibus</b>

<b>Imāgō, f.,</b> <i>image.</i> St. imāgin-	<b>Nōmen, n.,</b> <i>name.</i> St. nōmin-
---	---

## TERMINATIONS.

## MASC. &amp; FEM.

SINGULAR.		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.V. imāgō	nōmen	—	<b>ēs</b>
G. imāgin <b>is</b>	nōmin <b>is</b>	<b>is</b>	<b>um</b>
D. imāgin <b>ī</b>	nōmin <b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>	<b>ibus</b>
Ac. imāgin <b>em</b>	nōmen	<b>em</b>	<b>ēs</b>
Ab. imāgin <b>e</b>	nōmin <b>e</b>	<b>e</b>	<b>ibus</b>

## PLURAL.

## NEUTER.

PLURAL.			
N.V. imāgin <b>ēs</b>	nōmin <b>a</b>	—	<b>a</b>
G. imāgin <b>um</b>	nōmin <b>um</b>	<b>is</b>	<b>um</b>
D. imāgin <b>ibus</b>	nōmin <b>ibus</b>	<b>ī</b>	<b>ibus</b>
Ac. imāgin <b>ēs</b>	nōmin <b>a</b>	—	<b>a</b>
Ab. imāgin <b>ibus</b>	nōmin <b>ibus</b>	<b>e</b>	<b>ibus</b>

**135. Examine the following:—**

1. **Hieme et aestate**, in winter and summer.
2. **Solis occāsu**,<sup>1</sup> at the setting of the sun.
3. **Primā luce**, at daybreak (first light).
4. **His viginti annis**, within these twenty years.

It will be seen that the above phrases are expressions of *time*, and answer the question *when?* or, *within what time?*

**136. RULE OF SYNTAX.**—*Time when* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; *time within which*, by the ablative alone, or by the ablative with *in*.

## 2.

**137.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Tertiā hōrā milites fugātī sunt. 2. Primō annō Brūtum cōsulem creāvērunt Rōmānī. 3. Oppidum militibus ab imperātore implētum est. 4. Imperātor oppidum militibus implēbit. 5. Terror clāmōre hominum augētur. 6. Clāmōrēs dēfēnsōrum omnēs<sup>2</sup> puerōs<sup>3</sup> terrēbunt. 7. Nōmen et imāginem amīcī semper in memoriā habēbat. 8. Semper erit clārum imperātōris ēgregiū nōmen. 9. Nōne Hannibal Rōmānīs fuit terror? 10. Hannibal fortitūdinem māguam semper habēbat.

II. 1. Europe has no<sup>4</sup> lions. 2. A slave had a great lion. 3. The name of the slave was Androclus. 4. There are many lions in Africa. 5. The friend of my brothers has seen a lion. 6. A lion has been seen by my father and my brother. 7. The shouts of the soldiers scared the men in the town. 8. The defenders of the town were scared by the shouts of the men. 9. Why are many men miserable in time<sup>5</sup> of war? 10. Do we not see by the sun's light? 11. At daybreak they saw Hannibal's horsemen.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of the fourth declension. See 245.

<sup>2</sup> All.

<sup>3</sup> Children. See 60.

<sup>4</sup> Not.

<sup>5</sup> Tempore.

## 138.

## VOCABULARY.

clāmor, -ōris, M., shout.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, M., defender.

fortitūdō, -inis, F., bravery.

frāter, -tris, M., brother.

Hannibal, -ālis, M., L'annibal, a Carthaginian general.

homo, -inis, M., man.

imperātor, -ōris, M., general.

lūmen, -inis, N., light.

sōl, sōlis, M. (no gen. pl.), sun.

terror, -ōris, M., terror.

timor, -ōris, M., fear.

Āfrica, -ae, F., Africa.

Androclus, -i, M., Androclus.

annus, -i, M., year.

creō, 1, elect, choose.

Eurōpa, -ae, F., Europe.

Horātius, -i, M., Horace, a Roman poet (79).

impleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum, fill.

juventūs, -ūtis, F., youth.

semper, adv., always.

voluptās, -ātis, F., pleasure.

homo, man, as distinguished from lower animals; general word for man, mankind.

vīr (80), man, as distinguished from woman; man in an honorable sense, hero.

## 3.

## 139.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## MAGISTER ET DISCIPULUS.

M. Quae, mī puer, sunt in pēnsō hodiernō?

what things

to-day's

D. Multa sunt in pēnsō, ut nōmina, adjectīva, dēclīnā-

many things

as nouns

declensions

tiōnēs, rēgulae.

M. Quot genera sunt nōminibus Latīnīs?

how many genders

D. Genera sunt tria: masculīnum, fēminīnum, neutrum.

genders

three

M. Dē quibus nōminibus est rēgula prīma?

what

D. Prīma rēgula est dē nōminibus generis masculīnī.

Secunda rēgula est dē nōminibus generis fēminīnī.

M. Verbōrum quot sunt conjugātiōnēs?

verbs how many

D. Quattuor sunt conjugātiōnēs, dēclīnātiōnēs autem

four

but

quīnque.

five

## CHAPTER XIX. 1.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

SIBILANT STEMS.<sup>1</sup>

## 140.

## PARADIGMS.

<b>Mōs</b> , M., <i>custom.</i>	<b>Jūs</b> , N., <i>right.</i>	<b>Opus</b> , N., <i>work.</i>	<b>Corpus</b> , N., <i>body.</i>
St. <b>mōs-</b>	St. <b>jūs-</b>	St. <b>opes-</b>	St. <b>corpos-</b>

## SINGULAR.

N.V. <b>mōs</b>	<b>jūs</b>	<b>opus</b>	<b>corpus</b>
G. <b>mōris</b>	<b>jūris</b>	<b>operis</b>	<b>corporis</b>
D. <b>mōrī</b>	<b>jūrī</b>	<b>operī</b>	<b>corporī</b>
Ac. <b>mōrem</b>	<b>jūs</b>	<b>opus</b>	<b>corpus</b>
Ab. <b>mōre</b>	<b>jūre</b>	<b>opere</b>	<b>corpore</b>

## PLURAL.

N.V. <b>mōrēs</b>	<b>jūra</b>	<b>opera</b>	<b>corpora</b>
G. <b>mōrum</b>	<b>jūrum</b>	<b>operum</b>	<b>corporum</b>
D. <b>mōribus</b>	<b>jūribus</b>	<b>operibus</b>	<b>corporibus</b>
Ac. <b>mōrēs</b>	<b>jūra</b>	<b>opera</b>	<b>corpora</b>
Ab. <b>mōribus</b>	<b>jūribus</b>	<b>operibus</b>	<b>corporibus</b>

## 141.

## ADJECTIVE.

**Vetus**, *old*. Stem **vetes-**

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V. <b>vetus</b>	<b>vetus</b>	<b>veterēs</b>	<b>vetera</b>
G. <b>veteris</b>	<b>veteris</b>	<b>veterum</b>	<b>veterum</b>
D. <b>veterī</b>	<b>veterī</b>	<b>veteribus</b>	<b>veteribus</b>
Ac. <b>veterem</b>	<b>vetus</b>	<b>veterēs</b>	<b>vetera</b>
Ab. <b>vetere</b>	<b>vetere</b>	<b>veteribus</b>	<b>veteribus</b>

**142.** The above were originally sibilant stems, the *s* having been changed to *r* between two vowels. Compare **eram** for **esam**, **erō** for **esō**, p. 25. But for practical purposes they may be regarded as stems in *r*.

<sup>1</sup> For table of terminations, see 134.



## 143.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cerēs agrī cultūrae erat dea. 2. Cererī multa erant templa in Siciliā. 3. Cerēs multa templa in Siciliā habēbat. 4. Cerēs agrī cultūram docēbat. 5. Aestāte est pulvis molestus. 6. Servīs temporibus antīquīs nōn erant jūra. 7. Servī temporum veterum jūra nōn habēbant. 8. Equus perītō ab equite exercitus erat. 9. Equitī perītō praebitus erit equus niger.

II. 1. The statue of Minerva has been seen. 2. The statue of Minerva had often been praised. 3. The works of the Greeks were pleasing to the Romans. 4. Our pleasures have been increased by work<sup>1</sup> and zeal. 5. What<sup>2</sup> were seen in the temples of Greece? 6. In ancient times men saw statues of gods and goddesses. 7. Statues of gods and goddesses were seen by men in ancient times.

## 2

144. *Examine the following:—*

1. Cum virtūte vīxit, *he lived with virtue (virtuously).*
2. Agricola agrum cum cūrā arat, *the farmer ploughs his field with care (carefully).*
3. Agricola agrum māgnā cum cūrā arat, *the farmer ploughs his field with great care*
4. Summā vī proelium commiserunt, *they joined battle with the greatest violence.*

Manner is usually expressed by adverbs: *benē*, *well*; *liberē*, *freely*. So the phrases *cum virtūte*, *cum cūrā*, *māgnā cum cūrā*, and *summā vī*, plainly denote manner,—*how* a thing is done,—like adverbs of manner.

145. RULE OF SYNTAX. — Manner is sometimes expressed by the ablative with *cum*; but if the ablative has an adjective, *cum* is often omitted.

<sup>1</sup> Read again explanations and rule, p. 36.    <sup>2</sup> *Quae* = *what things*.

## 146.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Captivī lūmen sōlis māgnō gaudiō vidērunt. 2.<sup>1</sup> Sī in agrīs tempore flōrum eritis,<sup>2</sup> libenter eōs (*them*) vidēbitis. 3. Māgnā voluptāte aestāte videntur pulchrī flōrēs. 4. Librōs cum studiō et voluptāte recitāmus. 5. Puerī corpora cum studiō et cūrā exercent. 6. Multa Rōmānōrum opera tempore<sup>3</sup> nōn dēlēta sunt.

II. 1. They look at the lion with great fear. 2. If he blames (is blaming) the boy angrily,<sup>4</sup> he deserves punishment. 3. Dædalus had fitted wings to Icarus with care. 4. They remember the words of the good judge with joy. 5. The words of the good judge will be carefully<sup>4</sup> remembered. 6. How many works of the Romans time has not destroyed!

## 147.

## VOCABULARY.

Cerēs, -eris, F., *Ceres*, goddess of agriculture.

flōs, flōris, M., *flower*.

pulvis, -eris, M., *dust*.

tempus, -oris, N., *time*.

aestās, -ātis, F., *summer*.

cum, prep. w. abl., *with*.

cūra, -ae, F., *care*.

gaudium, -i, N., *joy*.

Icarus, -i, M., *Icarus*.

ira, -ae, F., *anger*.

libenter, adv., *gladly, with pleasure*.

molestus, -a, -um, adj., *troublesome*.

quam, adv., *how, than*.

sacer, -era, -erum, adj., *sacred*.

Sicilia, -ae, F., *Sicily*.

## 3.

## 148.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## DUO PUERĪ.

Hodiē dūrum pēsum habuī.

Studuistīne cum cūrā et dīligentiā?

did you study

diligence

Certē cum dīligentiā, nōn cum voluptāte studuī.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that *in the fields* = *in agrīs*; *in the time* = *tempore*.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 47, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> Why would it be wrong to write *ā tempore*?

<sup>4</sup> Compare 144. 1.

Cūr nōn cum voluptāte studuistī? Eratne magister  
mōrōsus an pēsum longum?

cross or

Mehercule! longum erat pēsum neque memoriā tenēbam.  
truly and not

Aspice. Nōne vidēs multa vocābula in vocābulārīō et ver-  
look words vocabulary

bum moneō et dēclīnātiōnis tertiāe substantīva et adjectīva?

Heu amīcum miserum, quam studēs!

ah

have to study



## CHAPTER XX 1.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

#### STEMS IN *i*.

#### 149.

#### PARADIGMS.

**Hostis**, M. & F.,  
*enemy.*  
St. **hosti-**

**Nūbēs**, F.,  
*cloud.*  
St. **nūbi-**

**Turris**, F.,  
*tower.*  
St. **turri-**

**Ignis**, M.,  
*fire.*  
St. **igni-**

#### SINGULAR.

N.V. **hostis**

nūbēs

turris

ignis

G. **hostis**

nūbis

turris

ignis

D. **hostī**

nūbī

turrī

ignī

Ac. **hostem**

nūbem

turrim,em

ignem

Ab. **hoste**

nūbe

turrī, e

ignī, e

#### PLURAL.

N.V. **hostēs**

nūbēs

turrēs

ignēs

G. **hostium**

nūbium

turrium

ignium

D. **hostibus**

nūbibus

turribus

ignibus

Ac. **hostēs, is**

nūbēs, is

turrēs, is

ignēs, is

Ab. **hostibus**

nūbibus

turribus

ignibus

Animal, N., <i>animal.</i>	Mare, N., <i>sea.</i>	Calcar, N., <i>spur.</i>	TERMINATIONS.
St. animāli-	St. mari-	St. calcāri-	

## MASC. &amp; FEM.

SINGULAR.			Sing.	Plur.
N.V. animal	mare	calcar	is, ēs	ēs
G. animālis	maris	calcāris	is	ium
D. animālī	marī	calcārī	ī	ibus
Ac. animal	mare	calcar	em, im	ēs, is
Ab. animālī	marī	calcārī	e, ī	ibus

## PLURAL.

## NEUTER.

N.V. animālia	maria	calcāria	e or —	ia
G. animālium	marium	calcārium	is	ium
D. animālibus	maribus	calcāribus	ī	ibus
Ac. animālia	maria	calcāria	e or —	ia
Ab. animālibus	maribus	calcāribus	ī	ibus

## 150.

## ADJECTIVES.

Ācer, keen, eager. St. ācri-

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.V. ācer	ācris	ācre	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G. ācris	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac. ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācre	ācrēs, is	ācrēs, is	ācria
Ab. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Levis, light, nimble. St. levi-

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

	M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V. levis	leve	leve	levēs	levia
G. levis	levis	levis	levium	levium
D. levī	levī	levī	levibus	levibus
Ac. levem	leve	leve	levēs, is	levia
Ab. levī	levī	levī	levibus	levibus

**Memor, mindful. St. memori-**

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
M. & F.	NEUT.	
N.V. <b>memor</b>	<b>memor</b>	<b>memorēs</b>
G. <b>memoris</b>	<b>memoris</b>	<b>memorum</b>
D. <b>memorī</b>	<b>memorī</b>	<b>memoribus</b>
Ac. <b>memorem</b>	<b>memor</b>	<b>memorēs, is</b>
Ab. <b>memorī</b>	<b>memorī</b>	<b>memoribus</b>

**151.** An inspection of the tables shows:—

1. That the *i* of the stem is sometimes lost, and sometimes changed to *e*. It appears in the terminations *im*, *is* (acc. plur.), *i* (abl. sing.), *ia*, and *ium*.

2. That the ablative singular has in some nouns *i*, in some *e*, and in some *i* or *e*; in adjectives, always *i*.

3. That the genitive plural has *ium*, and the nominative and accusative plural neuter *ia*. Compare these endings with the nominative and genitive plural of consonant stems (**105, 134, 140**).

4. **Memor** has *um* in the genitive plural, masculine and feminine. It has no neuter plural. Like **memor** decline **vigil**, *watchful*, which has neuter plural **vigilia**, **vigilium**, etc.

**152.** To stems in *i* belong:—

1. Nouns in *is* and *ēs* not increasing in the genitive.<sup>1</sup>
2. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.
3. Adjectives of two terminations.
4. Adjectives of the third declension of three terminations.

**153.** Nouns in *ēs* (gen. *is*) are declined like **nūbēs**. Most nouns in *is* are declined like **hostis**. **Canis**, *dog*, has genitive plural **canum**.

**154.** The principal nouns declined like **turris** are: **clāvis**, *key*; **nāvis**, *ship*; **puppis**, *stern of a ship*; **secūris**, *axe*.

Like **ignis** are: **amnis**, *river*; **anguis**, *snake*; **avis**, *bird*; **cīvis**, *citizen*; **clāssis**, *fleet*; **collis**, *hill*; **finis**, *end*; **orbis**, *circle*; **postis**, *post*. **Sitis**, *thirst*, has acc. in **-im**, abl. in **-ī**.

<sup>1</sup> That is, having no more syllables than in the nominative.

**155.** Adjectives declined like *ācer* are called adjectives of three terminations; those declined like *levis*, adjectives of two terminations; while those declined like *vetus* (141), *audāx* and *prūdēns* (164), are called adjectives of one termination.

**156.** Decline together *nāvis longa*, *ship of war*; *vallis profunda*, *deep valley*; *Alpēs altae*, *high Alps*. See 161.

## 2.

**157.** *Paradigm illustrating apposition:—*

- N.V. *Cicerō cōsul*, *Cicero, the consul*.  
 G. *Cicerōnis cōsulis*, *of Cicero, the consul*.  
 D. *Cicerōnī cōsulī*, *to or for Cicero, the consul*.  
 Ac. *Cicerōnem cōsulem*, *Cicero, the consul*.  
 Ab. *ā Cicerōne cōsule*, *by Cicero, the consul*.

**158.** RULE OF SYNTAX. — An appositive is in the same case as the noun or pronoun which it qualifies.

## 159.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. In vallibus Alpium sunt fluvī pulchrī. 2. Quae (*what*) animālia aquilam timent? 3. Nāvēs Gallōrum erant longae et altae. 4. Gallī longās nāvēs habēbant. 5. Fuimus in nāvī altā. 6. Rōbur tuum levī labōre augēbitur. 7. Somnus hominibus voluptātem praebet. 8. Habentne militēs dēfessī cibum et aquam? 9. Hominēs cibum ignī coquunt (*cook*). 10. Leōnēs et elephantī sunt animālia fera.

II. 1. In the tower there were many men. 2. The towers of the ships were high. 3. From the high tower we saw the broad sea. 4. The broad sea was seen by men in the high tower. 5. The flight of the horsemen was seen by brave soldiers. 6. Robbers fear a brave man. 7. A brave man is feared by robbers. 8. On the shore they built a tower

for the king. 9. Numa, king of the Romans, changed the number of the months. 10. The number of the months was changed by Numa, a Roman king.

## 3.

## 160.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Turrim altam vidēbant rēgis comitēs. 2. Corpora hominum nōn animī sunt mortālia. 3. Capita animālium multōrum vidēbantur. 4. Aerī animō nāvem latrōnum submovent nautae. 5. Nāvis latrōnum ab ācribus nautīs submovētur. 6. Victōriam dēbēmus turribus nostrīs validīs. 7. Multa animālia sunt levia et vigilia. 8. Avium nōn multa genera in ruīnīs turrium antiquārum habitant. 9. Servī Graeci filiōs Rōmānōrum nōbīlium educābant. 10. Filī Rōmānōrum nōbīlium ā servīs Graecīs saepe educābantur.

II. 1. Polyphemus, son of Neptune, had a huge body. 2. Cyrus, the first king of the Persians, remembered all the names of his soldiers. 3. The names of all his soldiers were remembered by Cyrus, king of the Persians. 4. How many ships of the Gauls were driven off? 5. The number of fires in the town was great.

## 161.

## VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, -ium, *F.*, *Alps*.  
avis, -is, *F.*, *bird* (154).  
fortis, -e, *adj.*, *brave*.  
mēnsis, -is, *M.*, *month*.  
mortālis, -e, *adj.*, *mortal*.  
nāvis, -is, *F.*, *ship* (154).  
nōbīlis, -e, *adj.*, *noble*.  
omnis, -e, *adj.*, *all, every*.  
vallis (or -ēs), -is, *F.*, *valley*.  
vigil, -is, *adj.*, *watchful*.

animus, -i, *M.*, *mind, soul*.  
educō, 1, *train, educate*.

ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *wild*.  
fuga, -ae, *F.*, *flight*.  
genus, -eris, *N.*, *kind, race*.  
habitō, 1, *dwelt, inhabit*.  
latrō, -ōnis, *M.*, *robber*.  
litus, -ōris, *N.*, *shore*.  
multitūdō, -inis, *F.*, *multitude*.  
Neptūnus, -i, *M.*, *Neptune, god of the sea*.  
noster, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.*, *our, ours*.  
Numa, -ae, *M.*, *Numa, a Roman king*.  
Persae, -ūrum, *M.*, *the Persians*.

<b>Polyphēmus, -i, m.,</b> <i>Polyphemus.</i>	<b>sub-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum,</b>
<b>quot, adj. indecl.,</b> <i>how many?</i>	<i>(move from beneath) remove, drive</i>
<b>rōbur, -ōris, n.,</b> <i>strength.</i>	<i>away.</i>
<b>ruīna, -ae, f.,</b> <i>ruin.</i>	<b>vītō, 1,</b> <i>avoid, shun.</i>

## 4.

## 162.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA.

*S.* Nārrā mihi, frāter, dē Polyphēmō; quis fuit et ubi  
habitābat? where

*F.* Polyphēmus filius Neptūnī fuit et cum frātribus in  
īnsulā habitābat.

*S.* Fuitne arātor et agrōs arābat?

*F.* Minimē. Neque fuit arātor neque agrōs arābat Poly-  
neither ploughman nor  
phēmus.

*S.* Nauta igitur sine dubiō fuit, et maria nāvibus  
therefore  
nāvigābat.

*F.* Errāvistī, mea sorōrcula, Polyphēmus fuit pāstor atque  
and  
māgnōs ovium gregēs habēbat. Fuit autem ingentis corporis  
sheep moreover huge  
et ūnum tantum oculum habuit. Ulixēs dolōsus eī ūnum  
only crafty forhim hison  
oculum stīpite perforāvit.  
stake dug out

*S.* Eheu! miserrimum Polyphēmum!  
Oh dear! poor



## CHAPTER XXI. 1.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

MIXED STEMS.<sup>1</sup>

## 163.

## PARADIGMS.

<b>Clīens, M. &amp; F.,</b> <i>client.</i>	<b>Urbs, F.,</b> <i>city.</i>	<b>Arx, F.,</b> <i>citadel.</i>	
			SINGULAR.
N.V. cliēns	urbs	arx	TERMINATIONS.
G. clientis	urbis	arcis	is
D. clientī	urbī	arcī	ī
Ac. clientem	urbem	arcem	em
Ab. cliente	urbe	arco	e
			PLURAL.
N.V. clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	ēs
G. clientium	urbium	arcium	ium
D. clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	ibus
Ac. clientēs, is	urbēs, is	arcēs, is	ēs, is
Ab. clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	ibus

## 164.

## ADJECTIVES.

*Audāx, bold; prūdēns, sagacious.*

M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
SINGULAR.			
N.V. audāx	audāx	prūdēns	prūdēns
G. audācis	audācis	prudentis	prudentis
D. audācī	audācī	prudentī	prudentī
Ac. audācem	audāx	prudentem	prūdēns
Ab. audācī, e	audācī, e	prudentī, e	prudentī, e
PLURAL.			
N.V. audācēs	audācia	prudentēs	prudentia
G. audācium	audācium	prudentium	prudentium
D. audācibus	audācibus	prudentibus	prudentibus
Ac. audācēs, is	audācia	prudentēs, is	prudentia
Ab. audācibus	audācibus	prudentibus	prudentibus

<sup>1</sup> Usually classed as *i* stems. See 166.

## 165.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Amāns, loving.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V. amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
G. amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
D. amanti	amanti	amantibus	amantibus
Ac. amantem	amāns	amantēs, is	amantia
Ab. amante, ī	amante, ī	amantibus	amantibus

166. Note in the above tables:—

1. That the nouns are declined in the singular like consonant stems (105, 134, 140), and the adjectives also, except that, like *i* stems, they have an ablative in *i*.

2. That the plural of both nouns and adjectives is like that of *i* stems (149, 150).

167. To the class of mixed stems belong:—

1. Nouns in *ns* and *rs*. But *parēns* has the genitive plural *parentum*.

2. Monosyllables in *s* and *x* following a consonant, together with *nix*, *nivis*, *snow*; *nox*, *noctis*, *night*; *os*, *ossis*, *bone*; *mūs*, *mūris*, *mouse*.

3. Adjectives of one ending, with some exceptions, of which the most important are: *dīves*, *rich*; *pauper*, *poor*; *particeps*, *sharing*; *prīnceps*, *chief*; and compounds of nouns that have consonant stems. These all have the genitive plural in *um*.

4. Present active participles.

168. RULES OF GENDER. — 1. Nouns ending in *ō*, *er*, *ōs*, *er*, *es* (gen. *īdis*, *ītis*), are masculine.

But nouns ending in *dō* and *gō*, of more than two syllables, together with abstract<sup>1</sup> and collective<sup>2</sup> nouns in *īdō*, are feminine.

2. Nouns ending in *ās*, *ēs* not increasing in the genitive, *is*, *x*, and *s* following a consonant, are feminine.

<sup>1</sup> Abstract nouns are such as denote a *thought* rather than a *thing*: *ratio*, *method*.

<sup>2</sup> Collective nouns are such as in the singular imply a number of things or persons: *legiō*, *legion*.

**3. Nouns ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur,* and *us*, are neuter.**

There are many exceptions to these rules, which the learner should note as he advances.

**169.** Decline together *fōns profundus*, *deep spring*; *hostis audāx*, *bold enemy*; *māgna pars*, *great part*. See **172**.

## 2.

**170.**

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Alpēs sunt montēs Eurōpae. 2. Saepe in lateribus montium sunt silvae. 3. Multōrum annium fontēs sunt parvī. 4. In Alpibus sunt, regiōnēs pulchrae et suāvēs. 5. Sunt vallēs profundae, rūpēs altae, silvae māgnae. 6. Ibi māgnam vidēbis multitudinem vulpium. 7. Aestāte ovium gregēs videntur. 8. Militem fortem nōn terrēbit pericūlum. 9. Miles fortis pericūlō nōn terrēbitur. 10. Omnēs adulescentēs erunt milītēs fortēs.

II. 1. There are mountains in Europe. 2. On the sides of the mountains are tall trees. 3. Many rivers have small sources. 4. Parts of the Alps are beautiful. 5. The Alps have deep valleys and high cliffs. 6. Wild beasts are seen on the sides of the Alps. 7. There you will see shepherds and sheep. 8. Brave soldiers do not fear dangers. 9. The fathers of the young men are soldiers. 10. We honor the brave soldier.

## 3.

**171.**

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quid vident hominēs in montibus altīs? 2. Aquilam, avem audācem, in rūpibus vident. 3. Nōne in arboribus altīs habitat rēx avium? 4. Certē, et parvīs avibus est terror māgnus, nam inter avēs régnat. 5. Āerēs sunt aquilārum oculī; longē vident vērātōrem. 6. In marī clāssē hostium vidēmus. 7. Clāssis nāvium ā latrōnibus vidēbātur. 8. Magister mōrēs bonōs et diligentiam discipulōrum laudā-

bit. 9. Mōrēs bonī et dīlīgētia ā magistrō laudābuntur.  
10. Omnis Galliae sunt partēs trēs (*three*).

11. 1. Men dwell in the deep valleys of the mountains.  
2. In summer they have flocks on the mountains. 3. Why do men call the eagle the king<sup>1</sup> of birds? 4. Do not keen hunters see the eagle from afar? 5. The enemy's ships plough the deep sea. 6. The robbers saw the ships with great terror.<sup>2</sup> 7. Solon was the author of many good laws. 8. In ancient states there were free men and slaves. 9. The memory of the wise Solon has been honored.

## 172.

## VOCABULARY.

adulēscēns, -entis, M. & F., youth, young man.	latus, -eris, N., side. Cf. <i>lātus</i> , broad.
fōns, fontis, M., source, spring.	lēx, lēgis, F., law.
mōns, montis, M., mountain.	longē, adv., afar, at a distance.
pars, partis, F., part.	mōs, mōris, M., manner, custom.
sapiēns, -entis, adj., wise.	nam, conj., for.
	ovis, -is, F., sheep.
amnis, -is, M., river (154).	pāstor, -ōris, M., shepherd.
arbor, -ōris, F., tree.	periculum, -i, N., danger, peril.
auctor, -ōris, M., author.	profundus, -a, -um, adj., deep.
Belgae, -arum, M., the Belgians.	regiō, -ōnis, F., region.
clāssis, -is, F., fleet (154).	rēgnō, 1, be king, rule, reign.
dīlīgētia, -ae, F., diligence.	rūpēs, -is, F., rock, cliff.
fera, -ae, F., wild beast.	silva, -ae, F., wood, forest.
honōrō, 1, honor.	Solō, -ōnis, M., Solon, an Athenian lawgiver.
hostis, -is, M. & F., enemy.	suāvis, -e, adj., sweet, pleasant.
ibi, adv., there.	vēnator, -ōris, M., hunter.
inter, prep. w. acc., between, among.	vulpēs, -is, F., fox.

amnis, a large, deep river; not the common prose word for river.

flūmen (203), general word for river; flowing, as opposed to still water, as a lake or pond.

fluvius (84), not different from flūmen, but much less used.

hostis, general word for enemy; a public enemy, enemy in war.

inimicus (78), a private or personal enemy; opposed to amicus.

<sup>1</sup> Predicate accusative.

<sup>2</sup> See 144, 145.

## 4.

## COLLOQUIUM.

173. *Translate into Latin:—*

FATHER AND SON.

*F.* Tell me (*mihi*) about Solon, if you please (*si placet*).

*S.* Solon was a wise Athenian (*Athēniēnsis*); his (*ejus*) laws were famous, and his memory will always be honored. He was the friend of poor men (*pauperum*). He saw many lands and many men. He did not fear Pisistratus the usurper (*tyrannum*).

*F.* Was Miltiades also (*quoque*) an Athenian?

*S.* Certainly; he overcame the Persians (*Persās*) in the battle of Marathon.<sup>1</sup> He was a brave and skilful leader. He had a brave son.



## CHAPTER XXII. 1.

## REVIEW.

174. Decline together *gladius ācer*, sharp sword; *cōnsilium ūtile*, useful counsel; *aquila celeris*, swift eagle; *animal vĕlōx*, fleet animal. See 179.

175. Examples of the locative case in the third declension are: *Carthāginī*, or *Carthāgine*, at Carthage, *rūrī*, in the country.

176. Affix the proper terminations to the adjectives in the following, and translate:—

1. *Equō celer-*, *equōrum vĕlōc-*, *equīs vĕlōc-*. 2. *Puella trīst-*, *puellae trīst-*, *puellam trīst-*, *puellārum prūdēt-*. 3. *Gladiūs ācer-*, *gladiōs ācer-*, *gladium ācer-*. 4. *Librō ūtil-*, *librōrum ūtil-*, *librum ūtil-*. 5. *Dōnum ūtil-*, *dōna ūtil-*, *dōnī ūtil-*. 6. *Servī fidĕl-*, *servō fidĕl-*, *servōs fidĕl-*, *servīs fidĕl-*.

<sup>1</sup> *Of Marathon, Marathōnius, -a, -um.*

## 177.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Equi sunt celerēs. 2. Proelium equestre fuit.  
 3. Viri fortēs laudantur. 4. Virum fortem laudāmus.  
 5. Omne initium est difficile. 6. Bella sunt tristia. 7. Cōn-  
 silium ducis audāx fuit. 8. Vetus vinum est bonum.  
 9. Acris et vĕlōx est aquila. 10. Multa animālia vītās  
 brevēs habent.

II. 1. The soldiers have keen weapons. 2. I have a  
 swift horse. 3. We praise brave men. 4. Do you like  
 sweet food? 5. The lessons are not hard. 6. The plans of  
 the commander are sagacious. 7. Life is short. 8. There  
 are swift eagles in the mountains. 9. The king has bold  
 sailors. 10. The wings of the swift eagle are long.

## 2.

## 178.

## EXERCISES.

Write out the whole of 177. I. in Latin, changing singulars  
 to plurals and plurals to singulars. Thus, 4 will be virōs  
 fortēs laudō.

Turn II. into Latin, first changing the sentences as  
 directed above in regard to I.

## 179.

## VOCABULARY.

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, eager*.  
 brevis, -e, adj., *short*.  
 celer, celeris, celere, adj., *quick*,  
*fleet, swift*.  
 difficilis, -e, adj., *difficult, hard*.  
 equester, -tris, -tre, adj., *eques-*  
*trian*.

fidēlis, -e, adj., *faithful*.  
 initium, -i, n., *beginning*.  
 tēlum, -i, n., *weapon*.  
 tristis, -e, adj., *sad*.  
 ūtilis, -e, adj., *useful*.  
 vĕlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift, fleet*.  
 vīta, -ae, f., *life*.

*celer*, quick, with the added notion of *eagerness or energy*.  
*vĕlōx*, swift, sometimes implying *nimbleness*.

# CHAPTER XXIII.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

180.

Ē-VERBS.

Regō (stem rege), rule.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxī,<sup>1</sup> rēctum.<sup>2</sup>

## INDICATIVE.

## ACTIVE.

*I rule, etc.*

regō	regimus
regis	regitis
regit	regunt

## PASSIVE.

*I am ruled, etc.*

regor	regimur
regēris, or -re	regiminī
regitur	reguntur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling, etc.*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

*I was ruled, etc.*

regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbāris, or -re	regēbāminī
regēbātur	regēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall rule, etc.*

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
regent	regent

*I shall be ruled, etc.*

regar	regēmur
regēris, or -re	regēminī
regētur	regentur

## PERFECT.

*I have ruled, etc.*

rēxī	rēximus
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt, or -re

*I have been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	{ sum	rēctī	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled, etc.*

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

*I had been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	{ eram	rēctī	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

<sup>1</sup> Rēxī for reg-sī. See p. 1, note 2.<sup>2</sup> Rēctum for reg-tum.

ACTIVE.		FUTURE PERFECT.		PASSIVE.			
<i>I shall have ruled, etc.</i>		<i>I shall have been ruled, etc.</i>					
rēx erō	rēx erīmus	rēct us	{	erō	{ erimus		
rēx erīs	rēx erītis			eris		rēct ī	eritis
rēx erit	rēx erint			erit			erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.<sup>1</sup>

PRESENT.			
reg am	reg āmus	reg ar	reg āmur
reg ās	reg ātis	reg āris, or -re	reg āminī
reg at	reg ant	reg ātur	reg antur

IMPERFECT.			
reg erem	reg erēmus	reg erer	reg erēmur
reg erēs	reg erētis	reg erēris, or -re	reg erēminī
reg eret	reg erent	reg erētur	reg erentur

		PERFECT.			
rēx erim	rēx erīmus	rēct us	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim} \\ \text{sis} \\ \text{sit} \end{array} \right.$	rēct ī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$
rēx erīs	rēx erītis				
rēx erit	rēx erint				

PLUPERFECT.									
rēx issem	rēx issēmus	rēct us	{	essem	rēct ī	{	essēmus		
rēx issēs	rēx issētis							essēs	essētis
rēx isset	rēx issent								

## IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	
reg e, rule thou.	reg ere, be thou ruled.
reg ite, rule ye.	reg iminī, be ye ruled.

FUTURE.	
reg itō, thou shalt rule.	reg itor, thou shalt be ruled.
reg itō, he shall rule.	reg itor, he shall be ruled.
reg itōte, ye shall rule.	
reg untō, they shall rule.	reg untor, they shall be ruled.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 26, note.



ACTIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PASSIVE.
PRES. <i>regere</i> , to rule.	<i>regī</i> , to be ruled.	
PERF. <i>rēxisse</i> , to have ruled.	<i>rēctus esse</i> , to have been ruled.	
FUT. <i>rēctūrus esse</i> , to be about to rule.	<i>rēctum irī</i> , to be about to be ruled.	

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. <i>regēns, -entis</i> , ruling.	
FUT. <i>rēctūrus, -a, -um</i> , about to rule.	GER. <i>regendus, -a, -um</i> , to be ruled.
	PERF. <i>rēctus, -a, -um</i> , having been ruled.

GERUND. *simple*

- G. *regendī*, of ruling.  
 D. *regendō*, for ruling.  
 Ac. *regendum*, ruling.  
 Ab. *regendō*, by ruling.

## SUPINE.

- Ac. *rēctum*, to rule.  
 Ab. *rēctū*, to rule, to be ruled.

## CHAPTER XXIV. 1.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

**181.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of *regō*.

**182.** EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Regitis, regēbātis, regētis*. 2. *Regitur, regēbātur, regētur*. 3. *Regō, regēbam, regam*. 4. *Reguntur, regēbantur, regentur*. 5. *Regere, regī*. 6. *Regite, regere*. 7. *Regis, regeris*. 8. *Regimus, regimur*. 9. *Regit, regitur*. 10. *Regitis, regiminī*.

- II. 1. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 2. To be ruled, to rule. 3. They rule, they were ruling, they will

rule. 4. We rule, we are ruled. 5. We shall rule, we shall be ruled. 6. You are ruling, you were ruling, you will rule. 7. Rule (thou), be (thou) ruled. 8. He is ruling, he is ruled. 9. They ruled, they were ruled. 10. I rule, I ruled, I shall rule.

## 2.

## 183.

## EXERCISES.

*Scrībō*,<sup>1</sup> write; *mittō*,<sup>1</sup> send; *emō*,<sup>1</sup> buy.

I. 1. *Scrībis, mittis, emis.* 2. *Mittitur, scrībitur, emitur.* 3. *Nōne mittēbās? nōne scrībēbant? nōne emēbam?* 4. *Scrībētur, mittēbantur, ementur.* 5. *Mitte, scrībite, emite.* 6. *Emere, scrībere, mittere.* 7. *Nōn mittunt, nōn scrībitis, nōn emet.* 8. *Scrībamne? emuntne? mittimusne?* 9. *Mitteris, mittēris, scrībētur.* 10. *Scrībī, mittī, emī.*

II. 1. He writes, he is sent, they buy. 2. Is it written? does he send? are they bought? 3. I shall buy, thou wilt send, he will write. 4. It will not be written, we shall not be sent, thou wilt not be bought. 5. To write, to send, to buy. 6. Write, send, buy. 7. We are sent, they were bought, it is (being) written. 8. They write, they will buy, they were sending. 9. I was writing, we were sending, I shall buy. 10. You are sent, it was (being) written, they are bought.

## 184.

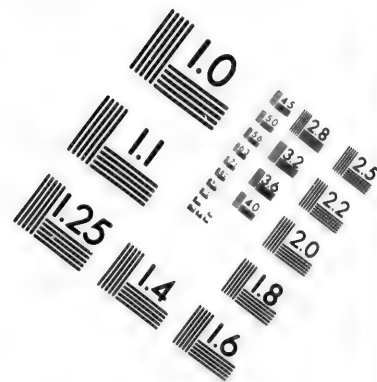
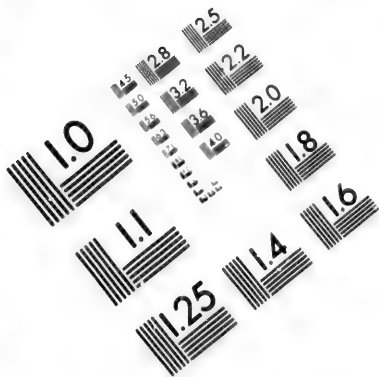
## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Imperātor multās urbēs vincet.* 2. *Multae terrae ab Rōmānīs regēbantur.* 3. *Omnem mundum regit Deus.* 4. *Dux Rōmānus ex Graeciā in Ītaliā portābat multās statuās.* 5. *Virī fortēs timōre nōn vincuntur.* 6. *Pābulum mīlitibus<sup>2</sup> emētur.* 7. *Hannibal mīlitēs trāns Alpēs dūcēbat.*

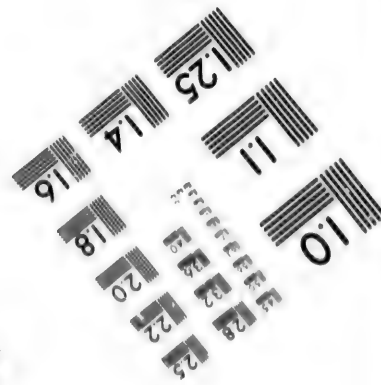
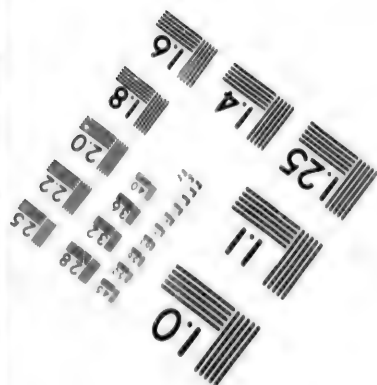
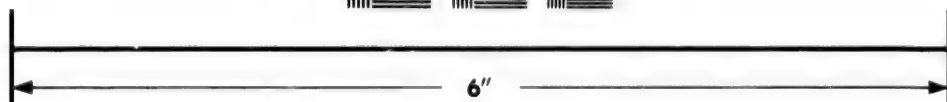
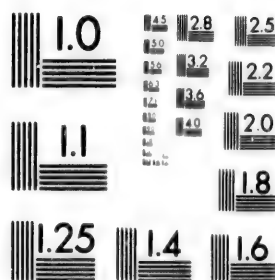
<sup>1</sup> For principal parts, see 186.

<sup>2</sup> What would be the meaning of *ā mīlitibus*?



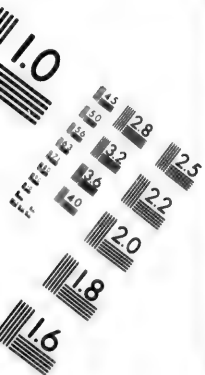


# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N. Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4303



8. Trāns fluvium erat parva urbs. 9. Urbs ā cīvibus dēfēndēbātur. 10. Nautae, ē nāvī dēscendite.

II. 1. The commander writes a letter. 2. Letters are written by the commander. 3. Hannibal was leading his soldiers into Italy. 4. The citizens are defended by their<sup>1</sup> leaders. 5. Cæsar conquered all his enemies. 6. Rome will be defended by the citizens. 7. Drive the sheep into the fields. 8. There are many robbers in the city. 9. Near the town is a broad valley. 10. Come down out of the tower.

## 3.

## 185.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Omnis mundus ā Deō regitur. 2. Puerīs librōs emam. 3. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidī ā Caesaris militibus vincentur. 4. In Āfricā servī emuntur. 5. Hieme multa animalia in vallēs dēscendunt. 6. Agricolaē in urbem ovēs agent. 7. Omnēs canēs ex urbe agēmus. 8. Epistulam dē bellō scribēbam. 9. Puer epistulam dē pēnsīs scribēbat. 10. Poēta bonus poēmata bona scribet.

II. 1. The king's brothers send soldiers into Greece. 2. I will send my brother's son into Africa. 3. You will be sent into Sicily. 4. Send men across the river. 5. The city was defended with<sup>2</sup> great bravery by all the citizens. 6. Pyrrhus led many men across the sea into Italy. 7. In<sup>3</sup> winter many animals are overcome by hunger. 8. The farmers are buying food for their sheep. 9. Strong men were driving the white horses into the river. 10. The good shepherd leads his sheep.

<sup>1</sup> See 100.

<sup>2</sup> Is it necessary to translate with by cum? See examples and rule, 144, 145.

<sup>3</sup> Is in to be separately expressed in Latin? See fifth sentence above, and examples and rule, 135, 136.

## 186.

## VOCABULARY.

agō, 3, ēgī, āctum, <i>drive, lead.</i>	Caesar, -āris, M., <i>Cæsar.</i>
dē-fendō, 3, -dī, -sum, <i>defend.</i>	canis, -is, M. & F., <i>dog. (153.)</i>
dē-scendō, 3, -dī, -sum, <i>descend,</i> <i>g. down, come down.</i>	civis, -is, M. & F., <i>citizen.</i>
dūcō, 3, dūxi, ductum, <i>lead.</i>	cē, prep. w. abl., <i>concerning, about.</i>
emō, 3, ēmī, ēmptum, <i>buy.</i>	epistula, -ae, F., <i>letter.</i>
mittō, 3, misi, missum, <i>send.</i>	famēs, -is, F., <i>hunger, famine.</i>
scribō, 3, scripsi, scriptum, <i>write.</i>	hiems, hiemis, F., <i>winter.</i>
sūmō, 3, sūmsi, sūmptum, <i>take.</i>	latrō, -ōnis, M., <i>robber.</i>
vincō, 3, vici, victum, <i>conquer.</i>	mundus, -i, M., <i>world, universe.</i>
	prope, prep. w. acc., <i>near.</i>
	trāns, prep. w. acc., <i>across, beyond.</i>

superō (102), *to have the upper hand, surpass, conquer.*

vincō, *to get the mastery, vanquish, conquer.*

What difference do you make out from a comparison of the meanings?

## 4.

## 187.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## CHARŌN ET MERCURIUS.

Ch. Salvē, Ō Mercurī!

hall

M. Et tū, salvē, portitor.

ferryman

Ch. Mercurī, dūcisne hodiē multōs mănēs?

souls

M. Hodiē mānium dūcō numerum māgnū. Triste est

sad

officium meum. Ithaca tibi procul dubiō nōta est atque Ulixēs.

duty

without doubt known

Ch. Rēctē dīxistī. Ithaca est insula inter Graeciam et

you have said

Italiam sita; et mihi nōtus est Ulixēs, nam ipse ōlim hūc

situated

himself formerly hither

vēnit.

came

M. Jam aspice mănēs procerum et servōrum infidōrum.

now see

chiefs

unfaithful

Hī omnēs ab Ulixē necatī sunt.

these

Ch. Istud mihi placet. Mănēs in cymbā trānsveham.

that

boat

carry over

Valē, Mercurī.

M. Et tū valē, Charōn.

## 5.

188.

FOR TRANSLATION.<sup>1</sup>

PŪBLIUS CORNĒLIUS SCĪPIŌ.

Pŭblius Cornĕlius Scĭpiŏ mājor,<sup>2</sup> adulĕscĕns<sup>3</sup> septendecim annŏrum, ad Ticĭnum flūmen patrem vulnerātum servāvit. In pŭgnā Cannĕnsī fortiter dīmīcāvit. Postēa Carthāginem Novam, urbem in Hispāniā Poenŏrum firmissimam expŭgnāvit. Obsidēs Hispānŏrum benīgnē tractāvit et libertāte dŏnāvit.<sup>4</sup> Nŏn minus fĕliciter Scĭpiŏ in Āfricā bellāvit ibique Poenŏs ita ursit<sup>5</sup> ut Hannibalem ex Ītaliā revocārent.<sup>6</sup> Ad Zamam Scĭpiŏnis et Hannibalis exercitŭs<sup>7</sup> castra habuērunt; clārum est illud colloquium, quod Hannibal, dux Poenŏrum, et Scĭpiŏ, cōsul Rŏmānus, ante pŭgnam habuērunt. Poenī ā Scĭpiŏne superātī fugātīque sunt. Scĭpiŏ triumphum māgnificum ex Āfricā reportāvit et ā populŏ Āfricānus appellātus est.



## CHAPTER XXV. 1.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

**189.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **regō**.

190.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Rēxit, rēxerat, rēxerit. 2. Rēxērunt, rēxerant, rēxerint. 3. Rēxisse, rēctus esse. 4. Rēctum est, rēctum erat, rēctum erit. 5. Rēxistī, rēxerās, rēxeris. 6. Rēximus,

<sup>1</sup> For meanings of words, see general vocabulary.

<sup>2</sup> The elder.

<sup>3</sup> When a youth.

<sup>4</sup> Presented them with their liberty  
= set them free.

<sup>5</sup> From **urgeō**; ita ursit, pressed them so hard.

<sup>6</sup> Ut . . . revocārent, that they recalled.

<sup>7</sup> Nom. plur., subject of habuērunt.



rēctī sumus. 7. Rēxistis, rēctī estis. 8. Rēxī, rēxeram, rēxerō. 9. Rēxerant, rēctī erant. 10. Rēcta est, rēcta erat, rēcta erit.

II. 1. I have ruled, I had ruled, I shall have ruled. 2. I have ruled, I have been ruled. 3. They have ruled, they have been ruled. 4. You ruled, you had ruled, you will have ruled. 5. He will have ruled, he will have been ruled. 6. To have been ruled, to have ruled. 7. They had ruled, they had been ruled. 8. She has ruled, she has been ruled. 9. It was ruled, it had been ruled, it will have been ruled. 10. They (*neut.*) were ruled, they had been ruled, they will have been ruled.

## 2.

## 191.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dūxit, ēmerit, sūmpserit. 2. Ēmit,<sup>1</sup> dūxistī, sūmpsi. 3. Sūmptus est, ductae sumus, ēmpta sunt. 4. Eratne ductus? erantne ēmptae? eratne sūmptum? 5. Dūxerimus, sūmpseritis, ēmerint. 6. Nōne dūximus? nōne ēmerāmus? nōne ēmerimus? 7. Dūxistī, ēmērunt, sūmpsimus. 8. Ducta est, ēmptum est, sūmpta erat. 9. Dūxisse, ēmissee, sūmpsisse. 10. Nōn dūxeram, nōn ēmerātis, nōn sūmpserō.

II. 1. She had been led, it has been bought, they (*neut.*) will have been taken. 2. I have taken, you have bought, he has led. 3. Has it not been taken? had he not been led? have they (*neut.*) not been bought? 4. I had led, you had bought, he had taken. 5. They will have taken, I shall have led, thou wilt have bought. 6. I was led, it was bought, it had been taken. 7. To have been led, to have been bought, to have been taken. 8. We shall have taken, I shall have bought, he will have led. 9. Did he take? didst thou buy? did you lead? 10. They did not lead, you had not bought, she will not have taken.

<sup>1</sup> How do you know whether this form is present or perfect?

## 192.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hostēs vicinus. 2. Hostēs territi victique sunt. 3. Horātius oculum in proelio amiserat. 4. O patria, vicisti iram meam. 5. Scipio in Hispaniam missus est. 6. Spartacus, dux gladiatorum, consulēs Rōmānōs vicit. 7. Gallia inter Pyrēnaeōs montēs et Rhēnum posita est.<sup>1</sup> 8. Metellus bellum in Hispaniā gessit. 9. Quid timēs? Caesarem vehis. 10. Bellum ā Pyrrhō in Italiā gestum est. 11. A Spartacō, duce gladiatorum, consulēs Rōmānī victi sunt.

II. 1. Have you lost your books? 2. My brother will sail<sup>2</sup> in a small ship. 3. Do men live in trees? 4. Neptune ruled (over) the deep sea. 5. A river flows out of the mountain. 6. The girl's head was encircled with flowers. 7. War has been waged in Italy. 8. A lazy boy is often despised. 9. The ancient Romans did not despise war. 10. The king had surrounded the city with walls. 11. Did not Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, wage war in Italy?

## 3.

## 193.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Avēs multae in arboribus vivunt. 2. Viri fortēs urbem templaque deōrum dēfendērunt. 3. Dux trāns mare in nāvī vectus est. 4. Tyrannī ā virīs fortibus contempti sunt. 5. Pōnite pedēs in rūpem. 6. Virgō ā templō tracta erat. 7. Hannibal ā Scipiōne victus est. 8. Caesar militēs in equōs posuit. 9. Oppidum mūrō altō cinctum erat. 10. Oppidānī oppidum mūrō altō cinxērunt. 11. Inter montem et oppidum fluēbat fluvius lātus. 12. Bellum in Hispaniā ā Metellō imperātōre Rōmānō gestum est.

II. 1. A large fleet was bought with gold by Caesar. 2. The general's daughter had been carried in a wagon.

<sup>1</sup> Posita est, is situated.<sup>2</sup> Future passive of vehō.

3. The commander had carried on war against his enemies.  
 4. All the property<sup>1</sup> of the enemy has been lost. 5. Many men live by agriculture. 6. We went away from Italy to<sup>2</sup> Sicily. 7. My brother has departed from his native land. 8. Have they lost their books? 9. Have not men always despised tyrants? 10. The boys rode on horseback<sup>3</sup> with great pleasure.<sup>4</sup> 11. The farmer's cart is drawn by strong horses. 12. My books have been lost.

## 194.

## VOCABULARY.

*ā-mittō*, 3, *-misi*, *-missum*, *lose*.

*cingō*, 3, *clixi*, *clinctum*, *bind*, *en-circle*, *surround*.

*con-temnō*, 3, *-tempsi*, *-temptum*, *despise*.

*dis-cēdō*, 3, *-cēssi*, *-cēssum*, *depart*.

*fluō*, 3, *flūxi*, *flūxum*, *flow*.

*gerō*, 3, *gessi*, *gestum*, *carry on*, *wage (war)*.

*pōnō*, 3, *posui*, *positum*, *put*, *place*.

*trahō*, 3, *traxi*, *-ctum*, *drag*, *draw*.

*vehō*, 3, *vexi*, *vectum*, *carry*, *draw*.

*vivō*, 3, *vixi*, *victum*, *live*.

*contrā*, prep. w. acc., *against*.

*carrus*, -i, m., *cart*, *wagon*.

*Gallia*, -ae, f., *Gaul*.

*gladiātor*, -ōris, m., *gladiator*.

*Hispania*, -ae, f., *Spain*.

*Horātius*, -i, m., *Horatius*. (79.)

*Metellus*, -i, m., *Metellus*, a Roman general.

*patria*, -ae, f., *native land*.

*Pyrēnaeus*, -a, -um, adj., *Pyrenean*, *Pyrenees*.

*-que* (enclitic),<sup>5</sup> conj., *and*.

*Rhēnus*, -i, m., *the Rhine*.

*Scipiō*, -ōnis, m., *Scipio*, a Roman general.

*Spartacus*, -i, m., *Spartacus*, a gladiator.

*virgō*, -inis, f., *maiden*, *girl*.

*habitō* (161), trans. and intrans., *live*, in the sense of *dwelt*, *inhabit*, with reference to place.

*vivō*, intrans., *have life*, *live*, often with reference to some condition or circumstance other than place.

<sup>1</sup> Goods. See 117.

<sup>2</sup> Into. See 52.

<sup>3</sup> Ride on horseback = *be carried on a horse*.

<sup>4</sup> See 145.

<sup>5</sup> I.e., appended to some word, as in 192. I. 2.

## 4.

## 195.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

P. Quis fuit Hannibal? Fuit Rōmānus an Carthāginiēnsis?  
Carthaginian

D. Fuit Carthāginiēnsis et ā Scīpiōe victus est.

P. Ubi fuit Hannibalis patria?  
where

D. Carthāgō, Hannibalis patria, fuit in Āfricā.

P. Cūr fuit? cūr nōn est in Āfricā?  
why

D. Quia Carthāgō ā Scīpiōne dēlēta est.  
was destroyed

P. Quot nōmina erant Scīpiōnī?  
how many

D. Tria Scīpiōnī erant nōmina. Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō.  
three

P. Rēctē, mī puer, praenōmen *Pūblius*; *Cornēlius* nōmen  
first name

gentīle; *Scīpiō* cōgnōmen.  
family cognomen

D. Nōne interdum appellātus est Scīpiō *Āfricānus*?  
sometimes was called

P. Certissimē. Hōc autem nōmen dīcēbant Rōmānī  
this moreover  
 cōgnōmen secundum.



## CHAPTER XXVI. 1.

## REVIEW.

## 196.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dēfendite, cīvēs, cīvitātem. 2. Cīvitās est māter  
 nostra. 3. Cīvēs sunt frātrēs nostrī. 4. Puerī, frātrēs  
 amāte. 5. Ōrnāte, cīvēs, urbem monumentīs statuīsq̄.  
 6. Urbēs pulchrae in Ītaliā videntur. 7. Habitāsne in urbe  
 pulchrā? 8. Urbs Rōma<sup>1</sup> mūrō cincta est. 9. Rōma ā cīvibus  
 cum fortitūdine dēfēnsa est. 10. Militēs Rōmānī erant fortēs.

<sup>1</sup> See 157. 158.

II. 1. The citizens are defenders of the state. 2. Roman mothers furnished brave heroes for the state. 3. Do you write letters to your brothers? 4. From<sup>1</sup> springs in the mountains the rivers flow. 5. The city will be adorned with golden<sup>2</sup> statues. 6. In Greece we do<sup>3</sup> not see many beautiful cities. 7. The city is defended by watchful guards. 8. A high wall encircles the farmer's field. 9. We shall remain near Cæsar's camp. 10. We teach our children by means of stories.<sup>4</sup>

2.

197.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cōsulēs ā Pyrrhō victī sunt. 2. Urbs ā cōsulibus dēfendētur. 3. Filiī rēgis audācis sunt cīvitātis dēfēnsōrēs. 4. Clāmōribus mīlitum nostrōrum territī sunt hostēs. 5. Militēs in urbe nostrā nōn saepe vidēmus. 6. In montibus et silvīs vīvunt aprī. 7. Malī<sup>5</sup> poenae timōre coercentur. 8. Lēgibus patriae omnēs<sup>6</sup> coercēmur. 9. Fluvius oppidum cingit. 10. Mōrēs malī ab hominibus bonīs contemnuntur.

II. 1. Who defeated the Roman consuls? 2. The consul was besieging a city of Spain. 3. We all have seen the pleasant light of the moon. 4. The sad maidens were sitting near a deep river. 5. The maidens were weeping because they had lost their flowers. 6. The boars are descending headlong into the sea. 7. Soldiers are not often seen in our streets. 8. The ancient city of Rome<sup>7</sup> was ruled by kings. 9. The shepherd's son will weep if he loses (shall have lost) a sheep. 10. The teacher was teaching his pupils<sup>8</sup> the poems of Homer.

<sup>1</sup> ē rather than ā.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 37, note 1.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 14, note 1.

<sup>4</sup> See 90 and 91.

<sup>5</sup> See 117.

<sup>6</sup> Omnēs agrees with the understood subject of *coercēmur*.

<sup>7</sup> The city of Rome = the city Rome. See 157, 158.

<sup>8</sup> Accusative. See p. 54, note 2.

## 198.

## VOCABULARY.

fābula, -ae, F., story, tale, fable.

frāter, -tris, M., brother.

māter, -tris, F., mother.

omnis, -e, adj., all, every, whole.

praeceps, -cipitis, adj., headlong.

tristis, -e, adj., sad, gloomy.

X

## 3.

## 199.

FOR TRANSLATION.<sup>1</sup>

## PRŌSERPĪNA.

Prōserpina, Cereris filia, aliquandō in Siciliā ad urbem Hennam in campīs flōrēs carpēbat, sēta nectēbat lūdēbatque cum comitibus. Nam campī ibi flōribus pulchrīs sparsi<sup>2</sup> sunt. Subitō terra concussa<sup>3</sup> est atque Plūtō, īnferōrum deus, ē terrā ēmersit;<sup>4</sup> ējus currum equī ātrī vehēbant. Deus Prōserpinam abdūxit, ut uxor sua et īnferōrum rēgīna esset;<sup>5</sup> clāmōrem puellae compressit.<sup>6</sup> Jūppiter autem frātrī permiserat ut Prōserpinam abdūceret.<sup>7</sup> Māter cum<sup>8</sup> īgnōrāret, ubi filia esset,<sup>9</sup> tōtum orbem terrārum frūstrā peragrāvit.

[Continued on p. 92.]

## CHAPTER XXVII. 1.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

**200.** The following adjectives have *īus* (rarely *īus*) in the genitive singular of all genders, and *ī* in the dative:

alius, alia, aliud, another.

nūllus, -a, -um, no one, none, no.

sōlus, -a, -um, alone, sole.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole.

ūllus, -a, -um, any.

ūnus, -a, -um, one, alone.

<sup>1</sup> For meanings of words, see general vocabulary.

<sup>2</sup> From spargō.

<sup>3</sup> From concutiō.

<sup>4</sup> From ēmergō.

<sup>5</sup> Ut . . . esset, that she might be.

<sup>6</sup> From comprimō.

<sup>7</sup> Ut . . . abdūceret, that he might lead away = to lead away.

<sup>8</sup> Cum ignōrāret, since she did not know.

<sup>9</sup> Was.

*alter, altera, alterum, the other of two.*  
*neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither of two.*  
*uter, utra, utrum, which of two?*  
*uterque, utrâque, utrumque, each of two, both.*

201.

PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
G.	alius	alius	alius	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
D.	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Ac.	aliū	aliā	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
Ab.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

202.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Virtūs sōla vēram dat voluptātem. 2. Alius<sup>1</sup> aliud dīxit. 3. In utram partē<sup>2</sup> fluit flūmen? 4. Alter<sup>3</sup> Graecus, alter<sup>3</sup> Rōmānus erat. 5. Utrī cōsulī dat civitās tōtam laudem? Neutrī. 6. Aliī<sup>4</sup> virtūte, aliī<sup>4</sup> dolīs hostēs superant.<sup>5</sup> 7. Ūnūs hominis mors tōtam urbem servāvit. 8. Alterī discipulō laudem, alterī culpam dat<sup>5</sup> praeceptor. 9. Nūllius precibus cēdēmus. 10. Ā Cicerōne ūnō urbs servāta est.

II. 1. The farmer was ploughing his field alone. 2. He is praised by one, blamed by another. 3. To which of the two does the teacher give the praise? 4. Some like<sup>6</sup> boys, others like girls. 5. Death is feared by no good man. 6. The consul conquered some of his enemies, by others he

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *another said another thing*. The English of it is, *one said one thing, another another*.

<sup>2</sup> *Into which part?* i.e., *in which direction?*

<sup>3</sup> *Alter ... alter, the one ... the other*.

<sup>4</sup> *Alii ... alii, some ... others; aliud ... aliud, one thing ... another thing*.

<sup>5</sup> This sentence illustrates a common usage of the Latin. A verb belonging to two groups of words is often placed only with the last, and must be mentally supplied with the first. With the English it is the reverse. Show the application of the remark.

<sup>6</sup> See note 5.



was conquered. 7. One leg is long, the other short. 8. Some praise one thing, others another. 9. The plan of the whole war was disclosed to the enemy. 10. The citizens praised Cicero alone.

## 203.

## VOCABULARY.

brevis, -e, adj., <i>short</i> .	laus, laudis, f., <i>praise</i> .
cēdō, 3, cēssi, cēssum, <i>yield</i> .	mors, mortis, f., <i>death</i> .
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., <i>Cicero, a Roman orator</i> .	praeceptor, -ōris, m., <i>teacher</i> .
crūs, crūris, n., <i>leg</i> .	precēs, -um, f. (plur.), <i>prayers, entreaty</i> .
culpa, -ae, f., <i>blame, fault</i> .	ratio, -ōnis, f., <i>plan, method, reason</i> .
dolus, -i, m., <i>trick, deceit</i> .	servō, 1, <i>save, preserve</i> .
ē-nūntiō, 1, <i>disclose, announce</i> .	vērus, -a, -um, adj., <i>true</i> .
flūmen, -inis, n., <i>river</i> . (172.)	virtūs, -ūtis, f., <i>virtue, courage</i> .

## 2.

## 204.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

- D. Quis fuit Cicerō?  
 P. <sup>who was Cicero</sup> Clarus cōsul Rōmānus fuit.  
 D. <sup>a famous consul of the Romans he was</sup> Multane bella gessit?  
 P. <sup>has he carried on much war</sup> Minimē. Orātor fuit; dux militum semel.  
 D. <sup>no, an orator he was, leader of military once only</sup> Nōne ējus orātiōnēs in scholā legimus?  
 P. <sup>no, his speeches in school read</sup> Complūrēs. Multās epistulās quoque scrīpsit Cicerō.  
 D. <sup>several many letters also were written by Cicero</sup> Ad quōs epistulās scrīpsit?  
 P. <sup>to whom</sup> Ad frātrē et amicōs.  
 D. Fuitne Cicerō ējus "nōmen"?<sup>1</sup>  
 P. <sup>no, brother and friend</sup> Nōn fuit "nōmen," sed "cōgnōmen."  
 D. <sup>was Cicero his name</sup> Quid fuit ējus "nōmen"?  
 P. <sup>what was his name</sup> Tullius.

<sup>1</sup> See 195.



D. Et prænōmen?

P. <sup>my</sup> ~~Marcus~~.

D. Hōc dicās mihi, praeceptor ērudītissime, sī placet:

<sup>this</sup> <sup>tell me</sup> <sup>master</sup> <sup>most learned</sup> <sup>if you please</sup>  
difficilēsne sunt Cicerōnis ōrātiōnēs?

<sup>hard</sup> <sup>one of Cicero's speeches</sup>  
P. Sine dubiō difficilēs sunt, puer autem ācer eās intelle-  
<sup>without doubt</sup> <sup>they are hard, holy</sup> <sup>but</sup> <sup>sharp</sup> <sup>them</sup> <sup>to understand and</sup>  
gere potest. <sup>must</sup> <sup>master</sup>.

## CHAPTER XXVIII. 1.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

**205.** Adjectives in Latin, as in English, change their terminations to express different degrees of quality: **altus, altior, altissimus, high, higher, highest.**

Adjectives may also be compared in Latin, as in English, by means of adverbs.

**206.** Examine the following:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
altus (alto)	altior, altius	altissimus, etc.
levis (levi)	levior, levius	levissimus, etc.
prūdēns (prudent)	prudentior, prudentius	prudentissimus, etc.
pulcher (pulchro)	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus, etc.
miser (misero)	miserior, miserius	miserimus, etc.
ācer (acri)	ācrior, ācrius	ācerimus, etc.

Observe (1) that the comparative is formed in both the above groups by dropping the final vowel of the stem, if the stem ends in a vowel, and adding *ior, ius*.

(2) That the superlative is formed in the first group from the shortened stem by adding *issimus, issima, issimum*.

(3) But if the adjective ends in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*, *rima*, *rimum*, to the positive.

**207.** Six adjectives in *lis* drop the final vowel of the stem and add *limus* to form the superlative:

facilis, -e, <i>easy</i> .	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i> .	difficilior, difficilius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like</i> .	similior, similius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i> .	dissimilior, dissimilius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i> .	humilior, humilius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i> .	gracilior, gracilius	gracillimus, -a, -um

## 208. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

bonus, -a, -um	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um	pējor, -us	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um	mājor, -us	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um	—, plūs <sup>1</sup>	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, -us	minimus, -a, -um
vetus	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um

## DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE.

### 209.

#### PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōr
G.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
D.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Ac.	altiōre	altius	altiōrēs, īs	altiōra
Ab.	altiōre, ī	altiōre, ī	altiōribus	altiōribus

*Compare, and decline in the comparative: —*

atrōx, -ōcis, <i>fierce</i> .	līber, -era, -erum, <i>free</i> .
audāx, -ācis, <i>bold</i> .	piger, pigra, pigrum, <i>lazy</i> .
celer, -eris, <i>swift</i> .	placidus, -a, -um, <i>calm</i> .
fēlīx, -īcis, <i>lucky</i> .	sapiēns, -entis, <i>wise</i> .

<sup>1</sup> Plūs has in singular only nom., gen. (plūris), and acc.; in

plural, nom. plūrēs, plūra, gen. plūrium, etc.

## 210.

## EXERCISES.

1. Of bolder soldiers. 2. For a bolder soldier. 3. On the highest tree. 4. The wisest king. 5. Of fiercer lions. 6. By a more lucky general. 7. With calmer joy. 8. Of a swifter horse. 9. For freer men. 10. Of wiser judges. 11. A deeper river. 12. Of deeper rivers. 13. In a deeper river. 14. For lazier boys.

## 2.

211. We can say in Latin without difference in meaning:

1. *Quis est eloquentior quam Cicerō?* } *Who is more eloquent*  
 2. *Quis est eloquentior Cicerōne?* } *than Cicero?*

212. RULE OF SYNTAX. — The comparative degree is followed by the ablative when *quam* (than) is omitted.

But the ablative can take the place only of *quam* and the nominative, or *quam* and the accusative.

## 213.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Fluvii altiōres sunt rīvis, maria altissima<sup>1</sup> sunt.*  
 2. *In Āfricā sunt animālia atrōciōra quam in Americā.*  
 3. *Leōnēs sunt audācissimae bēstiae.* 4. *Elephantī sunt prūdentiōres leōnibus.* 5. *Gentēs Āfricae et Eurōpae sunt dissimillimae.* 6. *Pēsum tuum facillimum, meum difficilellimum est.* 7. *Rōma est Ītalīae urbs veterrima,<sup>1</sup> sed vetustiōres sunt in litoribus colōniae Graccōrum.* 8. *Templa Graeca erant humillima.* 9. *Nihil est pējus quam mendācium.* 10. *Mendācium autem pējus pigritiā et Ignāviā est.*

- II. 1. A river is longer than a brook. 2. Seas are deeper than rivers. 3. The sources of great rivers are not always in high mountains. 4. Elephants bear heavier burdens than

<sup>1</sup> The superlative must often be translated by *very* with the positive.

horses. 5. The horse and the dog are very faithful. 6. Your dog is better than mine. 7. Not many cities are more beautiful than Rome. 8. The elephant is bolder than the horse. 9. Your task is easier than mine; but mine is not very hard. 10. The bravest men are not always the wisest.

## 214.

## VOCABULARY.

America, -ae, F., *America*.  
autem,<sup>1</sup> conj., *but, moreover*.  
bēstia, -ae, F., *beast*.  
colōnia, -ae, F., *colony*.  
gēns, gentis, F., *nation, people*.  
ignāvia, -ae, F., *cowardice*.

lītus, -oris, N., *shore*.  
mendācium, -i, N., *lying*.  
nihil, N. (indecl.), *nothing*.  
pigritia, -ae, F., *laziness*.  
quam, conj., *than*.  
rīvus, i, M., *brook*.

## 3.

*"Proserpin gathering flowers,  
Herself a fairer flower, by gloomy Dis  
Was gather'd, which cost Ceres all that pain  
To seek her through the world."*

## 215.

FOR TRANSLATION.<sup>2</sup>

Tandem Cerēs ā Sōle, quī omnia cōspicit, audīvit quis filiam abdūxisset.<sup>3</sup> Itaque statim iter ad Jovem<sup>4</sup> flēxit<sup>5</sup> et precibus animum ejus inflexit, ut filia ā Plūtōne remitteretur.<sup>6</sup> Jūppiter id permīsit, sī jējūna mānsisset.<sup>7</sup> Sed cum<sup>8</sup> Prōserpina mālī Pūnicī septem grāna gustāvisset,<sup>9</sup> nōn licuit. Tandem Prōserpinae permissum est,<sup>10</sup> ut per partem annī dīmidiam apud mātrem, per partem alteram apud Inferōs esset.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Always placed after the first or second word in the sentence.

<sup>2</sup> Continued from p. 86.

<sup>3</sup> Had led away.

<sup>4</sup> Nom. Jūppiter.

<sup>5</sup> From flectō.

<sup>6</sup> Ut . . . remitteretur, that her daughter might be sent back.

<sup>7</sup> Had remained.

<sup>8</sup> Since.

<sup>9</sup> Had tasted.

<sup>10</sup> It was permitted = permission was given.

<sup>11</sup> Ut . . . esset, that she should be = to be. For the order, see p. 87, note 5.

## CHAPTER XXIX. 1.

## FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

**216.** Most adverbs are formed from adjectives, and follow them in comparison.

**217.** *Examine the following:—*

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	ADVERB.
grātus, <i>thankful</i> .	grāto-	grātē, <i>thankfully</i> .
benignus, <i>kind</i> .	benigno-	benignē, <i>kindly</i> .
miser, <i>wretched</i> .	misero-	miserē, <i>wretchedly</i> .
pulcher, <i>beautiful</i> .	pulchro-	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i> .
fortis, <i>brave</i> .	forti-	fortiter, <i>bravely</i> .
ācer, <i>eager</i> .	ācri-	ācriter, <i>eagerly</i> .
prūdēns, <i>wise</i> .	prudent-	prudenter, <i>wisely</i> .
fēlix, <i>lucky</i> .	fēlici-	fēliciter, <i>luckily</i> .

Observe (1) that the adjectives of the first group are of the *o* (or second) declension, and that the adverbs are formed from the stem of the adjectives by changing the final *o* of the stem to *ē*.

(2) That the adjectives of the second group are of the third declension, and that the adverbs are formed from the stem of the adjectives by adding *ter*.

(3) But stems in *nt* drop *t* before adding the suffix *ter*.

**218.** *Examine the following:—*

ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
multus, <i>much</i> .	multum, <i>much</i> .
facilis, <i>easy</i> .	facile, <i>easily</i> .
impūnis, <i>unpunished</i> .	impūne, <i>with safety</i> .
citus, <i>quick</i> .	citō, <i>quickly</i> .
subitus, <i>sudden</i> .	subitō, <i>suddenly</i> .
primus, <i>first</i> .	primō, <i>at first</i> .

Observe that in the first group the accusative singular neuter of the adjective is used as an adverb; in the second, the ablative.

**219.** *Examine the following:—*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
grātē	grātius	grātissimē
miserē	miserius	miserrimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
fēliciter	fēlicius	fēlicissimē
benē <sup>1</sup>	melius	optimē
malē	pējus	pessimē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
—	magis	māximē

Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter accusative singular of the adjective; and that the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing, as in the positive, the final *o* of the stem to *ē*.

If the adjective is irregular in comparison, the adverb is likewise.

*Compare:—*

placidē, <i>calmly.</i>	liberē, <i>freely.</i>	pulchrē, <i>beautifully.</i>
audācter, <i>boldly.</i>	celeriter, <i>quickly.</i>	prūdentē, <i>wisely.</i>

## 2.

**220.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Ōlim fuit<sup>2</sup> Athēniēnsis clārissimus. 2. Fidēliter lēgibus<sup>3</sup> cīvītātis pārēbat. 3. Jūstē omnibus rēbus<sup>4</sup> agēbat. 4. Audācter pūgnāvit atque amīcum fortiter dēfendit. 5. Sapienter juvenēs aliōsque docēbat. 6. Falsō et turpiter accūsātus est; liberē sē<sup>5</sup> dēfendit neque timēbat. 7. Injūstissimē ad mortem damnātus est ā cīvibus. 8. Venēnum in carcere bibit placidē. 9. Ejus<sup>6</sup> memoria dēlēbitur nunquam. 10. Quis fuit Athēniēnsis?

II. 1. Was Socrates an illustrious Athenian? 2. Was he more illustrious than other citizens? 3. Did he not act most

<sup>1</sup> Formed irregularly from *bonus*.

<sup>2</sup> *There was.*

<sup>3</sup> Observe the dative with *pārēō*.

<sup>4</sup> *Things.* See 260.

<sup>5</sup> *Himself.*

<sup>6</sup> *Of him.*

justly in all respects?<sup>1</sup> 4. Did he very<sup>2</sup> faithfully obey the laws of the Athenians? 5. Did he not teach the Athenians very wisely? 6. Did he not defend a young man in battle very bravely? 7. Why was he most basely accused and condemned to death? 8. We shall cherish his memory more diligently. 9. His memory will be cherished faithfully by the best men. 10. In vain shall we seek for a better man than Socrates.

III. 1. Julius Cæsar was a very famous man. 2. He was excellently brought up by his mother. 3. He learned the Greek language very well. 4. He was an illustrious general and fought many battles most successfully. 5. In Gaul he took towns, and cruelly slew many men. 6. He boldly sailed to Britain with many ships. 7. But the inhabitants did not basely beg for peace. 8. He quickly overcame all his enemies. 9. (As) consul he ruled the Roman state wisely and well. 10. He was foully slain by Brutus and other Romans.

## 221.

## VOCABULARY.

crūdēlīter [crūdēlls], *cruelly*.  
diligēter [diligēns], *diligently*.  
falsō [falsus], *falsely*.  
fidēlīter [fidēlls], *faithfully*.  
frūstrā, *in vain*.  
injūstē [injūstus], *unjustly*.  
jūstē [jūstus], *justly*.  
liberē [liber], *freely, fearlessly*.  
olim, *formerly*.  
optimē, *very well, excellently*.  
sapienter [saplēs], *wisely*.  
turpiter [turpis], *basely, foully*.

accūsō, 1 [ad, causa], *accuse*.  
Athēniēnsis, -e, adj., *Athenian*.  
bibō, 3, bibi, pōtum, *drink*.  
carcer, -eris, m., *prison*.

colō, 3, colui, cultum, *cultivate*,  
*cherish, care for*.  
damnō, 1, condemn.  
discō, 3, didici, —, *learn*.  
juvenis, -is, m. & f., *youth*.  
lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language*.  
nāvigō, 1 [nāvis, agō], *sail*.  
necō, 1, kill. Cf. interficiō.  
pāreō, 2, -ui, —, *obey (w. dat.)*.  
pāx, pācis, f., *peace*.  
petō, 3, -ivi, -ii, -itum, *beg for, ask*.  
quaerō, 3, quaesivi, -ii, quae-  
situm, *seek for, ask, inquire*.  
sed, conj., *but*. Cf. autem (14).  
Sōcratēs, -is, m., *Socrates, an*  
*Athenian philosopher*.  
venēnum, -i, n., *poison*.

<sup>1</sup> Compare I. 3.<sup>2</sup> See p. 91, note.



## 3.

## 222.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## PATER ET FĪLIOLUS.

P. Quid, mī filiōle, in scholā hodiē discēbās?

*what little son in school today were you learning*

F. Discēbam, mī pater, pēnsū de adverbīis longissimū.

P. Cui parti orationis est adverbium simillimū?

*to what part speech in the adverb*

F. Simillimū, ut opīnor, est adverbium adjectīvō.

*as I think*

P. Rēctē, puer; sed illud mihi explicā, sī poteris: Sī,

*this explain if you can*

ut dīcis, adverbium adjectīvō est simile, unde nōmen traxit?

*whence has derived*

F. Fortasse propter hōc, quod saepissimō verbis adiungitur.

*perhaps on account of this because very often verbs*

P. Optimē, filiōle; ēn tibi āssem!

*here is for you penny*

## CHAPTER XXX.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## 223.

## Ī-VERBS.

Audiō (stem audī), hear.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum.

ACTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		PASSIVE.
		— PRESENT.		
<i>I hear, etc.</i>				<i>I am heard, etc.</i>
audiō	audīmus	audior		audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris, or -re		audīmini
audit	audiunt	audītur		audiuntur
		— IMPERFECT.		
<i>I was hearing, etc.</i>				<i>I was heard, etc.</i>
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar		audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris, or -re		audiēbāmini
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur		audiēbantur



## ACTIVE.

## FUTURE.

## PASSIVE.

*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam

audiēmus

audiar

audiēmur

audiēs

audiētis

audiēris, or-re

audiēminī

audiet

audient

audiētur

audientur

## PERFECT.

*I have heard, etc.**I have been heard, etc.*

audivī

audivimus

audivimus

{ sum

auditi { sumus

audivistī

audivistis

audivimus

{ es

auditi { estis

audivit

audivērunt, or-re

{ est

auditi { sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audiveram

audiverāmus

audiveramus

{ eram

auditi { erāmus

audiverās

audiverātis

audiveramus

{ erās

auditi { erātis

audiverat

audiverant

{ erat

auditi { erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audivero

audiverimus

audiverimus

{ erō

auditi { erimus

audiveris

audiveritis

audiverimus

{ eris

auditi { eritis

audiverit

audiverint

{ erit

auditi { erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.<sup>1</sup>

## PRESENT.

audiam

audiāmus

audiar

audiāmur

audiās

audiātis

audiāris, or-re

audiāminī

audiat

audiant

audiātur

audiantur

## IMPERFECT.

audirem

audirēmus

audirer

audirēmur

audirēs

audirētis

audirēris, or-re

audirēminī

audiret

audirent

audirētur

audirentur

## PERFECT.

audiverim

audiverimus

audiverimus

{ sim

auditi { simus

audiveris

audiveritis

audiverimus

{ sis

auditi { sitis

audiverit

audiverint

{ sit

auditi { sint

<sup>1</sup> See p. 26, note.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PLUPERFECT.			
audivissem	audivissēmus	audit us { essēs esset	essēmus essētis essent
audivissēs	audivissētis		
audivisset	audivissent		

## IMPERATIVE.

## —PRESENT.

audī, *hear thou.*  
audīte, *hear ye.*

audīre, *be thou heard.*  
audiminī, *be ye heard.*

## FUTURE.

auditō, *thou shalt hear.*  
auditō, *he shall hear.*  
auditōte, *ye shall hear.*  
audiuntō, *they shall hear.*

auditor, *thou shalt be heard.*  
auditor, *he shall be heard.*  
  
audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*

## INFINITIVE.

—PRES. audīre, *to hear.*PERF. audivisse, *to have heard.*FUT. auditūrus esse, *to be about to hear.*— audiri, *to be heard.*auditus esse, *to have been heard.*auditum iri, *to be about to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*FUT. auditūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*GER. audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*PERF. auditus, -a, -um, *heard, having been heard.*

## GERUND.

G. audiendī, *of hearing.*D. audiendō, *for hearing.*Ac. audiendum, *hearing.*Ab. audiendō, *by hearing.*

## SUPINE.

Ac. auditum, *to hear.*Ab. auditū, *to hear, to be heard.*

## CHAPTER XXXI. 1.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

**224.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of *audiō*.

**225.**

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Audiō, audiēbam, audiam.* 2. *Audit, audiēbat, audiet.* 3. *Audītur, audiēbātur, audiētur.* 4. *Audī, audire.* 5. *Audīmur, audiēbāmur, audiēmur.* 6. *Audire, audiri.* 7. *Auditis; audiēbātis, audiētis.* 8. *Audis, audiris.* 9. *Audiunt, audiuntur.* 10. *Audient, audientur.*

II. 1. Thou hearest, thou wast hearing, thou wilt hear. 2. I hear, I am heard. 3. He is hearing, he was hearing, he will hear. 4. To be heard, to hear. 5. We were hearing, we were (being) heard. 6. We hear, we heard, we shall hear. 7. They will hear, they will be heard. 8. You heard, you were heard. 9. Hear (ye), be ye heard. 10. I hear, I heard, I shall be heard.

## 2.

**226.**

## EXERCISES.

*Pūniō, punish; mūniō, fortify; vestiō, clothe.*

I. 1. *Pūniēbam, mūniēbam, vestiēbam.* 2. *Mūnītur, pūnītur, vestītur.* 3. *Pūniet, vestiet, mūniet.* 4. *Pūnī, mūnīte, vestīminī.* 5. *Vestiētur, pūniētur, mūniētur.* 6. *Nōne pūnīmus? nōne vestīmur? nōne mūniuntur?* 7. *Vestiamne? pūnietne? mūniēturne?* 8. *Mūniēbant, pūniēbāminī, vestīor.* 9. *Nōn vestīris, nōn pūnit, nōn mūniēmus.* 10. *Pūniā, mūniā, vestiēbāris.*

II. 1. He was clothing, he was punishing, he was fortifying. 2. They will be clothed, they will be fortified, they will be punished. 3. Be thou clothed, punish (thou), fortify. 4. I fortify, he punishes, we are clothing. 5. Are you not being clothed? was it not fortified? will he not be pun-

ished? 6. They are being punished, it is being fortified, thou wilt be clothed. 7. We punish, we were fortifying, they will clothe. 8. Were ye being clothed? will it be fortified? shall I be punished? I shall not fortify, you are not being clothed, they will not be punished. 10. I punished, you will fortify, they clothe.

+

## 3.

## 227.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Vēre terra grāmine et flōribus vestitur. 2. Vēre avium cantūs<sup>1</sup> audimus. 3. Mors vītam nostram fīniet. 4. Puerī in grāmine dormiēbant. 5. Somnō mollimus cūrās. 6. Canēs agricolārum ovēs custōdiunt. 7. Militēs urbem custōdient. 8. Bellum ā Scīpiōne fīniētur. 9. Audītē verba sapientium. 10. Injūstē puer pūnītur.

II. 1. A good father will nurture, clothe, and instruct his children. 2. It is very<sup>2</sup> pleasant<sup>3</sup> to hear the sweet voice of the nightingale. 3. All our pains are ended by death. 4. The general justly punishes a cowardly soldier. 5. The sheep are carefully<sup>4</sup> guarded by the dog. 6. Scipio finished the war in Africa. 7. The pupils are very faithfully instructed by their teachers. 8. My son, soothe your mother's cares. 9. The city is fortified by strong walls. 10. In summer the trees are clothed with leaves.

## 228.

## VOCABULARY.

custōdiō, 4 [custōs], guard.

dormiō, 4, sleep.

ē-rudiō, 4 [rudis], teach, instruct.

fīniō, 4 [finis], end, finish.

mollīō, 4 [mollis], soften, soothe.

mūniō, 4, fortify, defend.

nūtriō, 4, nurture, nourish.

pūniō, 4, punish.

vestiō, 4, clothe.

carmen, -inis, N., song.

dolor, -ōris, M., pain.

folium, -i, N., leaf.

grāmen, -inis, N., grass.

ignāvus, -a, -um, adj., cowardly.

jūcundus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant.

luscīnīa, -ae, F., nightingale.

vēr, vērīs, N., spring.

vōx, vōcis, F., voice.

<sup>1</sup> Songs. <sup>2</sup> See p. 91, note. <sup>3</sup> Neuter gender. <sup>4</sup> See 144, 145.

+

## CHAPTER XXXII. 1.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

**229.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **audiō**.

**280.**

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Audiī, audiveram, audiverō.* 2. *Audītus est, audītus erat, audītus erit.* 3. *Audivimus, audiveramus, audiverimus.* 4. *Audiverant, auditi erant.* 5. *Audivisti, audiverās, audiveris.* 6. *Audivisse, audītus esse.* 7. *Audiverātis, auditi erātis.* 8. *Audivit, audiverat, audiverit.*

II. 1. Thou hast heard, thou hadst heard, thou wilt have heard. 2. They have been heard, they had been heard, they will have been heard. 3. I have heard, I have been heard. 4. To have been heard, to have heard. 5. We have heard, we had heard, we shall have heard. 6. We have been heard, we had been heard, we shall have been heard. 7. You have heard, you have been heard. 8. He had heard, he had been heard.

2.

**231.**

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Finīveram, ērudīveram, vestīveram.* 2. *Finītum est, ērudītus sum, vestītus sum.* 3. *Nonne finīta sunt? nōne vestītus eram? nōne ērudītus erō?* 4. *Vestīverās, ērudīverās, finīverās.* 5. *Finīeris, ērudītus eris, vestīverimus.* 6. *Vestītae erant, finīta erant, ērudīta erant.* 7. *Erudīverātis, finīverātis, vestīverātis.* 8. *Vestītime sumus? estne ērudītus? estne finītum?* 9. *Erudīta es, finīstī, vestīverās.* 10. *Nōn ērudīstis, nōn finīverātis, nōn vestīverit.*

<sup>1</sup> For *finīvistī*. Perfects in *iv* often drop *v* and contract *ī* to *i*.

<sup>2</sup> For *vestīverās*.

II. 1. Have they not been clothed? have they (*neut.*) not been finished? were they not taught? 2. We have finished, we have clothed, we have taught. 3. She had been taught, they (*neut.*) had been finished, we (*fem.*) had been clothed. 4. Didst thou teach? have you finished? has she clothed? 5. They had clothed, they will have taught, I have finished. 6. I had clothed, thou hadst taught, he had finished. 7. We shall not have finished, they will not have clothed, you will not have taught. 8. It was not finished, we had not been taught, you will not have been clothed. 9. You have taught, you had finished, you will have clothed. 10. I shall have clothed, I had taught, I finished.

## 3.

## 232.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Medicus régis nocte ad Fabricium vēnit.<sup>1</sup> 2. Fabricius medicum vixit et ad dominum mīsit. 3. Urbs virtūte et fortitūdine militum mūnīta erit. / 4. Rōmānī artibus<sup>2</sup> et litterīs<sup>2</sup> ā Graecīs ērudītī sunt. 5. Octō hōrās dormīre puerīs satis est. 6. Lūce sōlis calōreque aperiuntur flōrēs. 7. Omnēs terrās fortibus virīs aperuit nātūra. 8. Militēs arcem fidēliter custōdīvērunt. 9. Brūtus in castra Caesaris vēnerat. 10. Nihil scīre turpissimum est.

II. 1. The king's physician was bound by Fabricius' slave. 2. The valor and endurance (*fortitūdō*) of the soldiers fortified the city. 3. The Greeks instructed the Romans in the arts.<sup>3</sup> 4. Is it enough for a boy to sleep two hours?<sup>4</sup> 5. The light and heat of the sun had opened the flowers. 6. The citadel was very<sup>5</sup> carefully guarded by

<sup>1</sup> How do you know whether this form is present or perfect?

<sup>2</sup> In the arts and literature.

<sup>3</sup> Compare I. 4.

<sup>4</sup> Duās hōrās.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 91, note.

the soldiers. 7. To know many things<sup>1</sup> is very useful. 8. To be ignorant of many things is not disgraceful. 9. The general's camp<sup>2</sup> had not been fortified. 10. Did you not hear the voice of your father?

## 233.

## VOCABULARY.

*aperiō*, 4, -ui, -tum, *open, disclose.*

*ne-sciō*, 4, *know not, be ignorant of.*

*sciō*, 4, *know, know how.*

*veniō*, 4, *vēnī, ventum, come.*

*vinciō*, 4, *viuxī, vinctum, bind.*

*ad*, prep. w. acc., *to, towards.*

*ars, artis*, F., *art.* (167. 2.)

*calor, -ōris*, M., *heat.*

*Fabricius, -i*, M., *Fabricius, a Roman general.*

*litterae, -arum*, F., *letters, literature; often = epistula.*

*lūx, lūcis*, F., *light, daylight.*

*medicus, -i*, M., *physician.*

*nox, noctis*, F., *night.* (167. 2.)

*octō*, num. adj., indecl., *eight.*

*turpis, -e*, adj., *base, disgraceful.*

## 4.

## 234.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

*P.* Dē quā rē est pēnsūm hodiernū?

*D.* Pēnsūm hodiernū est iterū dē conjugātiōne quartā.

*P.* Herī quartam conjugātiōnem nesciēbās; scīsne hodiē?

*D.* Partim sciō, modum autem subjunctivum nesciō.

partly mood

*P.* Mox subjunctivum quoque discēs.

soon

also

*D.* Estne ūtilius indicativum scire quam subjunctivum?

*P.* Utrumque debemus scire; indicativus autem saepius invenitur.

*D.* Adhūc conjugātiōnēs didici quattuor. Suntne plūrēs?

thus far

*P.* Nōn plūrēs; sed multa verba sunt anōmala.

irregular

<sup>1</sup> See 117.

<sup>2</sup> Remember that the Latin word for camp is plural, *castra*,

*castrōrum*. What must be the number of the verb of which *castra* is the subject?



## CHAPTER XXXIII.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## 235.

VERBS IN *iō*.<sup>1</sup>

Capiō (stem cape), take.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capiō, capere, cēpī, captum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I take, etc.**I am taken, etc.*

capiō capimus

capior capimur

capis capitis

caperis, or -re capimini

capit capiunt

capitur capiuntur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was taking, etc.**I was taken, etc.*

capiēbam capiēbāmus

capiēbar capiēbāmur

capiēbās capiēbātis

capiēbāris, or -re capiēbāmini

capiēbat capiēbant

capiēbātur capiēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall take, etc.**I shall be taken, etc.*

capiam capiēmus

capiar capiēmur

capiēs capiētis

capiēris, or -re capiēmini

capiet capient

capiētur capientur

## PERFECT.

cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc.

captus sum, es, est, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.

captus eram, erās, erat, etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.

captus erō, eris, erit, etc.

<sup>1</sup> Verbs in *iō* of the third conjugation are distinguished from those of the fourth by the active

infinitive present. What forms of capiō are like those of audiō? Make a general statement.



## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## ACTIVE.

## PRESENT.

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc.

capiar, -iāris or -re, -iātur, etc.

## IMPERFECT.

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc.

caperer, -erēris or -re, -erētur.

## PERFECT.

cēperim, cēperīs, cēperit, etc.

captus sim, sīs, sit, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

cēpisse, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc.

captus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cape, take thou.

capere, be thou taken.

capite, take ye.

capimini, be ye taken.

FUT. capito, thou shalt take,  
etc.capitor, thou shalt be taken,  
etc.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. capere, to take.

capī, to be taken.

PERF. cēpisse, to have taken.

captus esse, to have been taken.

FUT. captūrus esse, to be about  
to take.captum irī, to be about to be  
taken.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. capiēns, taking.

FUT. captūrus, about to take.

GER. capiendus, to be taken.

PERF. captus, having been taken.

## GERUND.

capiendī, of taking,  
etc.

## SUPINE.

Ac. captum, to take.

Ab. captū, to take, to be taken.

## CHAPTER XXXIV. 1.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## 236.

VERBS IN *iō*.

Learn all the tenses of the indicative, the present imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *capiō*.

## 237.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Capiunt, capiēbant.* 2. *Capior, capiēbar, capiar.*  
3. *Capimur, capiēbāmur, capiēmur.* 4. *Capis, caperis.*  
5. *Cēpī, captus sum.* 6. *Cēpimus, cēperāmus, cēperimus.*  
7. *Capta sunt, capta erant, capta erunt.* 8. *Cape, capere.*  
9. *Capere, capī.* 10. *Cēpisse, captus esse.*

II. 1. We are taking, we were taking, we shall be taking. 2. Take, be taken. 3. Thou art taking, thou wast taking, thou wilt take. 4. You have taken, you had taken, you will have taken. 5. It is taken, it was taken, it will be taken. 6. I was taking, I was taken. 7. To take, to have taken. 8. To be taken, to have been taken. 9. It (*fem.*) has been taken, it had been taken, it will have been taken. 10. We have taken, we have been taken.

## 2.

## 238.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Tarentīnī lēgātīs Rōmānōrum injūriam fēcērunt,*  
2. *Pyrrhus, Ēpīrī rēx, ad Tarentīnōs vēnit.* 3. *Contrā*  
*Pyrrhum missus est Laevīnus cōsul.* 4. *Pyrrhus elephan-*  
*tis vīct, nam Rōmānōrum equī terrītī sunt et fugiēbant.*  
5. *Nox proelī finem fēcīt; Laevīnus per noctem fūgit.*  
6. *Multi et fortēs Rōmānī in pūgnā interfectī sunt.* 7. *Captī-*  
*vōs Rōmānōs summō in honōre habuit Pyrrhus.* 8. *Deinde<sup>1</sup>*  
*in Campāulam sē recēpīt.* 9. *Lēgātī, ā Rōmānīs missī,<sup>2</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced *de-in'-do*.<sup>2</sup> *Sent,*

honōrificē ā Pyrrhō exceptī sunt. 10. Pāx cum Pyrrhō nōn facta<sup>1</sup> est.

II. 1. A wrong was done<sup>1</sup> to the Romans by the Tarentines. 2. Against Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, the Romans sent the consul Lævinus. 3. The spies of Pyrrhus were taken by Lævinus and led through his camp. 4. The Romans did not make peace with King Pyrrhus. 5. Fabricius saw through the design of the king and was not<sup>2</sup> frightened. 6. You will welcome your friend to-day. 7. I welcome my best friend with great pleasure.<sup>3</sup> 8. The enemy threw their spears and fled into the woods. 9. Did not Cæsar either conquer or slay all his enemies? 10. Finally he was himself (*ipse*) slain by Brutus his friend, and others.

## 239.

## VOCABULARY.

ex-clipō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum

[capīō], catch, accept, welcome.

faciō,<sup>1</sup> 3, fēcī, factum, make, do.

fugīō, 3, fūgī, fugitum, flee.

inter-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], kill, slay. Cf. necō (221).

iaciō, 3, jēcī, iactum, throw.

per-spiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectum [speciō], see through, into.

re-clipō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capīō], take back, get again, receive.

sē recipere, withdraw, retreat.

aut . . . aut, conj., either . . . or.

Campānia, -ae, f., Campania, a division of Italy.

contrā, prep. w. acc., against.

de-inde, adv., then, next.

dēnique, adv., finally.

explōrātor, -ōris, m., scout, spy.

finis, -is, m., end.

honor, -ōris, m., honor.

honōrificē, adv., honorably.

injūria, -ae, f., wrong, injury.

Lævinus, -i, m., Lævinus, a Roman.

lēgātus, -i, m., ambassador, lieutenant.

per, prep. w. acc., through.

proellum, -i, n., battle. Cf. pūgna (102).

summus, -a, -um (sup. of superus), adj., highest.

Tarentinus, -i, m., an inhabitant of Tarentum, a Tarentine.

<sup>1</sup> For the passive of faciō, see 327.

<sup>2</sup> And . . . not, neque.

<sup>3</sup> See 144, 145.

## CHAPTER XXXV. 1.

## REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

## 240.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Amāmus, monēmus, regimus, audīmus. 2. Laudant, dēlent, agunt, custōdiunt. 3. Ōrnābam, dēlēbam, vincēbam, mūniēbam. 4. Cantāvistī, habuistī, posuistī, vinxistī. 5. Mūtāvērunt, tenuērunt, ēgērunt, cēpērunt, mūnīvērunt. 6. Portāverātis, dēlēverātis, prae buerātis, dūxerātis, dormiverātis.

II. 1. Fugātur, terrētur, pōnitur, vincitur. 2. Servāberis, tenēberis, mittēre, vestiēre. 3. Laudātī sumus, prohibītī sumus, ductī sumus, ērudītī sumus. 4. Ōrnāre, monēre, trahere, pūnīre. 5. Amārī, docērī, contemnī, jacī, aperīrī. 6. Amātae sunt, monitae sunt, exceptae sunt, audītae sunt.

III. 1. Dormīte, superāte, facite, vincite, vincite, praebete. 2. Vulnerāvisse, jēcisse, vēnisse, docuisse, fluxisse. 3. Recipimur, spectāmur, agimur, vestimur, docemur. 4. Docēbitis, pūniētis, trahētis, fugiētis, creābitis. 5. Misit, habuit, armāvit, jecit, fugit. 6. Vinciminī, vituperāminī, terrēminī, vinciminī, capiminī.

## 2.

## 241.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Thou lovest, thou advisest, thou rulest, thou hast arrested. 2. I shall praise, I shall destroy, I shall drive, I shall guard. 3. You were adorning, you were seeing, you were conquering, you were fortifying. 4. We have sung, we have had, we have placed, we have bound. 5. You have changed, you have held, you have driven, you have taken, you have fortified. 6. I had carried, I had destroyed, I had furnished, I had led, I had slept.

II. 1. We are put to flight, we are frightened, we are placed, we are bound. 2. He will be saved, he will be held, he will be sent, he will be clothed. 3. They have been praised, they have been prevented, they have been led, they have been instructed. 4. They will be adorned, they will be advised, they will be drawn, they will be punished. 5. To be loved, to be taught, to be despised, to be thrown, to be opened. 6. Thou hast been loved, thou hast been advised, thou hast been welcomed, thou hast been heard.

III. 1. Sleep, surpass, do (*fac*), bind, conquer, furnish. 2. To wound, to throw, to come, to teach, to flow. 3. They are received, they are witnessed, they are driven, they are clothed, they are taught. 4. I shall teach, I shall punish, I shall draw, I shall flee, I shall create. 5. They have sent, they have had, they have armed, they have thrown, they have fled. 6. Thou art conquered, thou art blamed, thou art frightened, thou art bound, thou art taken.

## 3.

242.

## COLLOQUIUM.

JACŌBUS ET AUGUSTUS.

J. Dēnique ad finem pēnsī pervēnimus; quid jam incipiēmus?  
finally end now begin

A. Tū quidquid vidēbitur incipiēs: ego incipiam nihil.  
you whatever seems good

J. Quārē? esne dēfessus?  
why

A. Certē, admodum dēfessus; pēsum recōgnōscendum  
certainly downright review  
 mē quidem paene finīvit.  
at least almost

J. Mox recreāberis, sī mēcum ad natandum veniēs.  
soon will be rested with me swim

A. Profectō tēcum veniam, nam natāre mihi est jūcun-  
       surely with you for  
 dissimulūm et semper et praecipuē cum,  
       both especially when

“Sōle sub ardentī resonant arbusta cicādīs.”  
       under glowing resound groves the cicadae

J. Quam lautē poētā aliquem laudās!  
       how elegantly some quote

A. Hunc Vergilī versiculū mē docuit praeceptor.  
       this Vergil line



## CHAPTER XXXVI. 1.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

243. The stem ends in *u*.

244. RULE OF GENDER. — Nouns in *us* are masculine; those in *ū* are neuter.

1. The following nouns, and a few others, are feminine: *acus*, needle; *domus*, house; *īdūs* (plur.), Ides; *manus*, hand; *porticus*, portico; *tribus*, tribe.

## 245. PARADIGMS.

Gradus, M., <i>step</i> .		Genū, N., <i>knee</i> .	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. gradus	gradūs	genū	genua
G. gradūs	graduū	genūs	genuum
D. graduī (ū)	gradibus	genū	genibus
Ac. graduū	gradūs	genū	genua
Ab. gradu	gradibus	genū	genibus

MASC.		NEUT.	
TERMINATIONS.			
N.V. us	ūs	ū	ua
G. ūs	uum	ūs	uum
D. uī (ū)	ibus (ubus)	ū	ibus (ubus)
Ac. um	ūs	ū	ua
Ab. ū	ibus (ubus)	ū	ibus (ubus)

**246.** The fourth declension is a modification of the third. Thus, *gradūs* is for *graduīs*, *gradum* for *graduē*, *gradū* for *gradue*, etc.

**247.** *Artus*, joint, *partus*, birth, *tribus*, tribe, sometimes *portus*, harbor, *verū*, a spit; also dissyllables in *cus*, have the termination *ubus* in the dative and ablative plural.

**248.** *Domus*, house, has also forms of the second declension. See special paradigms, 262.

**249.** Decline together *domus mea*, my house; *exercitus māgnus*, large army; *īdūs Mārtiae*, Ides of March.

## 2.

## 250.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Vēre adventus avium hominibus est jūcundissimus.* 2. *Sēnsūs avium ācrēs sunt, mōtūs celerēs.* 3. *In lacubus et in palūdibus māgna avium est multitūdō.* 4. *Avēs multae in porticibus altīs domicilium habent.* 5. *Quercūs Jovī sacra erat.* 6. *Quercūs frōns est vīctōris ōrnāmentum.* 7. *Cōsulātus erat Rōmānōrum magistrātus amplus.* 8. *Salūs cīvitātis in manibūs cōsulum erat.* 9. *Cōsulēs exercituum erant imperātōrēs.* 10. *Erant in portibus nāvēs<sup>1</sup> longae.*

II. 1. The enemy (*plur.*) were conquered on the arrival<sup>2</sup> of *Cæsar*. 2. Many animals fight with their horns. 3. Many lakes are seen in the Alps. 4. The ancients honored the oak (as) the tree<sup>3</sup> of *Jupiter*. 5. The songs of birds are heard among the oaks. 6. In ancient times men fought with bows and arrows. 7. The consulship of *Cicero* was very renowned. 8. *Cæsar* came into Italy with a large army. 9. The arrival of the army freed the citizens from fear.<sup>4</sup> 10. Between school and home we take (make) many steps.

<sup>1</sup> *Nāvēs longae*, ships of war.

<sup>2</sup> See 136.

<sup>3</sup> Predicate accusative.

<sup>4</sup> See 128, 129, 130.

## 251.

## VOCABULARY.

**adventus**, -ūs, M. [adveniō],  
arrival, approach.  
**arcus**, -ūs, M., bow.  
**cantus**, -ūs, M., song. [sulship.  
**cōsulātus**, -ūs, M. [cōsul], con-  
**cornū**, -ūs, N., horn.  
**exercitus**, -ūs, M. [exerceō],  
army.  
**lacus**, -ūs, M., lake.  
**magistrātus**, -ūs, M. [magister],  
office, magistrate.  
**manus**, -ūs, F., hand.  
**metus**, -ūs, M., fear.  
**mōtus**, -ūs, M. [moveō], move-  
ment, motion.

**palūs**, -ūdis, F., swamp, marsh.  
**portus**, -ūs, M., harbor.  
**quercus**, -ūs, F., oak. (11. 4.)  
**sēnsus**, -ūs, M. [sentīō], sense,  
feeling.  
**amplus**, -a, -um, adj., great, re-  
nowned, honorable.  
**domicilium**, -ī, N., home. (79.)  
**frōns**, frondis, F., chaplet of leaves.  
**Jūppiter**, Jovis, M., Jupiter, the  
supreme god. (262.)  
**sagitta**, -ae, F., arrow.  
**salūs**, -ūtis, F., safety.  
**schola**, -ae, F., school.  
**victor**, -ōris, M. [vincō], conqueror.

## CHAPTER XXXVII. 1.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

252. The stem ends in *ē*.

253. RULE OF GENDER.—Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *diēs*, day, which is commonly masculine in the singular, and always in the plural.

## 254.

## PARADIGMS.

Diēs, day.		Rēs, thing, affair.		TERMINATIONS.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	ēs	ēs
G. diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	ēī	ērum
D. diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	ēī	ēbus
Ac. diem	diēs	rem	rēs	em	ēs
Ab. diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	ē	ēbus

255. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have nominative and accusative plural.



**256.** Decline together *rēs publica*, *state*; in sing., *bona fidēs*, *good faith*; *magna spēs*, *great hope*; *diēs quīntus*, *fifth day*.

**257.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. In omnibus rēbus certus ōrdō est. 2. Domina rērum hūmānarum est fortūna. 3. Tertiō diē cōsul in urbem veniet. 4. Dux exercitum in plānitie[m] dūxit. 5. Ibi aciem instrūxit et hostēs exspectābat. 6. Māgnam victōriac spem habuit. 7. Nam māximae erant militum fidēs et virtūs. 8. Prō salutē rei publicae pūgnābant. 9. Posterō diē hostēs in pūgnam prōcēssērunt. 10. Ad diēi finem victi sunt et fugātī.

† II. 1. God is the creator of all things. 2. The commonwealth is dear to all good citizens. 3. In all human affairs there is much uncertainty.<sup>1</sup> 4. The army was marshalled in a large plain. 5. The enemy advanced against<sup>2</sup> the Romans' line of battle. 6. The general praised the soldiers for<sup>3</sup> their<sup>4</sup> fidelity. 7. In the line of battle were many foot soldiers. 8. They had great hopes of victory. 9. In<sup>5</sup> a few days the arrangement of things will be changed. 10. The consul gave a pledge to the state.

**258.****VOCABULARY.**

*aciēs*, -ēi, f., *line of battle*.

*fidēs*, -ēi, f., *faith, fidelity, pledge*.

*plānitīēs*, -ēi, f., *plain*.

*rēs publica*, f., *commonwealth*,

*spēs*, spēi, f., *hope*. [state.

*cārus*, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious*.

*certus*, -a, -um, adj., *fixed, certain*.

*creātor*, -ōris, m., *creator*.

*domina*, -ae, f., *mistress*.

*ex-spectō*, 1, *await, expect*.

*hūmānus*, -a, -um, adj., *human*.

*in-certus*, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain*.

*in-struō*, 3, -strūxi, -strūctum, *draw up, marshal*.

*ōrdō*, -inis, m., *order, arrangement*.

*paucus*,<sup>6</sup> -a, -um, adj., *few, little*.

*pedes*, -itis, m. [pēs], *foot-soldier*.

*posterus*, -a, -um, adj., *following, next*.

*prō*, prep. w. abl., *for, in behalf of*.

*prō-cēdō*, 3, -cēssi, -cēssum, *advance*.

<sup>1</sup> Many things are uncertain.

<sup>2</sup> In with accusative.

<sup>3</sup> De with ablative.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.

<sup>5</sup> See 135, 136.

<sup>6</sup> Mostly used in the plural.

259. *Examine the following:—*

1. Claudus alterō pede, lame in one foot.
2. Mōribus similēs, similar in character.
3. Virtūte praecēdunt, they excel in courage.
4. Numerō ad duodecim, about twelve in number.

Observe that the ablatives *pede*, *mōribus*, *virtūte*, and *numerō*, answer the question *in what respect?* This ablative is called the **Ablative of Specification**.

**260. RULE OF SYNTAX.**—The ablative is used to denote that in respect to which anything is said to be, or to be done.

## 2.

## 261.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

*P.* Omnium dēclīnātiōnum quae est difficillima?

*D.* Tertia mihi vidētur difficillima.

*P.* Quārē ita cēnsēs?

*D.* Varietātis causā terminātiōnum in nōminātīvō singulārī.

Genus quoque est mihi molestissimum, praesertim nōminum in is dēsinentium.

*P.* Tenēsne memoriā quae nōmina plūrālem genetīvum in ium habeant?

*D.* Prīmum nōmina in is et es dēsinentia, sī in genetīvō singulārī nōn crēscunt; ut *hostis* et *nubēs*.

Deinde monosyllaba in s vel x dēsinentia, sī ante s et x stat cōnsonāns; ut *urbs* et *arx*.

Tum nōmina in ns et rs dēsinentia; ut *cliēns* et *cohors*.

Dēnique neutra in e, al, ar dēsinentia; ut *mare*, *animal*, *calcar*.



## 2.

## 263.

## FOR TRANSLATION.

PROSERPINA IS CARRIED OFF BY PLUTO.

[Review 199 and 215.]

Dum Proserpina luco  
Ludit, et aut violas aut candida lilia carpit,  
Dumque puellari studio<sup>1</sup> calathosque<sup>2</sup> sinumque<sup>3</sup>  
Implet, et aequales<sup>4</sup> certat superare legendo,<sup>4</sup>  
Paene simul visa est dilectaque<sup>5</sup> raptaque<sup>6</sup> Diti.<sup>7</sup>

HER CHANCE OF RETURN IS LOST.

Dixerat.<sup>8</sup> At Cereri certum est<sup>9</sup> educere<sup>10</sup> natam.<sup>11</sup>  
Non ita fata sinunt, quoniam jejunia virgo  
Solverat et, cultis<sup>12</sup> dum simplex errat<sup>13</sup> in hortis,  
Poeniceum<sup>14</sup> curva<sup>15</sup> decerpserat arbore pomum,  
Sumptaque callenti septem de cortice grana  
Presserat<sup>16</sup> ore suo: solusque ex omnibus illud  
Ascalaphus vidit. . . .  
Vidit, et indicio reditum crudelis ademit.

<sup>1</sup> Puellāri studiō = puellāri cum studiō. See 144 and 145.

<sup>2</sup> Que . . . que, both . . . and.

<sup>3</sup> Aequālēs = comitēs.

<sup>4</sup> Legendō, in gathering (flowers).

<sup>5</sup> Dilecta, from dilligō.

<sup>6</sup> Rapta, from raplō. With dilecta and rapta supply est.

<sup>7</sup> Diti. Translate as if, instead of the dative, it were ā Dite.

<sup>8</sup> Dixerat, i.e. Jūppiter.

<sup>9</sup> Cererī certum est, to Ceres it is determined = Ceres is resolved.

<sup>10</sup> Edūcere, that is, from the lower world.

<sup>11</sup> Nātam = filiam.

<sup>12</sup> Cultis, with hortis.

<sup>13</sup> Errat. Translate as if it were errābat. The present is very often used after dum, referring to past time. So lūdit, l. 2.

<sup>14</sup> Poeniceum, with pōmum.

<sup>15</sup> Curvā, bending. The tree is loaded with fruit.

<sup>16</sup> Presserat, from premō.

CHAPTER XXXIX. 1.

PRONOUNS.

Pronouns may be divided into eight classes, and arranged in three groups:

- |      |                |       |                   |        |                   |
|------|----------------|-------|-------------------|--------|-------------------|
| I. { | 1. Personal.   | II. { | 4. Determinative. | III. { | 6. Relative.      |
|      | 2. Reflexive.  |       | 5. Demonstrative. |        | 7. Interrogative. |
|      | 3. Possessive. |       |                   |        | 8. Indefinite.    |

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

264.

PARADIGMS.

FIRST PERSON.

**Egō, I.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. <b>egō, I.</b>	<b>nōs, we.</b>
G. <b>meī, of me.</b>	<b>nostrum, or nostrī, of us.</b>
D. <b>mihī (mī), to, for me.</b>	<b>nōbīs, to, for us.</b>
Ac. <b>mē, me.</b>	<b>nōs, us.</b>
Ab. <b>(ā) mē, by me.</b>	<b>(ā) nōbīs, by us.</b>

SECOND PERSON.

**Tū, thou.**

N. <b>tū, thou.</b>	<b>vōs, you, ye.</b>
G. <b>tuī, of thee.</b>	<b>vestrum, or vestrī, of you.</b>
D. <b>tibī, to, for thee.</b>	<b>vōbīs, to, for you.</b>
Ac. <b>tē, thee.</b>	<b>vōs, you.</b>
Ab. <b>(ā) tē, by thee.</b>	<b>(ā) vōbīs, by you.</b>

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

**Suī, of himself, etc.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. _____	_____
G. <b>suī, of himself, herself, itself.</b>	<b>suī, of themselves.</b>
D. <b>sibī, to, for himself, etc.</b>	<b>sibī, to, for themselves.</b>
Ac. <b>sē (sēsē), himself, etc.</b>	<b>sē (sēsē), themselves.</b>
Ab. <b>(ā) sē (sēsē), by himself, etc.</b>	<b>(ā) sē (sēsē), by themselves.</b>

**265.** 1. The personal pronoun of the third person is *is, ea, id, he, she, it*. But when reference is made in the oblique cases to the subject of the sentence, the reflexive *suī* is used: *Omnēs hominēs sē* (or *sēsē*) *amant, all men love themselves*.

2. The nominatives of the personal pronouns are much less frequently used in Latin than their equivalents in English. Why is this? In general, they are used only for emphasis or contrast: *Ego sum aegrōtus, tū valēs, I am sick, you are well*.

3. "*With me, with you,*" etc., are not expressed, as you would expect, by *cum mē, cum tē*, etc., but always by *mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbiscum, vōbiscum*. So *quibuscum* (279).

4. The personal pronouns of the first and second person are often used with reflexive sense: *Tū tē amās, thou lovest thyself; ego mihi noceō, I do harm to myself*.

#### POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

**266.** Possessive adjective pronouns are formed from the stems of personal and reflexive pronouns:

*meus, -a, -um, my, mine*

(voc. sing. masc. *mī*).

*tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine;*

*your, yours.*

*suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their (own).*

*noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours.*

*vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours.*

2.

#### 267.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Pater mē amat et patrem ego amō.* 2. *Tū quoque patrem meum amās.* 3. *Patrem tuum ego quoque amō.* 4. *Puella nimium sē culpat.* 5. *Filium tuum amāmus nōs omnēs.* 6. *Vōs (acc.) agitātis.* 7. *Nōn ut aliī nōs (acc.) vidēmus,* 8. *Brūtus sē suō gladiō perfōdit.* 9. *Nōs sumus miserī, beātī estis vōs.* 10. *Sine tē et tēcum pariter sumus miserī.* 11. *Mēcum eris miserrimus.* 12. *Dē tē erat mea ōrātiō.* 13. *Vōbiscum tristis crō nunquam.* 14. *Mihi mea vīta, tibi tua est cāra.* 15. *Amīcus noster est memor vestrī.*

II. 1. *Thy mother is dear to thee, mine to me.* 2. *All your plans are known to us.* 3. *The boy loves himself too much.* 4. *The burden will be carried by me, by you, by us,*

by thee. 5. With you and without you we shall be equally happy. 6. Thee I love, but not thy dog. 7. O, how I shall miss you, my friend! 8. We<sup>1</sup> are poor, you<sup>1</sup> are rich. 9. Our life is very short. 10. The boy carried a wooden cup with him(self).

## 268.

## VOCABULARY.

**agitō**, 1 [agō, put in motion], disturb, vex, chase.

**beātus**, -a, -um, adj., happy.

**culpō**, 1 [culpa], blame, censure, reproach.

**dēsiderō**, 1, desire, long for, miss

**ligneus**, -a, -um, adj. [lignum, wood], of wood, wooden.

**nimium**, adv., too, too much.

**nōtus**, -a, -um, adj., known.

**onus**, -eris, n., burden

**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, f. [ōrō], speech, talk, address.

**pariter**, adv. [pār, equal], equally.

**pauper**, -eris, adj., poor. (167.3.)

**per-fodiō**, 3, -fōdi, -fōssum, dig through, stab, pierce.

**quoque**, conj., also, too.

**sine**, prep. w. abl., without

**ut**, adv and conj., as.

## 3.

## 269.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA.

**F.** Age, sorōrcula mea, sī tibi placet, ambulābimus.  
come little sister walk

**S.** Quō est tibi in animō, cāre frāter, ambulāre? Nōne  
whither

in agrōs?

**F.** Ita est, in agrōs et in umbrā silvārum.  
yes shade

**S.** Libenter tēcum ambulō, tamen . . .  
gladly but

**F.** Quid? cūr tantum dubitās, sī, ut dīcis, mēcum ambulās  
so much hesitate  
libenter?

**S.** Nōlī mē rīdēre. Metuō anguēs. "Frigidus latet  
don't laugh at snakes cold lurks  
anguis in herbā," ut cantat Vergilius.

**F.** Nōlī metuere. Venī; ubi frāga mātūra sunt repperī.  
where strawberries ripe are have found.

**S.** Ō quam suāve! In mē nōn jam est mora.  
delightful now delay

<sup>1</sup> Why should the pronouns be expressed in Latin?

## CHAPTER XL. 1.

## DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

270. PARADIGMS: *Is, idem, ipse.**Is, that, this; also, he, she, it*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
N. <i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, iī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
G. <i>ejus</i>	<i>ejus</i>	<i>ejus</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
D. <i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
Ac. <i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
Ab. <i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>

*Idem, same.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. <i>idem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>idem</i>	{ <i>eīdem</i> <i>iīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
G. <i>ejusdem</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
D. <i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	{ <i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>
Ac. <i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
Ab. <i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	{ <i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>iīsdem</i>

*Ipsē, self (himself, etc.).*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
N. <i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
G. <i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
D. <i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
Ac. <i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
Ab. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

1. Determinative pronouns, like adjectives, agree with nouns expressed or understood; *idem* and *ipse* also with pronouns.

2. *Is* is very often used as a personal pronoun, meaning *he, she, it, they*. Also as the antecedent of *quī, who; is quī, he who*.

3. *Idem* is compounded of *is* and the suffix *dem*. *Idem* is for *isdem*; *idem* for *iddem*; *eundem*, etc., for *eumdem*, etc; *eōrundem*, etc., for *eōrumdem*, etc.



4. *Ipse, self* (intensive) is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun expressed or understood, and must be distinguished from *sē, self* (reflexive):

- (1) *Homo ipse veniet, the man himself* (and not another) *will come.*
- (2) *Hominem ipsum vidi, I saw the man himself.*
- (3) *Homo sē culpāt nimium, the man blames himself too much.*
- (4) *Miles frātre, dein sē ipsum interfēcit, the soldier killed his brother, then himself.*

5. How do we indicate in English in speech, and how in writing, when we use *self* (*himself*, etc.) whether we intend the intensive or the reflexive *self*?

6. *Ipse* may be variously translated: *ipse fēcī, I MYSELF did it, I did it ALONE, I did it OF MY OWN ACCORD.*

**271.** Decline together *is homo, that man; ea nāvis, that ship; id bellum, that war; idem diēs, the same day; eadem manus, the same hand; idem onus, the same burden; vir ipse, the man himself.*

## 2.

## 272.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Cicerō est scriptor elegantissimus; ejus librōs legimus.* 2. *Fidum amicum habeo; eum ego magis quam tū amās.* 3. *Eum magis quam tē amō.* 4. *Nōn semper eundem hominem laudāmus.* 5. *Magister ipse tē laudābit.* 6. *Sunt sex partēs orbis terrarum; māxima earum est Asia.* 7. *Fortūna nunc mihi,<sup>1</sup> nunc ei<sup>1</sup> favet.* 8. *Interdum amicis<sup>1</sup> ipsīs, interdum inimicis<sup>1</sup> nocet.* 9. *Semper idem erat Sōcratis vultus.* 10. *In eodem specū habitābant Androclus et leō.*

II. 1. *Sallust is an elegant author; have you read his writings?* 2. *I have not read those, but Cicero's.* 3. *Fortune favored now you,<sup>2</sup> now them.<sup>2</sup>* 4. *Even (ipse) your own friend will blame you.* 5. *The minds of men are not always the same.* 6. *We were sailing<sup>3</sup> with you in the same ship.* 7. *He gave me the book of his own accord.<sup>4</sup>* 8. *The master*

<sup>1</sup> Indirect object, though translated as a direct object. See 343.

<sup>2</sup> Dative. Cf. I. 7.

<sup>3</sup> Use passive of *vehō*.

<sup>4</sup> See 270. 6.

offers the same rewards to the boys. 9. The same rewards are offered by the master himself.

### 273. VOCABULARY.

**Androclus**, -ī, m., *Androclus*.  
**auctor**, -ōris, m. [*augeō*, increase],  
maker, author.

**ēlegāns**, -ntis, adj., choice, elegant.  
**faveō**, 2, *fāvi*, *fautum*, l. favor-  
able to, befriend (with dat.).

**interdum**, adv., sometimes.

**mēns**, *mentis*, f., mind, purpose.

**noceō**, 2, *nocuī*, *nocitum*, do  
harm to, hurt, injure (with dat.).

**orbis**, -is, m., circle.

**orbis terrārum**, the earth, the world.

**Sallustius**, -ī, m., *Sallust*, a his-  
torian. (79.)

**scriptor**, -ōris, m. [*scribō*], writer,  
author.

**scriptum**, -ī, n. [*scribō*], writing,  
written work.

**sex**, num. adj., indecl., six.

**specus**, -ūs, m., cave.

**suāviter**, adv. [*suāvis*], sweetly,  
delightfully.

**vultus**, -ūs, m., countenance, fea-  
tures, looks.

**animus** (161), mind, soul, heart; the general word for mind.

**mēns**, mind, as that which thinks, intellect; more limited in meaning.

### 3.

#### COLLOQUIUM.

#### 274. Translate into Latin:—

BROTHER AND LITTLE SISTER. — Continued.

B. Let us carry<sup>1</sup> with us two<sup>2</sup> little-baskets.<sup>3</sup>

S. See!<sup>4</sup> I have them in my hand already.<sup>5</sup>

B. The sun is hot,<sup>6</sup> but there is a cool<sup>7</sup> breeze.

S. Oh, how the trees and flowers delight me!

B. To stay in the house is downright<sup>8</sup> stupid.<sup>9</sup>

S. Yes, indeed,<sup>10</sup> and I don't mean to any more.<sup>11</sup>

B. Here are<sup>12</sup> the strawberries. Now we will fill our  
baskets. Isn't it jolly?<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Let us carry, *portēmus*.

<sup>2</sup> Duās. See 311. 4.

<sup>3</sup> Corbula, -ae.

<sup>4</sup> Ecce.

<sup>5</sup> Ardēns.

<sup>6</sup> Admodum.

<sup>7</sup> Jam.

<sup>8</sup> Frigidus.

<sup>9</sup> Molestus.

<sup>10</sup> Yes, indeed, *ista sunt*, those  
things are (true).

<sup>11</sup> Neither is it in mind to me more.  
See 269, l. 2.

<sup>12</sup> Here are = *en!* or *ecce!*

<sup>13</sup> *suāvissimum*.

CHAPTER XLI. 1  
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

275.

PARADIGMS: **Hic**, iste, ille.**Hic**, *this (near), this of mine.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. <b>hic</b>	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec	
G. <b>hūjus</b>	hūjus	hūjus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	
D. <b>huīc</b>	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs	
Ac. <b>hunc</b>	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec	
Ab. <b>hōc</b>	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs	

**Iste**, *that, that of yours.*

N. <b>iste</b>	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista	
G. <b>istius</b>	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum	
D. <b>istī</b>	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs	
Ac. <b>istum</b>	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista	
Ab. <b>istō</b>	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs	

**Ille**, *that (yonder).*

N. <b>ille</b>	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa	
G. <b>illius</b>	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	
D. <b>illī</b>	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs	
Ac. <b>illum</b>	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa	
Ab. <b>illō</b>	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs	

1. **Hic** is used of that which is near the speaker in *place, time, or thought*, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the First Person: **Hic equus**, *this horse (near me, or belonging to me)*.

2. **Iste** is used of that which has some relation to the person addressed, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the Second Person: **Iste equus**, *that horse (near you, or belonging to you)*.

3. **Ille** is used of that which is relatively remote from the speaker, or person addressed, in *place, time, or thought*, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the Third Person: **Ille equus**, *that horse (yonder)*.

4. **Ille** often means *that well-known, that famous*.

5. **Hic** and **ille** are sometimes used in contrast: **Hic**, *the latter*; **ille**, *the former*.

6. **Is**, as a determinative pronoun, sometimes approaches **hic** in meaning, sometimes **ille**. Hence it is to be translated *this* or *that*, according to the connection.

## 276.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Illius hominis filium laudābant omnēs. 2. Iste canis semper lātrat. 3. Hūjus scholae semper memorēs erimus. 4. Dabō tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum. 5. Illī lapidēs dūrī sunt. 6. Multī virī dīvitēs in hāc urbe habitant. 7. Variī sunt colōrēs hūjus flōris. 8. Nōmen illius poētae est clārissimum. 9. Hārum avium cantus nōs dēlectat. 10. Ista tua studia amō et laudō. 11. Hās terrās silvīs pulcherrimīs ornāvit Deus. 12. Illud ducis cōsilium nōbīs ūtile fuit.

II. 1. These mountains are very<sup>1</sup> high. 2. I shall always be mindful of that friend of yours.<sup>2</sup> 3. This thing will be hurtful to you. 4. Demosthenes and Cicero were famous<sup>3</sup> orators; the former<sup>4</sup> was a Greek, the latter<sup>4</sup> a Roman. 5. The citizens of yonder city are most wretched. 6. The air in these mountains is lighter than in those valleys. 7. He gave me this pretty bird. 8. That old farmer's wine is good. 9. I have read that book of yours. 10. That book of yours has been read by me, by you, by us, by us ourselves.

## 2.

## 277.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hannibal, clārissimus ille imperātor, Alpēs montēs superāvit. 2. Militum animōs hāc ōrātiōne firmāvit. 3. Vidētis, militēs fortissimī, Italiā illam. 4. Illud est domicilium hostium nostrōrum. 5. Gallī, incolae hārum regiōnum, sociī amīcīque nostrī erunt. 6. Hī nōbīs omnēs rēs necessāriās praebēbunt. 7. Hī erunt hostēs illōrum Rōmānōrum

<sup>1</sup> See p. 91, note.

<sup>2</sup> *That of yours* = *iste*.

<sup>3</sup> Superlative.

<sup>4</sup> See 275. 5.

improbōrum. 8. Rōma illa praeda vestra erit. 9. Vōs ipsī expūgnāvistis Saguntum, oppidum illud firmissimum. 10. Hās Alpēs, illōs Pyrēnacōs montēs superāvistis; Rōmānōs mox vincētis.

II. 1. Hannibal increased the courage of the soldiers by these words. 2. Again, soldiers, have you defeated those famous Romans. 3. The gods and your own courage have given us the victory. 4. This fair Italy will soon be ours. 5. Rome itself, that proud city, will be taken. 6. Those arms of yours will be stained with the best blood of Rome. 7. Those famous legions have been defeated. 8. Cross with me yonder mountains. 9. Those fierce enemies of the Romans, the Samnites, will welcome us. 10. Rome shall be the reward of valor. Forward!<sup>1</sup>

## 278.

## VOCABULARY.

**āēr**, **āeris**, *M.*, *air*.

**cantus**, **-ūs**, *M.*, *singing, song*.

**dēlectō**, *1*, *delight*.

**Dēmōsthenēs**, **-is**, *M.*, *Demosthenes*, an Athenian orator.

**divēs**, **-itīs**, *adj.*, *rich*. (167. 3.)

**dō**, *dare*, **dēdī**, *datum*, *give*.

**ex-pūgnō**, *1*, *take by storm, take*.

**fīrmō**, *1* [**fīrmus**], *make firm or steadfast, fortify, strengthen*.

**fīrmus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, *strong, firm*.

**improbū**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, *bad*.

**īterum**, *adv.*, *a second time, again*.

**lātrō**, *1*, *bark, bark at*.

**legiō**, **-ōnis**, *F.*, *legion*.

**maculō**, *1*, *stain*.

**mox**, *adv.*, *soon*.

**necessārius**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, *[sary]*.

**praeda**, **-ae**, *F.*, *booty, spoil*.

**Saguntum**, **-ī**, *N.*, *Saguntum*, town in Spain.

**Samnis**, **-itīs**, *M. & F.*, *a Samnite*.

**sanguis**, **-inis**, *M.*, *blood*.

**silva**, **-ae**, *F.*, *wood, forest*.

**socius**, **-ī**, *M.*, *ally, associate*.

**superbus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, *proud*.

**tenuis**, **-e**, *adj.*, *thin, light*.

**trāscendō**, *3*, **-ī**, **-um**, *cross*.

**cantus**, *song, melody*, whether of the voice of man, of birds, or of musical instruments.

**carmen**, *song*, as *melody*, and also in a wider sense; often with reference to the composition. Hence, *a poem*.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> **Prōcēdite**.

<sup>2</sup> It must not be supposed that

distinctions in synonymous words are always observed in usage.

## CHAPTER XLII. 1.

## PRONOUNS: RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE.

279. PARADIGMS: *Quī, quis, aliquis.*RELATIVE: *Quī, who, which, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

INTERROGATIVE: *Quis, who, which, what?*

N.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

INDEFINITE: *Aliquis, some one, some, any one.*

	SINGULAR.		
N.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid or -quod
G.	alicūjus	alicūjus	alicūjus
D.	alicuī	alicuī	alicuī
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid or -quod
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

	PLURAL.		
N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

1. Observe the feminine nominative singular, and the neuter nominative plural of *aliquis*, and compare them with corresponding forms of *quis*.

2. **Aliquis** is used adjectively in the neuter form **aliquod**, and sometimes in the masculine and feminine forms. The same is true of **quīdam** and **quisque** (4).

3. Besides the interrogative **quis** and its compounds, there is an interrogative adjective **quī** (*which, what?*) declined like the relative **quī**.

4. Besides **aliquis**, the most important indefinites are:

**quīdam**      **quaedam**      **quiddam**, or **quoddam**, *certain one, certain.*

**quisquam** (*wanting*)      **quidquam**, *any one (at all)*, no plural.

**quisque**      **quaeque**      **quidque**, or **quodque**, *each one, every.*

5. **Quīdam**, **quisquam**, and **quisque** are declined like the simple pronouns. **Quīdam** changes *m* to *n* before *d*; **quendam**, etc., **quōrundam**, etc.

6. **Aliquis**, *some one, any one* (without emphasis); **quisquam**, *any one at all* (emphatic), also in negative and interrogative sentences. **Quis** after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num**, is indefinite, *any one*.

7. **Aliquis** means *some man*, I don't know who; **quīdam**, *a certain man*, whom I know, but don't mean to describe.

## 280. Examine the following:—

1. **Puer quī vēnit**, *the boy who came.*
2. **Puella quae vēnit**, *the girl who came.*
3. **Librī quōs legis**, *the books which you read.*
4. **Puellae quās vīdistī**, *the girls whom you saw.*

Compare the relative in each of the above examples with the noun to which it refers (called the *antecedent*) in respect, first to gender, and then to number.

Look now at the case of the relative in each of the examples, and compare the English with the Latin. Plainly, the case of the relative has nothing to do with that of the antecedent. It may be the same or different.

## 281. RULE OF SYNTAX.<sup>1</sup>—A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*.

<sup>1</sup> As the *person* of the antecedent has no effect on the relative, it is wrong, though customary, to

say "the relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person."



**282.** *Examine the following:—*

1. **Ego** quī vēnī, *I who came.*
2. **Vōs** quī vēnistis, *you who came.*

Observe now the person and number of the verb in these two examples, and in the first two given in **280**.

**283.** **RULE OF SYNTAX.**—The verb of which a relative pronoun is the subject agrees in *person* and *number* with the antecedent of the relative.

2.

**284.**

**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Quis forum Rōmānōrum rōstrīs ōrnāvīt? 2. Gājus Duīlius, quī māgnam praedam ā Carthāginiēnsibus reportāvit. 3. Quae amīcitia potest esse<sup>1</sup> inter improbōs? 4. Quis clārīor fuit in Graeciā Themistocle?<sup>2</sup> 5. Quem timēs in meā domō? 6. Quae animālia sunt celerrima et ferōcissima? 7. Omne animal quod sanguinem habet cor habet. 8. Dīvitēs sunt ī quī suīs rēbus contentī sunt. 9. Erant quōque<sup>3</sup> annō duō cōsulēs in civitāte Rōmānā. 10. Sunt animālia quaedam in quibus est aliquid simile ratiōnī.

II. 1. What have you in your hand? 2. By whom was the Roman forum adorned with the prows of ships? 3. We see the general whom you praise. 4. He is rich who is contented. 5. He will be praised whose<sup>4</sup> courage saved our country. 6. We love those whose manners are pleasing. 7. The boy has something in his hand. 8. Certain labors are pleasant to us. 9. We are the same<sup>5</sup> to-day that<sup>5</sup> we were yesterday. 10. What things are brought to us from Africa?

<sup>1</sup> Potest esse, *can be.*

<sup>2</sup> See **212**.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative of *quisque*.

<sup>4</sup> *Of whom.*

<sup>5</sup> *The same . . . that, or same . . . as, idem . . . qui.*



## 3.

## 285.

## EXERCISES.

Before trying to do the following exercises, review the declension of irregular adjectives (200, 201), and write out the declension of *quīdam*, *quisquam*, and *quisque*.

I. 1. Est quisquam tibi cārīor quam parentēs tuī? 2. Proprii liberī cārissimī cuique sunt. 3. Erant duo filii Ikhēae Silviae, quōrum alterī erat nōmen Rōmulus, alterī Rēmus; uterque fortis erat. 4. Estne in ūllō animālī mājor prūdentia quam in cane? 5. Vidēsne illa duo sīdera? utrīus lūx clārīor est? 6. Virtūs eōrum quī patriam nostram servāvērunt semper laudābitur. 7. In istīs arboribus quae hortum ōrnant avēs variae cantant. 8. Rīsus aliōrum saepe causa irae nostrae est. 9. Nullum malum sine aliquō bonō est. 10. Nēmō nostrum idem est in senectūte quī<sup>1</sup> fuit in juventūte. 11. Urbēs illae, quārum glōria magna est, ā militibus nostrīs expūgnātae sunt.

II. 1. All animals that have blood have hearts. 2. We shall be the same<sup>1</sup> to-morrow as<sup>1</sup> we are to-day. 3. Is any<sup>2</sup> animal more sagacious than the elephant?<sup>3</sup> 4. We have five fingers on each hand. 5. Those have hope who have nothing else.<sup>4</sup> 6. Many men build houses which they will never inhabit. 7. The moon sends upon the earth the light which she has received from the sun. 8. Cornelia had two sons, both of whom<sup>5</sup> were killed. 9. Hector, by whose bravery many Greeks were slain, was himself killed. 10. Will not some friend relieve me of this burden?<sup>6</sup>

## 286.

## VOCABULARY.

accipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [ad-capiō], take to, receive, accept.  
bonum, -i, n., good thing, blessing.

Carthāgi lēnsis, -e, adj. [Carth-āgō], of Carthage, Carthaginian.  
clārus, -a, -um, bright, famous.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 128, note 5.

<sup>2</sup> See I. 4.

<sup>3</sup> See 211, 212.

<sup>4</sup> Allud.

<sup>5</sup> Of whom each.

<sup>6</sup> See 128, 129.

contentus, -a, -um, adj., *contented*.

cor, cordis, n., *heart*.

crās, adv., *to-morrow*.

digitus, -i, m., *finger*.

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two* (311. 4).

ex-pūgnō, 1 [pūgna], *take, capture*.

forum, -i, n., *market-place, forum*.

Gājus Duilius, -i, m., *Caius Duilius*.

Hector, -oris, m., *Hector*, chief of the Trojan heroes.

herī, adv., *yesterday*.

hodiē, adv., *to-day*.

labor, -ōris, m., *labor*.

malum, -i, n., *bad thing, evil*.

nēmō (-inis), m. & f. [nē, homo], *no one*. For genitive and ablative use nullius, nullō.

parēns, -entis, m. & f., *parent*. (167. 1.)

proprius, -a, -um, adj., *one's own*.

prudentia, -ae, f. [prūdēns], *foresight, sagacity, wisdom*.

Remus, -i, m., *Remus*, brother of Romulus.

re-portō, 1, *bring back*.

Rhēa Silvia, -ae, f., *Rhea Silvia*.

risus, -ūs, m. [rideō], *laughter*.

Rōmulus, -i, m., *Romulus*, first king of Rome.

rōstrum, -i, n., *proW of a vessel*.

sīdus, -eris, n., *star, constellation*.

Themistoclēs, -is, m., *Themistocles*, a famous Greek.

varius, -a, -um, adj., *different, changeable, various*.



## CHAPTER XLIII. 1.

### REVIEW OF PRONOUNS.

*Review the paradigms.*

#### 287.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Īdem es quī<sup>1</sup> semper fuistī. 2. Hodiē eadem dictitat quae<sup>1</sup> herī. 3. Ecce domum quam aedificāvit Jōhanniculus. 4. Quīdam puer cachinnābat. 5. Iste homo, quī tē laudābat, est stultissimus. 6. Sua cuique<sup>2</sup> cārissima sunt. 7. Suī cuique<sup>2</sup> cārissimī sunt. 8. Cōram mē aliquis illam fābulam nārrābat. 9. Egēns est et is quī nōn satis habet, et is cui nihil satis est. 10. Beātus est quī<sup>3</sup> nōn cupit quae<sup>3</sup> nōn habet.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 128, note 5.

<sup>2</sup> Notice the order; *quisque* likes to stand after the reflexives.

<sup>3</sup> The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is some form of *is*.

II. 1. She is the same that<sup>1</sup> she always has been. 2. He will say the same things to-morrow as<sup>1</sup> to-day. 3. Certain boys laughed out loud in school. 4. That friend of yours is a very wise man. 5. Those trees yonder are covered with leaves. 6. This man is praised by the citizens, that one is blamed. 7. The general himself led his brave soldiers. 8. The soldiers were led by the brave general himself. 9. Danger itself is pleasing to the brave.<sup>2</sup> 10. Those who are most faithful to their friends are most dear to us.

## 2.

## 288.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quod<sup>3</sup> nōn dedit fortūna, nōn ēripit. 2. Liber est quī<sup>3</sup> nullī turpitūdīnī servit. 3. Quis est amīcior frātrī quam frāter? 4. Saepe nihil est inimīcius hominī quam ipse sibi. 5. Saepe iī nōbīs nocent<sup>4</sup> quī nōs amant. 6. Eōs quī aliōrum rēbus adversis nōn moventur omnēs contemnunt. 7. Eōs vincere difficīle est, quī nihil timent. 8. Dēforme est dē sē ipsō praedicāre. 9. Aliud<sup>5</sup> bonum, aliud<sup>5</sup> malum est. 10. Alterī<sup>6</sup> laudem, alterī<sup>6</sup> culpam dabat.

II. 1. Some one has done this. 2. Yesterday a story was read to us by some one. 3. The slave killed himself together with his master. 4. My friend will migrate with me into Gaul. 5. The inhabitants of the city were frightened by the coming of the enemy. 6. Some<sup>7</sup> bear<sup>8</sup> thirst easily, others<sup>7</sup> hunger. 7. The fruits of this tree are pleasing to me, for they are sweet. 8. Those<sup>9</sup> trees are higher than these<sup>9</sup> houses. 9. These towers are high, those are low. 10. Those<sup>10</sup> maidens, whose modesty is known, are praised by all.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 128, note 5.<sup>2</sup> Plural. See 117.<sup>3</sup> See p. 130, note 3.<sup>4</sup> See 343.<sup>5</sup> See p. 87, note 4.<sup>6</sup> See p. 87, note 3.<sup>7</sup> See p. 87, note 4.<sup>8</sup> See p. 87, note 5.<sup>9</sup> See 275. 1 and 3.<sup>10</sup> A form of *is*.

## 289.

## VOCABULARY.

ad-versus, -a, -um, adj., *unfavorable*.

cachinnō, 1, *laugh aloud*. Cf. rideō.

cōram, prep. w. abl., *in presence of*.  
cupiō, 3, -ivī, -itum, *desire*.

dē-formis, -e, adj. [forma], *misshapen, ugly, base, disgraceful*.

dictitō, 1 [dicō], *keep saying*.

ecce, interj., *lo! see! see there!*

egēns, -entis, adj., *in want, needy*.

ē-ripiō, 3, -ui, ēreptum [rapiō],  
*snatch away; seize and bear off*.

famēs, -is, F., *hunger, famine*.

frondōsus, -a, -um, adj. [frōns],  
*covered with leaves, leafy*.

fructus, -ūs, M., *fruit*.

Jōhanniculus, -i, M., *little John, Johnny, Jack*.

migrō, 1, *move from one place to another, migrate*.

modestia, -ae, F., *modesty*.

nārrō, 1, *tell, relate, report*.

prae-dicō, 1 [prae, *before*; dicō, -āre, *make known*], *proclaim, boast*. Cf. praedicō, *predict*.

satis, adv., *enough*.

serviō, 4 [servus], *be a slave to, serve* (w. dat.).

sitis, -is, F., *thirst*. (154.)

tolerō, 1, *bear, endure*.

turpitūdō, -inis, F. [turpis], *ugliness, baseness*.

## 3.

X

## 290.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## SŌCRATĒS ET RHADAMANTHUS.

R. Tū, nisi fallor, es Sōcratēs, ille Athēniēnsis.  
*unless I am mistaken*

S. Rēctē dicis. Ego sum Sōcratēs, filius, ut ferunt,  
*as say*  
Sōphronisē.

R. Cūr dicis ut ferunt? Nōne rē vērā es filius illius?  
*in truth*

S. Ipse quidem nesciō, Ō Rhadamanthe, cūjus sim filius.  
*indeed not know am*

R. Num<sup>1</sup> mē lūdis, Sōcratēs? Cavētō. Nōne tē sapien-  
*mock beware*  
tem dixit ōrāculum?  
*oracle*

S. Ita est; sed quā rē nōn intellegō, nisi quia mē ipse  
*yes why understand*  
Inscium perspiciō.  
*ignorant see plainly*

<sup>1</sup> This word is used in asking questions when the answer *no* is expected. It is not to be translated.

*R.* Quō modo aetātem dēgistī?

how pass

*S.* Māgnā ex parte loquēbar māximēque dē virtūte  
for the most part I used to talk especially  
quaerēbam.  
inquired

*R.* Mihi dē virtūte explicātō, Sōcratēs; per breve tempus  
tibi aurēs praebēbō.

*S.* Ēheu! Rhadamanthe, istīus rei sum īnscius, nam mihi  
alas!  
explicāre poterat nēmō.  
was able no one

*R.* Minimē sapiēns, Sōcratēs, tū mihi vidēris. At quid  
seem but  
hōc locō tibi est in animō facere?

*S.* Ante omnia, sī vidēbitur, cum Homērō velim et Ulixē  
seem good I should like  
et aliīs clārissimīs Graeciae pīncipibus loquī.  
to talk

*R.* Apage igitur ad istās mānēs.  
be off then shades

4.

291.

FOR TRANSLATION.

THE BATTLE OF MARATHON, B.C. 490.

Hōc in tempore nūlla cīvitās Athēniēnsibus auxiliō<sup>1</sup> fuit  
praeter Plataeēnsēs. Ea<sup>2</sup> mīlle mīsīt mīlitum. Itaque hōrum  
adventū decem mīlia armātōrum<sup>3</sup> complēta sunt, quae manus  
mīrābili flagrabat pūgnandī cupiditāte. Quō factum est<sup>4</sup> ut  
plūs quam collēgae Miltiādēs valēret.<sup>5</sup> Ejus ergō auctōritāte  
impulsi<sup>6</sup> Athēniēnsēs cōpiās ex urbe edūxērunt locōque<sup>7</sup>  
idōneō castra fēcērunt. Deinde posterō diē proelium com-  
mīsērunt. Dātis, etsi nōn aequum<sup>8</sup> locum vidēbat suis,<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Auxiliō fuit, was for assist-  
ance = assisted. See 344.

<sup>2</sup> Supply cīvitās.

<sup>3</sup> Armātōrum (participle as  
noun), of armed men.

<sup>4</sup> Quō factum est, by which it  
was brought about = the result was.

<sup>5</sup> Plūs . . . valēret, had more  
influence.

<sup>6</sup> Impulsi (participle from im-  
pellō) prompted.

<sup>7</sup> Locō = in locō.

<sup>8</sup> Aequum, favorable.

<sup>9</sup> Supply militibus.

tamen frētus numerō cōpiārum suārum cōnfigere cupiēbat, eōque<sup>1</sup> magis, quod, priusquam Lacedaemoniī subsidiō<sup>2</sup> venirent,<sup>3</sup> dīmīcāre ūtile arbitrābatur. Itaque in aciem peditum centum,<sup>4</sup> equitum decem mīlia prōdūxit proeliumque commisit. In quō tantō<sup>5</sup> plūs virtūte<sup>6</sup> valuērunt Athēniēnsēs, ut decemplicem numerum hostium prōfligārint,<sup>7</sup> adeōque eōs perterruērunt, ut Persae nōn castra, sed nāvēs petierint.<sup>8</sup> Quā pūgnā<sup>9</sup> nihil adhūc exstitit nōbilius: nūlla enim unquam tam exigua manus tantās opēs prōstrāvit.<sup>10</sup> — *Nepos. Milt. v.*

## CHAPTER XLIV. 1.

## COMPOUNDS OF Sum.

**292. Possum, posse, potui, —, be able, can.**

**Possum** is compounded of **potis**, *able*, and **sum**. **Potis** is everywhere shortened to **pot**; then *t* is changed to *s* before *s*, and *f* is dropped after *t*.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. <i>I am able, can, etc.</i>			
possum	possumus	possim	possimus
potes	potestis	possis	possitis
potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMPER. <i>I was able, could, etc.</i>			
poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT. <i>I shall be able, etc.</i>			
poterō	poterimus		

<sup>1</sup> Eōque magis, and the more.

<sup>2</sup> Subsidiō: cf. auxiliō, first line, and note.

<sup>3</sup> Venirent, should come.

<sup>4</sup> Centum: supply millia.

<sup>5</sup> Tantō plūs valuērunt, were so much superior.

<sup>6</sup> Virtūte. See 259, 260.

<sup>7</sup> Prōfligārint, they routed.

<sup>8</sup> Petierint, fled to. See p. 101, note 1.

<sup>9</sup> Pūgnā: ablative after the comparative nōbilius. (212.)

<sup>10</sup> From prōsternō.

PERF. *I have been able, could, etc.*

*potuī* *potuimus* *potuerim* *potuerimus*

PLUP. *I had been able, could have, etc.*

*potueram* *potuerāmus* *potuissem* *potuissēmus*

FUT. PERF. *I shall have been able, etc.*

*potuerō* *potuerimus*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. *posse, to be able.*

PERF. *potuisse, to have been able.*

293. *Prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, benefit.*

*Prōsum* is compounded of *prōd* (old form of *prō*), *for*, and *sum*. The *d* of *prōd* is retained before *e*.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. <i>I benefit, etc.</i>				
	<i>prō-sum</i>	<i>prō-sumus</i>	<i>prō-sim</i>	<i>prō-sīmus</i>
	<i>prōd-es</i>	<i>prōd-estis</i>	<i>prō-sīs</i>	<i>prō-sītis</i>
	<i>prōd-est</i>	<i>prō-sunt</i>	<i>prō-sit</i>	<i>prō-sint</i>
IMP. <i>prōd-eram</i>	<i>prōd-erāmus</i>	<i>prōd-essem</i>	<i>prōd-essēmus</i>	
FUT. <i>prōd-erō</i>	<i>prōd-erimus</i>			
PERF. <i>prō-fuī</i>	<i>prō-fuimus</i>	<i>prō-fuerim</i>	<i>prō-fuerimus</i>	
PLUP. <i>prō-fueram</i>	<i>prō-fuerāmus</i>	<i>prō-fuissem</i>	<i>prō-fuissēmus</i>	
F. P. <i>prō-fuerō</i>	<i>prō-fuerimus</i>			

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. *prōd-es, prōd-este*    FUT. *prōd-estō, prōd-estōte*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. *prōd-esse*    PERF. *prō-fuisse*

Fut. *prō-futūrus esse*

## PARTICIPLE.

FUT. *prō-futūrus*

The other compounds of *sum* are inflected like the simple verb.



**294.** Learn the tenses of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive of *possum* and *prōsum*.

**295.** RULE OF SYNTAX.—The compounds of *sum*, except *possum* and *absum*, all take the dative; but *insum* is often followed by *in* with the ablative, and *intersum* by *inter* with the accusative.

## 2.

## 296.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. In *vērā amicitia* *māgnū inest praesidium*. 2. *Amicus vērū adest amicō, neque deerit in periculō*. 3. *Amicō prōdesse dulce est, amicō deesse turpe*. 4. *Amicus fidus nōn aberit ab amicō in cāsibus fortunae*. 5. *Mōrēs malī amicitiae obsunt; inter hominēs malōs vērā amicitia nōn interest*. 6. *Cicerō cōsul rei pūblīcae praefuit*. 7. *Multae epistolae Cicerōnis et ejus amicōrum supersunt*. 8. *Virī praestantēs Athēniēnsibus nullō tempore defuerunt*. 9. *Mōrēs tyrannī sibi<sup>1</sup> amicōs parāre nōn poterant*. 10. *Nōn omnēs hominēs rēgēs esse possunt*.

II. 1. Cornelia was able to train her sons wisely. 2. All can be good citizens.<sup>2</sup> 3. Hannibal was not able to take the city. 4. In Hannibal there was great cunning and bravery. 5. Hannibal was long absent from his own country. 6. He commanded armies in Spain and Italy. 7. He was present at many battles, and was the terror<sup>3</sup> of the Romans. 8. He benefited his country in many ways.<sup>4</sup> 9. But his enemies in his own land injured him. 10. Scipio defeated him in battle<sup>5</sup> in Africa. 11. He survived this defeat many years.<sup>6</sup> 12. His name will never lack renown.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For him.<sup>2</sup> See 47.<sup>3</sup> Ablative without *in*.<sup>4</sup> Compare *auxiliō*, 291, first line, and note.<sup>5</sup> Accusative.<sup>6</sup> Ways = things. See 259, 260.<sup>7</sup> Renown will never be wanting to his name.



## 297.

## VOCABULARY.

**ab-sum, -esse, āfui**, *be away, absent (ā or ab w. abl.).*

**ad-sum, -esse, -fui** (also **affui**), *be present, stand by, side with.*

**dē-sum, -esse, -fui**, *be wanting, lack.*

**in-sum, -esse, -fui**, *be in, among.*

**inter-sum, -esse, -fui**, *be present at, among.*

**ob-sum, -esse, -fui**, *be against, opposed to, injure.*

**possum, posse, potui**, *be able, can.*

**prae-sum, -esse, -fui**, *be before, at the head of, command.*

**prō-sum, prōd-esse, prō-fui**, *be useful, benefit.*

**super-sum, -esse, -fui**, *remain over, survive, exist.*

**calliditās, -ātis, f.** [**callidus**], *shrewdness, cunning.*

**casus, -ūs, m.** [**cadō**, *fall*], *falling down, mischance, misfortune.*

**clādēs, -is, f.**, *destruction, defeat,*

**diū**, *adv.*, *long, a long time.*

**dulcis, -e, adj.**, *sweet, pleasant.* Cf. **suāvis**.

**fāma, -ae, f.**, *rumor, fame, renown.*

**ne-que, conj.**, *and not, nor; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.*

**parō**, *1, make ready, prepare, get.*

**patria, -ae, f.**, *native land, country.*

**praesidium, -i, n.** [**prae, sedeō**], *defence, help, garrison.*

**praestāns, -tis, adj.** [**prae-stō**, *stand before*], *pre-eminent, distinguished.*



## CHAPTER XLV. 1.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

## FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.

**298.** DepONENT verbs have the forms of the passive voice with the meaning of the active. There are deponents of each of the four regular conjugations:

**Admirāmur opera Deī**, *we admire the works of God.*

**Miserōs tuēbimur**, *we shall protect the wretched.*

**Audī multa, loquere pauca**, *listen much, say little.*

**Caesar prōvinciam sortītus est**, *Cæsar obtained (by lot) a province.*

**299.** Review the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of *amō* and *moneō*. (86, 112).

The principal parts of deponent verbs are thus given:

*admīror, admīrārī, admīrātus (sum).*

*tueor, tuērī, tuitus (sum).*

*loquor, loquī, locūtus (sum).*

*sortior, sortīrī, sortītus (sum).*

### 300.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Admīrāmur māgnitūdinem caelī. Quis nōn admīrābitur?* 2. *Nocte contemplāmur sīdera.* 3. *Pars vagātur certīs cursibus, plūrima nōn vagantur.* 4. *Sōl dominātur inter stellās.* 5. *Terram lūna comitātur ūna, Jovis stellam lūnae comitantur quattuor.* 6. *Dārēus Alexandrō māgnam Asiae partem pollicitus est.* 7. *Improbī sunt īī quī nēmīnem verentur.* 8. *Homo facinus cōfessus est.* 9. *Comitēs quī salūtem rēgis tuitī erant, māximum praemium accēpērunt.*

II. 1. Who does not admire the beauty of the stars? 2. Other nations accompanied the Cimbri across the Rhine. 3. They wandered far<sup>1</sup> and wide<sup>1</sup> through Gaul and Spain. 4. The Romans wondered at the great bodies of the Germans. 5. Certain animals imitate human voices. 6. We were contemplating that beautiful likeness. 7. The general promised the soldiers<sup>2</sup> a great reward. 8. He<sup>3</sup> is a bad man who does not respect any one.<sup>4</sup> 9. Children respect their parents, slaves fear their master.

### 301.

#### VOCABULARY.

*admīror*, 1, *wonder at, admire.*

*Alexander, -dri, m., Alexander,*  
king of Macedon.

*beneficium, -i, n., benefit, favor.*

*caelum, -i, n., sky, heavens.*

*Cimbri, -ōrum, m., Cimbri, a Ger-*  
man tribe.

*comitor*, 1 [*comes, -itis*], *accom-*  
*pany, attend.*

*cōn-fiteor*, 2, *-fessus, confess.*

<sup>1</sup> *Longē lātēque.*

<sup>2</sup> Not accusative.

<sup>3</sup> *Is.*

<sup>4</sup> *Nōt any one = no one.*

**contemplor**, 1, *look at, observe.*  
**cursus**, -ūs, M. [**currō**, run], *running, course.*

**Dārēus**, -i, M., *Darius, Persian king.*

**dominor**, 1 [**dominus**], *be a lord and master, rule.*

**facinus**, -ōris, N. [**faciō**], *deed, crime. Cf. scelus.*

**Germānus**, -a, -um, adj., *German.*

**imitor**, 1, *imitate.*

**māgnitūdō**, -inis, F. [**māgnus**], *greatness.*

**mereor**, 2, *be worthy of, deserve.*

**per**, prep. w. acc., *through, by.*

**polliceor**, 2, *promise.*

**pulchritūdō**, -inis, F. [**pulcher**], *beauty.*

**stella**, -ae, F., *star.*

**tueor**, 2, **tultus** and **tūtus**, *watch, defend. Cf. dēfendō.*

**vagor**, 1, *go to and fro, wander.*

**vastō**, 1, *lay waste, ravage.*

**vercor**, 2, *reverence, respect.*

**sidus** (286), *a star, a great star, a constellation.*

**stella**, *a star as a bright heavenly body.*

## 2.

## 302.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## PATER ET FĪLIOLUS.

**P.** Ades, mī filiōle, et mihi libellum ostentā.  
come here little book show

**F.** Eccum, cāre pater, sī libellum Latīnum vidēre cupis.  
here it is wish

**P.** Quod pēnsūm tibi hodiē imperāvit praeceptor?  
impose

**F.** Pēnsūm verbōrum dēpōnentium quae ad conjugātiōnem  
deponent

prīmam atque secundam pertinent.  
belong

**P.** Quam ob rem sic appellantur ista verba?  
wherefore name

**F.** Quia formam activam et significātiōnem passivam  
form meaning

plērumque dēposuērunt. Sic nōs praeceptor docuit.  
generally lay aside

**P.** Quod autem pēnsūm in crāstinum diem imperāvit  
for to-morrow  
 praeceptor?

**F.** Ad haec addidit praeceptor alia dēpōnentia. At tū,  
add but  
 mī pater, Latīnae linguae jam puer studēbās?

*P.* Certē, filiōle, idque vehementer.

right hard

*F.* Num ego, sī diligenter didicerō, ērudītus, ut tū, fiam?

learn

learned

as

become

*P.* Procul dubiō. At jam tibi eundem est dormītum.

you

must go

to bed

## CHAPTER XLVI. 1.

### DEPONENT VERBS.

#### THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

★

**303.** *Examine the following:—*

1. *Ūtor vestrā benīgnitāte, I avail myself of (use) your kindness.*
2. *Abūtitor patientiā nostrā, he abuses our patience.*
3. *Lūx quā fruimur ā Deō nōbīs datur, the light which we enjoy is given us by God.*
4. *Fungor vice cōtis, I serve as (discharge the office of) a whetstone.*
5. *Māgnā praedā potītus est, he got great booty.*
6. *Lacte et carne vescēbantur, they lived upon milk and flesh.*

Compare the translation of the examples with the Latin. Observe that the direct object of the verb, or of the preposition closely connected with the verb in English, is represented in Latin by the ablative case.

**304. RULE OF SYNTAX.**—The deponents *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds, take the ablative.

**305.** *Examine the following:—*

1. *Meminit praeteritōrum, he remembers the past.*
2. *Haec olim meminisse iuvābit, to remember these things will one day give pleasure.*

3. **Tōtam causam oblītus est**, *he forgot the whole case.*

4. **Tōtius causae oblītus est**, *he forgot the whole case.*

Observe that in the above examples the genitive is used in 1 and 4, the accusative in 2 and 3.

**306. RULE OF SYNTAX. — Verbs of remembering and forgetting take the genitive or accusative.**

1. Neuter pronouns and adjectives are commonly put in the accusative. **Recordor** regularly takes the accusative.

**307.** Review the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of **regō** and **audiō**. (180, 223).

**308.****EXERCISE**

I. 1. Sūlla urbem Rōmam armātus<sup>1</sup> ingressus est. 2. Athēniēnsium dux māximam adeptus est glōriam. 3. Alexander Māgnus in Asiam profectus est. 4. Eum multī et nōbilēs virī secūtī sunt. 5. Quās injūriās passus es obliviscere.<sup>2</sup> 6. Beneficia quae accēpimus nōn obliviscēmur. 7. Quod beneficium accēpit id obliviscitur. 8. Omnia patī<sup>3</sup> discimus. 9. Cicerō māgnā cum glōriā cōsulātū fūctus est. 10. Lūx quā fruimur dōnum est Deī.

II. 1. Alexander and his companions entered Asia. 2. They suffered both<sup>4</sup> hunger and thirst. 3. He obtained great glory by his victories. 4. He did not forget the words of his master. 5. For he had been the pupil of a wise man. 6. The soldiers follow their general. 7. They<sup>5</sup> are bad men who forget benefits. 8. We can learn to endure all things. 9. Who does not enjoy the light which is given us by God? 10. The boys faithfully discharged their duty.

## 2.

**309.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Caesar, Pompējus, Crassus, imperium inter sē partītī sunt. 2. Caesar Galliam prōvinciam sortītus est. 3. Sae-

<sup>1</sup> Armed.<sup>2</sup> Imperative.<sup>3</sup> Present infinitive of **patior**.<sup>4</sup> Et.<sup>5</sup> II. See 270. 2.

piissimē bellī fortunam expertus est. 4. Postea tōtā Italiā potitus est. 5. Patrēs bona sua cum liberis partiuntur. 6. Multa in Italiā bella orta sunt. 7. Frōns, oculi, vultus, saepe mentiuntur. 8. Quī post mortem Alexandrī rēgnō illius potiti sunt? 9. Optimē scimus quod experti sumus.

II. 1. Soldiers often try the fortune of war. 2. The leaders had divided among themselves the property<sup>1</sup> of the enemy. 3. The Rhone rises not far from the sources of the Rhine. 4. The Rhine, which rises in the Alps, flows into the ocean. 5. The best friends share perils with friends. 6. Who possessed the kingdom after Alexander? 7. We will make trial of our valor. 8. They got possession of the camp of the enemy. 9. Who gets by lot Sicily (as) his province?<sup>2</sup>

## 310.

## VOCABULARY.

**adipiscor**, 3, **adeptus**, *get, obtain.*

Cf. **potior**.

**castra**, -ōrum, n. (pl.), *camp.*

**Crassus**, -i, m., *Crassus, a rich*

Roman, contemporary of Cæsar.

**ex-perior**, 4, **expertus**, *make trial of, test.*

**frōns**, **frontis**, f., *brow, forehead.*

**fruor**, 3, **fruitus** and **fructus**, *enjoy.*

**fungor**, 3, **fūctus**, *perform, discharge.*

**imperium**, -i, n. [**imperō**], *command, authority, power.*

**in-gredior**, 3, **gressus** [**gradior**], *enter.*

**mentior**, 4, *lie, deceive.*

**obliscor**, 3, **oblitus**, *forget.*

**ōceanus**, -i, m., *ocean.*

**officium**, -i, n., *duty.*

**optimē**, adv., *most excellently, best.*

**orior**,<sup>3</sup> 4, **ortus**, *rise, appear, begin.*

**partior**, 4 [**pars**], *divide, share.*

**patior**, 3, **passus**, *bear, suffer.*

**Pompējus**, -ēi, m., *Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.*

**postea**, adv., *afterwards.*

**potior**, 4, *become master of, get.*

Cf. **adipiscor**. [*march.*

**profiscor**, 3, -**fectus**, *set out,*

**prōvincia**, -ae, f., *province.*

**rēgnum**, -i, n., *kingdom.*

**sequor**, 3, **secūtus**, *follow.*

**sortior**, 4, *draw lots, obtain by lot.*

**Sūlla**, -ae, m., *Sulla, a Roman general and statesman.*

<sup>1</sup> Compare I. 5.    <sup>2</sup> Predicate accusative.    <sup>3</sup> See vocab. p. 247.

## CHAPTER XLVII. 1.

## 311.

## NUMERALS.

## CARDINALS.

1. ūnus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo
3. trēs, tria
4. quattuor
5. quīnque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octō
9. novem
10. decem
11. ūndecim
12. duodecim
13. tredecim
14. quattuordecim
15. quīndecim
16. sēdecim, or sexdecim
17. septendecim
18. duodēvigintī<sup>1</sup>
19. ūndēvigintī<sup>1</sup>
20. vigintī
21. { vigintī ūnus, or  
ūnus et vigintī
22. { vigintī duo, or  
duo et vigintī
28. duodētrīgintā<sup>1</sup>
29. ūndētrīgintā<sup>1</sup>
30. trīgintā
40. quadrāgintā
50. quīnquāgintā
60. sexāgintā
70. septuāgintā

## ORDINALS.

- prīmus, -a, -um
- secundus (or alter)
- tertius
- quārtus
- quīntus
- sextus
- septimus
- octāvus
- nōnus
- decimus
- ūndecimus
- duodecimus
- tertius decimus
- quārtus decimus
- quīntus decimus
- sextus decimus
- septimus decimus
- duodēvicēsīmus
- ūndēvicēsīmus
- vicēsīmus
- { vicēsīmus prīmus, or  
ūnus et vicēsīmus
- { vicēsīmus secundus, or  
alter et vicēsīmus
- duodētricēsīmus
- ūndētricēsīmus
- tricēsīmus
- quadrāgēsīmus
- quīnquāgēsīmus
- sexāgēsīmus
- septuāgēsīmus

<sup>1</sup> Duodēvigintī = two from twenty; ūndēvigintī = ūnus dē vigintī, one from twenty. Similarly are formed 28, 29, 38, 39, etc.



CARDINALS.		ORDINALS.	
80.	octōgintā		octōgēsīmus
90.	nōnāgintā		nōnāgēsīmus
100.	centum		centēsīmus
101.	{ centum ūnus, or centum et ūnus		{ centēsīmus primus, or centēsīmus et primus
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a		ducentēsīmus
300.	trecentī		trecentēsīmus
400.	quadringentī		quadringentēsīmus
500.	quīngentī		quīngentēsīmus
600.	sēscētī		sēscētēsīmus
700.	septingentī		septingentēsīmus
800.	octingentī		octingentēsīmus
900.	nōngentī		nōngentēsīmus
1,000.	mille		millēsīmus
2,000.	duo milia		bis millēsīmus
100,000.	centum milia		centiēs millēsīmus

1. Cardinal numbers answer the question *how many?* Ordinals, *which in order?*

2. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum**, inclusive, are indeclinable: **quattuor hominēs**, *four men*; **quattuor hominum**, *of four men*.

3. **Ūnus** is declined like **bonus**, except that it has genitive and dative singular **ūnīus**, **ūnī**, like **alius** (201).

4. **Duo** and **trēs** are thus declined:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

5. The hundreds, **ducentī**, etc., are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

6. **Mille** is indeclinable in the singular, and is sometimes an adjective and sometimes a noun: **mille hominēs**, *a thousand men*, **mille hominum**, *a thousand (of) men*. The plural has the forms **milia**, **mīlium**, **mīlibus**, and is always a noun: **tria milia hominum**, *three thousand men (three thousands of men)*.



7. The ordinals are declined like **bonus**.

8. Other kinds of numerals are the distributives: **singulī, -ae, -a**, *one each*, **bīnī, -ae, -a**, *two each*, etc.; and the numeral adverbs: **semel, once, bis, twice**, etc.

**312.** *Examine the following:—*

1. **Decem annōs Trōja oppugnābātur**, *Troy was besieged for ten years.*

2. **Turris alta est centum pedēs**, *the tower is a hundred feet high.*

The accusative **annōs** denotes duration or extent of *time*, **pedēs**, extent of *space*. The accusative, then, is used to answer the question *how long?* or *how far?* (in *time* or *space*), and may be called the **Accusative of Extent**.

**313.** **RULE OF SYNTAX.**—Extent of *time* or *space* is expressed by the accusative.

## 2.

### 314.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Homo ūnum ōs, duās aurēs, duōs oculōs habet.** 2. **Alexander Māgnus tredecim annōs rēgnāvit.** 3. **Templum Diānae quadringentōs quīnquāgintā pedēs longum et ducen-  
tōs vīgintī pedēs lātum erat.** 4. **Annus spatium trecentōrum  
sexāgintā quīnque diērum est.** 5. **Duodecim sunt mēnsēs.** 6. **Mēnsis trīgintā diēs habet, Februārius duodētrīgintā.** 7. **Diēs vīgintī quattuor hōrās habet.** 8. **Rōmānōrum vete-  
rum annus decem mēnsēs habēbat; Mārtius erat prīmus,  
December decimus.** 9. **Aut tertius decimus aut quīntus  
decimus diēs mēnsis Īdūs nōminābātur.**

II. 1. **Romulus, the first king of Rome, reigned thirty-  
seven years.** 2. **This house is fifty-nine<sup>1</sup> feet long and  
forty-eight feet wide.** 3. **The river is fourteen feet deep and  
ninety-two feet wide.** 4. **With<sup>2</sup> the ancient Romans Septem-  
ber was the seventh month; with us September is the ninth  
month.** 5. **The Roman consuls held power for one year.**

<sup>1</sup> See p. 143, note.

<sup>2</sup> **Apud**, with accusative.

6. In the five hundred and fiftieth year of the city Scipio was consul. 7. Five and twenty languages were known to King Mithridates. 8. In the first month of the year there are thirty-one days. 9. A Roman legion had five thousand foot-soldiers and three hundred horse-soldiers.

## 315.

## VOCABULARY.

annus, -i, M., *year*.

auris, -is, F., *ear*.

December, -bris, M. [decem],  
*December*. Often as adj.

Diāna, -ae, F., *Diana*, goddess of  
the chase. [as adj.]

Februārius, -i, M., *February*. Oft.

Idūs, -uum, F., plur., *the Ides of*  
*the month*. (244. 1.)

lingua, -ae, F., *tongue, language*.

Mārtius, -i, M. [Mārs], *March*.  
Often as adj.

Mithridātēs, -is, M., *Mithridates*,  
king of Pontus.

ōs, ōris, N., *mouth, face*.

September, -bris, M. [septem],  
*September*. Often as adj.

spatium, -i, N., *room, space, period*.

## CHAPTER XLVIII. 1.

## 316.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

Volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish*.

Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not*.

Mālō, mälle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer*.

## INDICATIVE.

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPER.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam	nōlam	mālam
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPER.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissē	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	(Wanting)	nōlī	(Wanting)
		nōlīte	
FUT.	(Wanting)	[nōlītō, etc.]	(Wanting)

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	(Wanting)
-------	--------	--------	-----------

317. Learn the tenses of the indicative and infinitive of volō, nōlō, and mālō, and the present imperative of nōlō.

2.

318.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nōs scribere volumus, tū vīs legere, ille puer lūdere vult. 2. Cūr in hortō ambulāre volunt? 3. In hortō ambulāre mālunt quod ibi sunt fontēs et arborēs. 4. Volēbantne vitia sua excūsāre? 5. Nōlī excūsāre vitia tua. 6. Nōlīte

oblivisci praeceptōrum<sup>1</sup> parentum. 7. Tīmoleōn māluit diligī quam metuī. 8. Valēre māluerat quam dīves esse. 9. Aliēna quisque vitia reprehendere māvult quam sua corrigere. 10. Volumus ad finem itineris prōgredi.

II. 1. Why would you rather read than write? 2. We would rather walk in the fields with you. 3. Who would not rather be praised than blamed? 4. They will be unwilling to accept your gift. 5. Do not forget,<sup>2</sup> boys, the precepts of your teacher. 6. Do not forget, my boy, the lesson which I have explained. 7. He listened because he wished to learn. 8. He would not<sup>3</sup> blame another's fault; he greatly desired to correct his own. 9. We wish the same (things) as<sup>4</sup> you. 10. Our friends will wish the same (thing) as ourselves.

## 319.

## VOCABULARY.

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [allus],  
belonging to another, another's.

ambulō, 1, walk, take a walk.

corrigō, 3, -rēxi, -rēctum [com,  
regō, keep straight], make straight,  
reform, correct.

diligō, 3, -lēxi, -lēctum [dis,  
apart, legō, choose], esteem, love.  
Cf. amō.

ex-cūsō, 1 [causa], excuse,

ex-plīcō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, and -ui,  
-itum [plīcō], unfold, explain.

ibi, adv., there. Cf. ubi, where.

iter, itineris, n. [eō, 327. 1],  
journey. (262.)

lūdō, 3, lūsi, lūsum, play.

mālō, mālī, mālui, — [ma-  
gis, volō], wish rather, prefer,  
would rather.

māximē, adv. (sup. of magis,  
more), most, especially, greatly.

metuō, 3, -ui, -ūtum [metus],  
fear. Cf. timeō.

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — [nōn, vo-  
lō], be unwilling, will not, not wish.

praeceptum, -i, n. [praeclpō],  
maxim, precept.

prō-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradī-  
or], go forward, advance.

quod, conj., because. Cf. quia.

re-prehendō, 3, -di, -hēnsus,  
hold back, restrain, reprove.

Tīmoleōn, -ontis, m., Timoleon, a  
Corinthian.

valeō, 2, -ui, -itum, be strong or well.

vitium, -i, n., fault, blemish, vice.

volō, velle, volui, —, be willing,  
will, wish, desire. Cf. dēsiderō.

<sup>1</sup> From praeceptum.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. I. 6.

<sup>3</sup> Was unwilling.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 128, note 5.

**amō**, *love*, not implying and not excluding *esteem*; the common word.  
**diligō**, *love* unselfishly and with *esteem*; more restricted in meaning than **amō**.

**volō** means both less and more than *wish*, namely, *consent* and *will*; very much used.

**dēsiderō** means *wish ardently*, with the notion (which **volō** has not) of *lacking* or *missing* the thing much desired; more restricted in meaning than **volō**.

## 3.

X

320.

## FOR TRANSLATION.

Multī hominēs volunt quidem rēctē facere, sed nōn faciunt; nam velle et facere nōn idem est. Saepe homo rēctē agere vult, sed vīrēs dēsunt. Multī peccāta sua excūsāre quam dēpōnere mālunt. Saepe aliēna peccāta vituperāre quam nostra corrigere mālunt. Multī suā sorte nōn sunt contentī, sed aliēna appetere mālunt. At cūr nōn fēliciter vīvere māvīs? Fēlix is est quī rēctē agere vult rēctēque agīt.



X

## CHAPTER XLIX. 1.

321.

THE IRREGULAR VERB **Ferō.**

**Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**: *bear, carry, endure.*

ACTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRES.	<b>ferō</b>	<b>ferimus</b>		<b>feror</b>	<b>ferimur</b>
	<b>fers</b>	<b>fertis</b>		<b>ferris, or -re</b>	<b>ferimini</b>
	<b>fert</b>	<b>ferunt</b>		<b>fertur</b>	<b>feruntur</b>
IMPER.	<b>ferēbam</b>			<b>ferēbar</b>	
FUT.	<b>feram</b>			<b>ferar</b>	
PERF.	<b>tulī</b>			<b>lātus sum</b>	
PLUP.	<b>tuleram</b>			<b>lātus eram</b>	
F. P.	<b>tulerō</b>			<b>lātus erō</b>	
SUBJUNCTIVE.					
PRES.	<b>feram</b>			<b>ferar</b>	
IMPER.	<b>ferrem</b>			<b>ferrer</b>	
PERF.	<b>tulerim</b>			<b>lātus sim</b>	
PLUP.	<b>tulisse</b>			<b>lātus essem</b>	

		IMPERATIVE.	
ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRES. fer <sup>1</sup>	ferte	[ferre]	feriminī
FUT. fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

		INFINITIVE.	
PRES.	ferre		ferī
PERF.	tulisse		lātus esse
FUT.	lāturus esse		lātum iri

		PARTICIPLES.	
PRES.	ferēns		
FUT.	lāturus	GER.	ferendus
		PERF.	lātus

		GERUND.	
G.	ferendī		
D.	ferendō		
Ac.	ferendum		
Ab.	ferendō		

		SUPINE.	
Ac.	lātum	Ab.	lātū

**322.** Compounds of **ferō** are conjugated like the simple verb. Observe the changes suffered by certain of the prepositions in the following:

<b>ab-</b>	<b>auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum.</b>
<b>ad-</b>	<b>adferō, adferre, attulī, allātum (adl).</b>
<b>com-</b>	<b>cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (conl).</b>
<b>dis-</b>	<b>differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum.</b>
<b>ex-</b>	<b>efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum.</b>
<b>in-</b>	<b>inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum (inl).</b>
<b>ob-</b>	<b>offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum.</b>
<b>sub-</b>	<b>sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum.</b>

**323.** Learn the tenses of the indicative, the imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **ferō**.

<sup>1</sup> For **fere**; **dicō, dūcō, faciō, ferō**, have imperative present second singular **dīc, dūc, fac, fer**.

**324.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Aufert, aufertur. 2. Auferet, auferētur. 3. Abs-  
tulit, ablātus est. 4. Cōferre, cōferri. 5. Cōferunt,  
cōferuntur. 6. Cōferent, cōferentur. 7. Contulerant,  
collātī erant. 8. Distulērunt, dilātī sunt. 9. Distulerit,  
dilātus erit. 10. Distulisse, dilātus esse. 11. Differēbant,  
differēbantur.

II. 1. We bear, we are borne. 2. We were bearing, we  
were borne. 3. We have borne, we have been borne.  
4. We shall bear, we shall be borne. 5. We had borne,  
we had been borne. 6. Bear thou, bear ye. 7. To offer,  
to be offered. 8. Ye shall offer, ye shall be offered. 9. To  
have offered, to have been offered. 10. Ye offer, ye will  
offer. 11. Ye are offered, ye will be offered.

2.

X

**325.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Ferte patienter<sup>1</sup> labōrēs. 2. Bene ferre māgnam  
fortūnam discite. 3. Ferte patienter (quae<sup>2</sup> mūtārī nōn  
possunt.) 4. Nōn omnis ager quī seritur fert frūgēs. 5. Be-  
nīgnum rēgem nōn tulistis; jam ferum et barbarum fertōte.  
6. Nōlite differre pēnsū quod hodiē facere potestis. 7. Im-  
perātor mīlitibus dēfessīs auxiliū attulit. 8. In ūnum locum  
collātum est ex agrīs omne frūmentum. 9. Longa<sup>3</sup> nōbīs  
est omnis mora quae gaudia differt. 10. Caesar omnibus  
quī contrā sē arma tulerant veniam dedit.

II. 1. They bore labor with patience. 2. They did not  
endure a good king; now they are enduring a bad one.<sup>4</sup>  
3. We cannot put off our tasks. 4. We shall learn to bear  
our good fortune well. 5. They bore with patience that<sup>5</sup>  
which they could not change. 6. The robbers bore off the

<sup>1</sup> What might be substituted for the adverb? See 144, 145.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 130, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> Tedious.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.

<sup>5</sup> Id.

booty which they had seized. 7. Do not<sup>1</sup> bring me that which I do not want. 8. Delays which postpone our joy are always tedious. 9. The townsmen carried their all<sup>2</sup> with them out of the town.

## 326.

## VOCABULARY.

**ad-ferō** (afferō), adferre, at-  
tuli, adlātum, *bear to, bring.*

**au-ferō**, auferre, abstuli, ablā-  
tum [ab(s)], *bear off, carry*  
*away.*

**auxilium**, -i, n., *help, aid.*

**barbarus**, -a, -um, adj., *foreign,*  
*barbarous.*

**benignus**, -a, -um, adj., *kind, good.*

**cōn-ferō**, cōnferre, contuli,  
collātum (conlātum), *bring*  
*together, collect; sē cōnferre, be-*  
*take one's self.*

**dis-ferō**, differre, distuli, dilā-  
tum [dis, apart], *bear apart,*  
*scatter, put off, postpone.*

**ex-ferō**, efferre, extuli, elātum  
[ex], *bear out, bring forth.*

**ferus**, -a, -um, adj., *wild, cruel.*

**frūgēs**, -um, f., plur., *fruits.*

**gaudium**, -i, n. [gaudeō, re-  
joice], *joy, delight.*

**in-ferō**, inferre, intuli, illātum  
(inlātum), *bear in, cause; bellum*  
*inferre, to make war, w. dat.*

**jam**, adv., *already, now, at last.*

**mora**, -ae, f., *delay.*

**of-ferō**, offerre, obtuli, oblātum  
[ob, before], *present, offer.*

**patienter**, adv. [patiēns], *pa-*  
*tiently, with patience.*

**serō**, 3, sēvi, satum, *sow, plant.*

**suf-fero**, sufferre, sustuli, sub-  
lātum [sub], *undergo, endure.*

**venia**, -ae, f., *indulgence, kind-*  
*ness, mercy.*

## CHAPTER L. 1.

## 327.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

**Eō**, ire, ii [ivī], Itum, go.

**Fīō**, fierī, factus sum (supplies pass. to faciō), be made, become.

## INDICATIVE.

	Eō.		Fīō.
PRES. eō	imus	fīō	fimus
is	itis	fīs	fītis
it	eunt	fīt	fīunt

<sup>1</sup> Compare I. 6.

<sup>2</sup> Their all, omnia sua.



	<b>Eō.</b>		<b>Fīō.</b>
IMPER.	<b>ībam</b>		<b>fīēbam</b>
FUT.	<b>ībō</b>		<b>fīam</b>
PERF.	<b>īī</b>		<b>factus sum</b>
PLUP.	<b>ieram</b>		<b>factus eram</b>
F. P.	<b>ierō</b>		<b>factus erō</b>
	<b>SUBJUNCTIVE.</b>		
PRES.	<b>eam</b>		<b>fīam</b>
IMPER.	<b>īrem</b>		<b>fīerem</b>
PERF.	<b>ierim</b>		<b>factus sim</b>
PLUP.	<b>iissem</b>		<b>factus essem</b>
	<b>IMPERATIVE.</b>		
PRES. I	<b>īte</b>	<b>fī</b>	<b>fīte</b>
FUT.	<b>ītō</b>		
	<b>ītōte</b>		
	<b>ītō</b>		<b>euntō</b>
	<b>INFINITIVE.</b>		
PRES.	<b>īre</b>		<b>fīrī</b>
PERF.	<b>iisse</b>		<b>factus esse</b>
FUT.	<b>itūrus esse</b>		<b>factum irī</b>
	<b>PARTICIPLES.</b>		
PRES.	<b>īēns, Gen. euntis</b>		
FUT.	<b>itūrus</b>	GER.	<b>faciendus</b>
		PERF.	<b>factus</b>
	<b>GERUND.</b>		
	G. <b>eundī</b>		
	D. <b>eundō</b>		
	Ac. <b>eundum</b>		
	Ab. <b>eundō</b>		
	<b>SUPINE.</b>		
	Ac. <b>itum</b>	Ab. <b>itū</b>	

1. The root of **eō**, namely *i*, is changed to *e* before a vowel, except in perf. plup. and fut. perf., and in nom. sing. of pres. part.
2. Compounds of **eō** generally form the perfect in *ī* instead of *īī*. The simple verb rarely, if ever, has *īī*, *īīeram*, etc.
3. The *i* of **fīō** is long except when followed by *er*, and in **fīt**.

**328.** Learn the tenses of the indicative, the imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive of **eō** and **fīō**.

## 329.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nōlite velle id quod fieri nōn potest. 2. Amīcī Alexandrī rēgēs factī sunt. 3. Nēmō nāscitur sapiēns, nēmō cāsū fit bonus. 4. Leve fīēbat onus, quod bene ferēbātur. 5. Apud veterēs Rōmānōs ex agricolīs fīēbant cōsulēs. 6. Omnēs ferē<sup>1</sup> hominēs senectūte fīunt prūdentiōrēs. 7. Quīdam amnēs subeunt terram rūsusque in terram red-eunt. 8. Alpēs nēmō ante Hannibalem cum exercitū trāns-iit. 9. Miltiadēs Pēlōn insulam expūgnāre nōn potuit et in patriam rediit. 10. Populus solet nōn nunquam<sup>2</sup> dīgnōs praeterīre.

II. 1. That has been done which you wished. 2. My friends, you become wiser by old age. 3. Men never become good by chance. 4. Who will cross the river with me?<sup>3</sup> 5. The generals crossed the mountains with a large part<sup>4</sup> of their forces. 6. Light become the burdens that are patiently borne. 7. Our friends have gone away, but they will return. 8. The people passed by many worthy men. 9. The inhabitants of the city went out with their horses and wagons. 10. The generals return to<sup>5</sup> their country with prisoners and booty. 11. Do not<sup>6</sup> cross the very deep river.

## 2.

## 330.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Septīcs Marius, quī Cimbrōs et Teutonēs duōbus ācerrimīs proeliīs vīcit, cōsul factus est, 2. Sōcratēs aequō animō diem suprēmum obiit, 3. Ariovistī cōpiae intrā annōs quattuordecim tectum nōn subierant. 4. Autumnō multae avēs in aliās terrās proficiscuntur, at vēre novō

<sup>1</sup> Ferē is often thus placed between an adjective and its noun.

<sup>2</sup> Nōn nunquam, not never = sometimes.

<sup>3</sup> See 265. 3.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 21, note 1.

<sup>5</sup> To = into.

<sup>6</sup> See 318. I. 5 and 6.

redeunt. 5. Abeunt omnia unde orta sunt, 6. Alexander cōsiliō<sup>1</sup> fortitudineque omnēs anteibat; omnēs labōrēs subibat.

II. 1. In winter<sup>2</sup> the days become shorter and the nights longer. 2. After the battle many perished of cold<sup>3</sup> and hunger. 3. Cicero was made consul<sup>4</sup> by the Romans. 4. By the prudence (cōsiliū) and valor of Scipio, Hannibal was compelled to return into Africa. 5. We ought to meet our last day with equanimity.<sup>5</sup> 6. Alexander came off victorious<sup>6</sup> from all his battles.

331.

VOCABULARY.

ab-eō, -īre, -lī, -itum, go off, come off, go away. (327. 2.)

aequus, -a, -um, adj., level, equal; calm.

ante-eō, -īre, -lī, —, go before, surpass.

apud, prep. with acc., with, in, near, among.

Ariovistus, -ī, m., Ariovistus, king of a German tribe.

autumnus, -ī, m., autumn.

cōgō, 3, -ēgī, -āctum [com, agō], drive together; compel.

cōpia, -ae, f., power, abundance, wealth; plur. troops, forces.

dēbeō, 2, -uī, -itum, owe, ought.

ex-eō, -īre, -lī, -itum, go out.

ferē, adv., nearly, for the most part.

intrā, prep. with acc., within.

Marius, -ī, m., Marius, a famous Roman general.

nāscor, 3, nātus, be born.

ob-eō, -īre, -lī, -itum, go towards, meet.

Parus, -ī, f., Paros, an island in the Aegean Sea. (11. 4.)

per-eō, -īre, -lī, —, perish.

praeter-eō, -īre, -lī, -itum, go by, pass by, omit.

red-eō, -īre, -lī, -itum, return.

re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, carry back.

rūrsus, adv. [re-vorsus, re-vertō], turned back, back, again.

septiēs, num. adv. [septem], seven times.

sub-eō, -īre, -lī, -itum, go under, enter, undergo.

tectum, -ī, n. [tegō, cover], covering, shelter, roof.

Teutonēs, -um, m., the Teutons, a German tribe.

trāns-eō, -īre, -lī, -itum, go over, cross.

<sup>1</sup> See 260.

<sup>2</sup> Compare I. 4.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative.

<sup>4</sup> Compare I. 1; also 47.

<sup>5</sup> Compare I. 2.

<sup>6</sup> Victor.

## 3.

## 332.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## TITYRUS ET MELIBOEUS.

*T.* Aliquis jānuam pulsāt. <sup>door</sup> <sup>knock</sup> <sup>open</sup> *Ī, puer, aperi jānuam.*

[*Meliboeus trīstī vultū passibus tardīs introit.*]  
<sup>steps</sup> <sup>slow</sup> <sup>enter</sup>

*Salvē, amīce, diū mē nōn adīstī. Cūr iste vultus trīstis?*  
 how do you do

*M.* Eheu! mī Tityre, abeō ē meā patriā.

*T.* Cūr abīs? Quō abībīs? Nōlī relinquere haec arva  
 dulcia. <sup>leave</sup> <sup>fields</sup>

*M.* Quid tibi vīs? Meōs agrōs militibus impiīs dōnāvit  
 what would you have me do <sup>wicked</sup> <sup>has given</sup>  
*Octāviānus. Māgna pars gregum interiit. Ipse perī.*  
<sup>am undone</sup>

*T.* Minimē, amīce; adī ad Octāviānum; ille est benīgnus,  
 neque vult tē perīre. Tū agrōs recipiēs.

*M.* Parvae spēs mihi sunt redeundī; tamen ībō, ut tū  
 monēs; Octāviānō ad pedēs mē prōiciam.

*T.* Et redībīs in agrōs tuōs; redībit pāx aurea. Valē, mī  
 Meliboe, es bonō animō.  
<sup>keep up your courage</sup>

*M.* Et tū valē, bone Tityre.

## CHAPTER LI. 1.

## PREPOSITIONS.

**333.** Thus far several prepositions have been used in the exercises, some followed by the accusative and some by the ablative. These are the only cases in Latin that follow prepositions.

## PREPOSITIONS FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE.

**ā** (ab, abs), away from, by.

**absque**, without.

**cōram**, in presence of.

**cum**, with.

**dē**, from, concerning.

**ē** (ex), out of, from.

**prae**, before, in comparison with.

**prō**, before, for.

**sine**, without.

**tenus**, as far as, up to.

1. **In**, meaning *into, to, towards, for*, that is after verbs denoting *motion*, takes the accusative.
2. **In**, meaning *in, on, at*, that is after verbs denoting *rest*, takes the ablative. See 334.
3. **Sub**, *under, up to*, after verbs of *motion*, takes the accusative; after verbs of *rest*, the ablative.
4. Remember that all prepositions except the ten mentioned, and **in** and **sub**, are followed by the accusative only.

## EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE.

334. *Examine the following:—* \*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <b>In</b> oppidō, <i>in the town.</i>     | 8. <b>Athēnīs</b> , <i>at (in) Athens.</i>       |
| 2. <b>In</b> nāvī, <i>on shipboard.</i>      | 9. <b>Corinthī</b> , <i>at (in) Corinth.</i>     |
| 3. <b>Ad</b> montem, <i>to the mountain.</i> | 10. <b>Thūriīs</b> , <i>at (in) Thurii.</i>      |
| 4. <b>Ex</b> agrīs, <i>from the fields.</i>  | 11. <b>Carthāginī</b> , <i>at (in) Carthage.</i> |
| 5. <b>In</b> Italiā, <i>in Italy.</i>        | 12. <b>Rōmae</b> , <i>at (in) Rome.</i>          |
| 6. <b>In</b> Italiā, <i>to Italy.</i>        | 13. <b>Rōmam</b> , <i>to Rome.</i>               |
| 7. <b>Ex</b> Italiā, <i>from Italy.</i>      | 14. <b>Rōmā</b> , <i>from Rome.</i>              |

Observe the ways of denoting the place *in, on, at, to, from* which. In English we always<sup>1</sup> use a preposition with the noun of *place*, as the examples show. So in Latin (see examples 1-7), except with names of towns.<sup>2</sup> For these a rule may be inferred from the examples 8-14.

## 335. RULE OF SYNTAX. — With names of towns —

1. The place *in* or *at* which is expressed by the locative. (See 14, 2; 40; 175.)
2. The place *to* which, by the accusative without a preposition.<sup>3</sup>
3. The place *from* which, by the ablative without a preposition.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Except in the case of the word *home*, after a verb of *motion*.

<sup>2</sup> Names of small islands are often treated like names of towns.

<sup>3</sup> This accusative may be called

the Accusative of Limit, because it denotes the limit, or end, of motion.

<sup>4</sup> This ablative is the *ablative of separation*. (128, 129, 130.)

**336.** *Domus, home, house, and rūs, the country, have the construction of names of towns:*

*domī, at home.*

*domum, (to) home.*

*domō, from home.*

*rūrī, in the country.*

*rūs, to (into) the country.*

*rūre, from the country.*

## 2.

## X 337.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cōsulēs in sōdem suam prōcēssēre.<sup>1</sup> 2. Porsena rēx īnfestō cum exercitū Rōmam vēnit. 3. Rōmānī ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrānt. 4. Nova Rōmae dīgnitās creāta est, quae dictātūra appellāta est. 5. Tarquinius Cūmās sē contulit. 6. Missī sunt Rōmā ad Coriolānum ōrātōrēs dē pāce. 7. Is dē forō domum sē recipiēbat. 8. Erat quīdam Athēnīs quī sē sapientem profitēbātur. 9. Rēgulus in Āfricam trājēcit. 10. Deinde Rōmam missus est, sed mox Carthāginem rediit. 11. Rōmā missī sunt Carthāginem lēgātī. 12. Rōmānī duās clādēs in Hispāniā accēpērunt. 13. Tunc Scīpiō ex Siciliā in Āfricam profectus est. 14. Hannibal ex angustiīs ēvāsīt.

II. 1. The consul set out from Rome with a large army. 2. We have removed from the city into the country. 3. Then the general retreated<sup>2</sup> into Campania. 4. I have lived in Athens three years.<sup>3</sup> 5. Tarquin remained at Cumæ a long time. 6. Scipio defeated Hannibal at Zama. 7. Regulus returned from Africa to Rome. 8. Afterwards he was sent back from Rome to Carthage. 9. Cæsar carried on war in Gaul eight years.<sup>3</sup> 10. Cicero was born at Arpinum. 11. The consul proceeded to Athens with his army. 12. From Athens he sailed<sup>4</sup> to Italy. 13. Do you remain (*imperative*) at home; I will return to the army. 14. Shall you come home soon? X

<sup>1</sup> From prōcēdō, perfect tense.

<sup>2</sup> See I. 7, and 239.

<sup>3</sup> See 313.

<sup>4</sup> See 272. II. 6.

*rubho*

## 338.

## VOCABULARY.

**angustiae, -ārum, F., plur.** [an-  
gustus, narrow], narrow pass.

Cf. Eng. narrow.

**appellō, 1,** address, call, name.

**Arpinum, -i, N., Arpinum,** a town  
in Italy.

**Athēnae, -ārum, F. plur., Athens.**

**Carthāgō, -inis, F., Carthage,** a  
city in Africa.

**Coriolānus, -i, M., a surname of**  
*C. Marcius*, a Roman consul.

**Cūmae, -ārum, F. plur., Cumæ,** a  
town in Campania.

**dē-migrō, 1,** emigrate, remove.

**dictātūra, -ae, F. [dictātor],**  
office of dictator, dictatorship.

**dignitās, -ātis, F. [dignus,**  
worthy], worth, dignity, office.

**ē-vādō, 3, ēvāsī, ēvāsum, go**  
forth, escape.

**īnfestus, -a, -um, adj., hostile,**  
troublesome, dangerous.

**ōrātor, -ōris, M. [ōrō, speak,**  
plead], orator, ambassador.

**Porsena, -ae, M., Porsena,** an  
Etruscan king.

**pro-fiteor, 2, -fessus [fateor],**  
acknowledge, confess, declare.

**re-mittō, 3, -misi, -misum, send**  
back.

**sēdēs, -is, F. [sedeō, sit], seat,**  
abode.

**Tarquinius, -i, M., Tarquin,** a  
Roman king.

**trā-iciō, 3, -jēci, -jectum [trāns,**  
jaciō], throw across, pass over,  
cross.

**tum, adv., then, at that time.**

**Zama, -ae, F., Zama,** a town in  
Africa.

## 3.

## 339.

## FOR TRANSLATION.

## THE BATTLE OF CANNÆ, B.C. 216.

Hannibal in Āpūliam pervēnerat. Adversus eum Rōmā  
profecti sunt duo cōsulēs, Aemilius Paullus et Terentius  
Varrō. Paullō<sup>1</sup> cunctātiō Fabi<sup>2</sup> magis placēbat; Varrō  
autem, ferōx<sup>3</sup> et temerārius, ācriōra sequēbātur cōsilia.  
Ambō cōsulēs ad vicum, quī Cannae appellābātur, castra  
communivērunt. Ibi deinde Varrō invītō collēgā<sup>4</sup> aciem in-  
strūxit et signum pūgnæ dedit. Hannibal autem ita cōnsti-  
tuerat aciem, ut Rōmānīs<sup>5</sup> et<sup>6</sup> sōlis radiū et ventus ab oriente

<sup>1</sup> For the case, see 343.

<sup>2</sup> Fabius Maximus, whose policy  
had been one of prudence, or  
rather, of extreme caution.

<sup>3</sup> Impetuous.

<sup>4</sup> His colleague unwilling =  
against the wishes of his colleague.  
See 412.

<sup>5</sup> To the Romans, dative with  
adversī.

<sup>6</sup> Both.

pulverem adflāns<sup>1</sup> adversī essent.<sup>2</sup> Vīctus caesusque est Rōmānus exercitus; nusquam graviōre vulnere afflīcta est rēs pública.

[Continued on p. 177.]

X

—o:0:0—

## CHAPTER LII.

### ADDITIONAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

#### 340. *Examine the following:—*

1. Alter cōsulum, *one of the consuls.*
2. Ūnus mīlitum, *one of the soldiers.*
3. Quis vestrum? *who of you?*
4. Nihil novī, *nothing (of) new.*
5. Satis pecūniae, *enough (of) money.*
6. Ūnus ex mīlitibus, *one of the soldiers.*
7. Minimus ex illīs, *the youngest of them.*

The first five of the examples illustrate what is called the **Partitive Genitive**, the word in the genitive denoting a *whole*, and the word which it limits a *part* of that whole; 6 and 7 illustrate another way of expressing the partitive idea.

#### 341. *Examine the following:—*

1. Catilīna fuit ingeniō malō, *Catiline was (a man) of bad disposition.*
2. Iccius summā nōbilitāte fuit, *Iccius was (a man) of the highest rank.*
3. Puer sēdecim annōrum, *a boy of sixteen years.*
4. Vestis magnī pretī, *a garment of great value.*
5. Vir summae virtūtis, *a man of the highest courage.*

The above are examples of the **Descriptive Ablative** and the **Descriptive Genitive**. Observe that in each instance the ablative or genitive is limited by an adjective, and that the adjective and noun together denote a *quality* or *characteristic* of that which is described.

<sup>1</sup> Present participle of *adflō*.

<sup>2</sup> Were an annoyance.



**342.** *Examine the following:—*

1. **Rēgī serviō**, *I serve the king.*
2. **Cīvitātī prōdest**, *he benefits the state.*
3. **Caesarī placuit**, *it pleased Cæsar.*
4. **Frātrī persuādet**, *he persuades his brother.*
5. **Crēde mihi**, *believe me.*
6. **Lēgibus cīvitātis pārēbat**, (220. I. 2).
7. **Interdum amīcīs nocet**, (272. I. 8).

Observe that the verbs, which in English have a direct object, are followed in Latin by the dative (the case of the indirect object). Such verbs should be carefully noted as they occur in the exercises. They may be summed up in the following—

**343. RULE OF SYNTAX.**—Many verbs signifying to please or displease, benefit or injure, command or obey, serve, resist, believe, threaten, persuade, and the like, take the dative.

**344.** *Examine the following:—*

1. **Magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit**, *it was of great service to our men.*
2. **Est mihi cūrae**, *it is (for) a care to me.*
3. **Equitātum auxiliō Caesarī miserant**, *they had sent cavalry to aid Cæsar (for aid to Cæsar).*
4. **Quīnque cohōrtēs castrīs praesidiō relinquit**, *he leaves five cohorts to defend the camp (for defence to the camp).*

Observe in each of the above sentences two datives, one translated (literally) with *for*, the other with *to*. In 1 and 2, **ūsuī** and **cūrae** are like the predicate nominative, which is often used where we might expect this dative; in 3 and 4, **auxiliō** and **praesidiō** denote a purpose. This dative *for which* is sometimes called the **Dative of Service**. The two together are sometimes called the **Double Dative**.

Observe instances of the foregoing constructions as they occur in the exercises and reading lessons.

## CHAPTER LIII.

## DERIVATION.

**345.** Some derivations have been indicated in the vocabularies by separating the parts of compound words, and, beginning with **221**, by putting words in brackets. The bracketed words, however, are not to be understood as the primitives or originals of the words against which they stand, as is customarily the case in lexicons and special vocabularies, but that they are *connected with them in formation from a common root or stem*. The habit of observing such relationships is the important thing. The following list is selected from previous vocabularies for further study of the subject:—

1. **amō**, love; **amīcus**, loving, friendly; **amīcitia**, friendship; **inimīcus** (for **in-amīcus**), unfriendly, hostile.
2. **ager**, field, land, soil; **agri-cola** (**colō**, cultivate), one who cultivates the soil, farmer; **agri-cultūra**, cultivation of the soil, agriculture. **Colō** also means dwell, hence **incola**, inhabitant. Meaning of **incolō**?
3. **cīvis**, citizen; **cīvilis**, pertaining to a citizen; **cīvītās**, the condition of a citizen, or a body of citizens, state. Like **cīvilis**, form and define adjectives from the stems of **puer** and **hostis**.
4. **regō**, rule; **rēx** (**rēgs**), ruler, king; **rēgīna**, ruler, queen; **rēgnū**, kingdom; **rēgnō**, be king, reign; **rēgula**, rule.
5. **faciō**, do; **facinus**, thing done, deed; **facilis** (that may be done), easy; **difficilis** (for **dis-facilis**), not to be done, difficult.
6. **nōscō**, know; **nōmen** (that by which a thing is known), name; **nōminō**, v., name; **nōbilis** (that can be known), well known, noble, cf. **facilis**.
7. **fuga**, flight; **fugiō**, flee. **liber**, adj., free; **liberō**, v., free.  
**metus**, n., fear; **metuō**, v., fear. **laus**, n., praise; **laudō**, v., praise.  
**timor**, n., fear; **timeō**, v., fear. **discō**, learn; **discipulus**, learner.  
**dō**, give; **dōnum**, gift. **moveō**, move; **mōtus**, motion.  
**fluō**, flow; **fluvius**, **flūmen**, stream, river.  
**dominus**, lord, master; **domina**, mistress; **dominor**, be master.
8. **aurum**, gold; **aureus**, of gold, golden.  
**lignum**, wood; **ligneus**, of wood, wooden.

**ferrum**, iron; **ferreus**, of iron, iron.

**argentum**, silver. Form an adjective from the stem of **argentum**, and define it.

- X 9. **alō**, nourish; **alimentum** (that which nourishes), food, provisions.

**moneō**, remind; **monumentum** (that which reminds), monument.

**ōrnō**, adorn; meaning of **ōrnāmentum**?

10. **pulcher**, beautiful; **pulchritūdō**, beauty.

**fortis**, brave; **fortitūdō**, bravery.

**turpis**, base; **turpitūdō**, baseness.

**altus**, high. Form a noun from the stem of **altus**, and define it.

11. **ignāvus** (not busy), idle; **ignāvia**, idleness.

**memor**, mindful; **memoria** (mindfulness), memory.

**piger**, lazy; **pigritia**, laziness.

**prūdēns**, wise, prudent; **prudentia**, wisdom, prudence.

**sapiēns**, wise; **sapientia**, wisdom.

**amicus**, friend; **amicitia**, friendship.

Form a noun from the stem of **inimicus**, and define it.

12. **equus**, horse; **eques**, horseman.

**pēs** (stem **ped**), foot; **pedēs**, foot-soldier.

13. **arō**, v., plough; **arātrum**, n. (thing to plough with), plough.

(**rōdō**, gnaw); **rōstrum** (that which gnaws), beak, snout, hence beak of a ship.

14. **vir**, man; **virtūs**, manliness, virtue.

**servus**, slave; **servitūs**, slavery.

**cōsul**, consul; **cōsulātus**, office of a consul, consulship.

**magister**, master; **magistrātus**, office of a magister, magistracy, also magistrate.

15. **periculum**, danger; **periculōsus**, full of danger, dangerous.

**frōns**, leaf; **frondōsus**, covered with leaves, leafy.

**studium**, zeal; meaning of **studiōsus**?

16. **audeō**, dare; **audāx**, daring.

**rapīō**, seize; **rapāx**, grasping.

**teneō**, hold; meaning of **tenāx**?

17. **scribō**, write; **scriptor**, writer.

**vincō** (**victum**), conquer; **victor**, conqueror.

**dēfendō**, defend; **dēfēnsor**, defender.

From stem of **amō**, love, form a word meaning lover; from stem of **audiō**, hear, in the same way, a word meaning hearer.

18. *illius, any; nullus, not any.*  
*sciō, know; nesciō, know not.*
19. *homo, man; hūmānus (belonging to a man), human.*  
*mors, death; mortālis (belonging to death), mortal.*  
*alius, another; aliēnus (belonging to another), another's.*
20. Observe also the force of the various prefixes, *ā, ad, dē, dis, in, prae, prō, re, sub*, etc., as in *ā-mittō, ac-cēdō, dē-scendō, dī-mittō, in-ferō, prae-sum, prō-cēdō, re-ferō, sub-eō*, etc.

## CHAPTER LIV. 1.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### SEQUENCE OF TENSES: PRACTICE ON FORMS.

**346.** Learn the subjunctive of **sum** (73) and its compounds (292, 293).

The chief use of the subjunctive is in subjoined, that is, dependent, clauses.

**347.** *Examine the following:—*

1. **Audiō ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit,** *I hear where he is, has been or was, is going to be.*
2. **Audivī ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit,** *I have heard where he is, has been (or was), is going to be.*
3. **Audiam ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit,** *I shall hear where he is, has been or was, is going to be.*
4. **Audiverō ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit,** *I shall have heard where he is, has been or was, is going to be.*
5. **Audiēbam ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset,** *I heard where he was, had been, was going to be.*
6. **Audivī ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset,** *I heard where he was, had been, was going to be.*
7. **Audiveram ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset,** *I had heard where he was, had been, was going to be.*

Notice what tenses are used in the principal clauses of each of the preceding groups of examples. Those in the first group — the present, perfect definite,<sup>1</sup> future, and future perfect — are called *primary* or *principal* tenses. Those in the second group — the imperfect, perfect indefinite,<sup>2</sup> and the pluperfect — are called *secondary* or *historical* tenses.

Observe also that primary tenses of the subjunctive are used in the first four, secondary in the last three.

**348. RULE OF SYNTAX.** — Primary tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, and secondary follow secondary.

Observe that the subjunctive in the foregoing examples is translated like the indicative.

**349. Examine the following: —**

1. *Nēmō adest quīn sit fortis*, no one is present who is not brave.
2. *Quis adest quīn sit fortis?* who is present who is not brave?
3. *Nēmō dubitat quīn sit fortis*, no one doubts that he is brave, or his being brave.
4. *Nōn dubium est quīn sit fortis*, there is no doubt that he is brave, or of his being brave.
5. *Nōn dubitō quīn sit fortis*, I do not doubt that he is brave, or his being brave.

Observe (1) that the subjunctive follows *quīn*; (2) that *quīn* is used after negative expressions and questions that expect a negative answer; (3) that the subjunctive clause with *quīn* (compounded of *quī*, who, and *nō*, not) may be variously rendered.

## 2.

### 350.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Quis dubitat quīn sint fortēs?* 2. *Nēmō dubitat quīn vīta sit brevis.* 3. *Nōn dubitō quīn adfuerint.* 4. *Nōn dubium erat quīn essent fortēs.* 5. *Quis dubitābat quīn*

<sup>1</sup> That is, the perfect translated with *have* or *has*.

<sup>2</sup> That is, the perfect translated without *have* or *has*.

fuissent fortēs? 6. Nēmō dubitāverat quīn adfuisset; adfuissent. 7. Nōn est dubium quīn possit; possint; potuerit; potuerint. 8. Quis dubitābat quīn posset? possent? potuisset? potuissent? 9. Nōn est dubium quīn praesīs; praesītis; praefueris; praefueritis. 10. Quis dubitāverat quīn āfuisset? āfuissent?

II. 1. I do not doubt that he is present; has been present; is absent; has been absent. 2. Who doubted that he could? they could? we could? you could? 3. They do not doubt that he is at the head of (*praesum*); has been at the head of. 4. Who has doubted his surviving? their surviving? 5. Who doubted their injuring? having injured? 6. There is no doubt that he can; we can; you can; they can. 7. There was no doubt that he could; I could; they could.

## 3.

**351.** Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of *amō* (86) and *monēō* (112).

1. Observe that in the active voice the imperfect subjunctive can be formed readily from the present infinitive, and the pluperfect subjunctive from the perfect infinitive. Compare the perfect subjunctive with the future perfect indicative.

**352.** *Examine the following:—*

**Sē armant ut pūgent**, they arm themselves that they may fight, in order that they may fight, to fight, so as to fight, in order to fight, for the purpose of fighting.

Observe that the various equivalents of *ut pūgent* have a common notion or idea, that of *purpose*.

**353. RULE OF SYNTAX.** — *Ut* with the subjunctive may be used to denote a purpose, and may be variously translated.

**354.** Review the indicative and imperative of *eō*, *go* (327).

## 355.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. It ut mōnstret et moneat. 2. Ībat ut mōnstrāret et monēret. 3. Iit ut mōnstret et moneat. 4. Iit ut mōnstrāret et monēret. 5. Ībunt ut mōnstrent et moneant. 6. Iērent ut mōnstrārent et monērent. 7. Ierant ut mōnstrārent et monērent. 8. Nōn dubitāvī quīn mōnstrāvissēt et monuissēt. 9. Quis dubitāverat quīn mōnstrāvissēt et monuissēt? 10. Nēmō dubitāvit quīn mōnstrāvissēmus et monuissēmus. 11. Nōn est dubium quīn mōnstrēmus et moneāmus.

★ II. 1. He goes to see and praise. 2. They go for the purpose of seeing and praising. 3. We will go in order to see and praise. 4. Who will not go that he may see and praise? 5. You will go to see and praise. 6. They have gone to see and praise. 7. He has gone for the purpose of seeing and praising. 8. He went in order to see and praise. 9. Go (*plur.*) to see and praise. 10. He was going that he might see and praise. 11. Who doubts his having seen and praised? 12. No one doubted that they had seen and praised.

## 4.

## 356.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Ei (eis, mihi, nobis) imperat ut<sup>1</sup> —  
cōnētur, cōnentur, cōner, cōnēmur.  
2. Ei (eis, mihi, nobis) imperābat ut —  
cōnārētur, cōnārentur, cōnāret, cōnārēmur.  
3. Quis dubitat quīn —  
cōnātus sit, cōnātī sint, cōnātus sim, cōnātī sīmus?  
4. Nēmō dubitābat quīn —  
cōnātus esset, cōnātī essent, cōnātus essem, cōnātī  
essēmus.

<sup>1</sup> Translate thus: *He orders him to try (that he try); them to try (that they try).*



5. Eum (eōs, mē, nōs) monet ut —  
tueātur, tueantur, tuear, tueāmur.
6. Eum (eōs, mē, nōs) monēbat ut —  
tuērētur, tuērentur, tuērer, tuērēmur.
7. Quis dubitat quīn —  
tuitus sit, tuitī sint, tuitus sim, tuitī sīmus?
8. Nēmō dubitābat quīn —  
tuitus esset, tuitī essent, tuitus essem, tuitī essēmus.

II.<sup>1</sup> 1. They will order him<sup>2</sup> (them, me, us) to imitate.  
 2. They have ordered him (them, me, us) to imitate.  
 3. Who doubts his<sup>3</sup> (their, my, our) having imitated?  
 4. They ordered him (them, me, us) to imitate. 5. Nobody doubted his (their, my, our) having imitated. 6. They advise him (them, me, us) to promise. 7. They advised him (them, me, us) to promise. 8. There was no doubt that he (they, I, we) had promised.

## 5.

**357.** Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of **regō** (180), **audiō** (223), **capiō** (235).

**358.** The conjunction **nē**, in order that not, that not, in order not to, so as not to, lest, is used to denote a negative purpose, just as **ut** denotes a positive purpose. See **352, 353.**

**359.**

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Eum (eōs) monet ut —  
regat, regātur, audiat, audiātur,  
regant, regantur, audiant, audiantur.
2. Eum (eōs) monuit ut —  
regat, regātur, audiat, audiātur,  
regant, regantur, audiant, audiantur.
3. Eum (eōs) monēbat ut —  
regeret, regerētur, audiret, audirētur,  
regerent, regerentur, audirent, audirentur.

<sup>1</sup> Imitate the arrangement in I.<sup>2</sup> Dative.<sup>3</sup> That is, *that he, they, I, we, have imitated.*



4. Eum (eōs) monuit ut —  
regeret, regerētur, audīret, audīrētur,  
regerent, regerentur, audīrent, audīrentur.
5. Tē (vōs) monet nē —  
capiās, capiātis, capiāris, capiāminī.
6. Mē (nōs) monuit nē —  
capiam, capiāmus, capiar, capiāmur.
7. Mē (nōs) monēbat nē —  
caperem, caperēmus, caperer, caperēmur.
8. Mē (nōs) monuit nē —  
caperem, caperēmus, caperer, caperēmur.

- II. 1. They advise him (them) —  
to lead, to be led, to find, to be found.
2. They warn him (them) —  
not to receive, not to be received.
3. They will advise him (them) —  
to lead, to be led, to find, to be found.
4. They were warning him (them) —  
not to lead, find, receive,  
not to be led, be found, be received.
5. Who doubted that he (they) —  
had led, had found, had received,  
had been led, been found, been received?

6.

**360.** Learn the subjunctive of **eō** (327), and **ferō** (321).

**361.**

**EXERCISES.**

- I. 1. Mē hortātur ut eam; feram. 2. Eōs hortāmur ut eant; ferantur. 3. Vōs hortantur ut eātis; ferātis. 4. Eum hortātī sunt ut īret; ferret. 5. Mē hortātī sunt nē eam; feram. 6. Tē hortābantur nē īrēs; ferrēs. 7. Eōs hortātī erant ut īrent; ferrent. 8. Nōn dubium erat quīn iissent; tulissent. 9. Nōn est dubium quīn ierit; tulerit. 10. Nēmō dubitābat quīn īret; ferrētur.

II. 1. He commands that he (they, I, we) go; bear; be borne. 2. He was commanding that he (they, I, we) should go; bear; be borne. 3. There is no doubt of his (their, my, our) having gone; borne; been borne. 4. There was no doubt that he (they, I, we) had gone; borne; been borne.

## 7.

## 362.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Imperātor exercitum in collem subdūxit, ut fortūnam bellī experīrētur. 2. Pater Horātī populum ōrābat nē sē orbū faceret. 3. Illud facit ut hostēs circumveniantur. 4. Cōsul cūrāvit ut plēbs agrōs coleret. 5. Nōn dubium erat quā Rōmānī auxilium ferrent. 6. Manlius ēdīcit nē quis<sup>1</sup> extrā ōrdinem pūgnet. 7. Omnēs occīdentur ut vīrēs hostiū frangantur, aut omnēs dīmīttentur ut beneficiō obligentur. 8. Nōn est dubium quā terror animōs omnium cīvium occupāverit. 9. Incidit<sup>2</sup> ut eō tempore Hasdrubal ad eundem portum venīret. 10. Scipiō uxōrem ōrāvit nē corpus suum Rōmam referrētur.

II. 1. The ambassadors beg the senate to render aid to their<sup>3</sup> kingdom. 2. The ambassador begged the senate to render aid to his<sup>4</sup> king. 3. Nobody doubts that Hannibal is brave. 4. Nobody doubted that Hannibal had fought bravely. 5. They did this that they might surround the enemy. 6. This they do in order to surround the enemy. 7. Scipio begs his wife not to carry his body back to Rome. 8. Scipio begged his wife not to carry his body back to Rome. 9. It turned out that the soldier received a wound on the head. 10. We will draw up the soldiers on a hill to try the fortune of war.

<sup>1</sup> Nē quis, lest any one = that no one.

<sup>2</sup> After verbs meaning to happen, to turn out, and the like, ut means that, but not in order that.

<sup>3</sup> Suus, because their means their own, and not of them.

<sup>4</sup> Suus.

363.

VOCABULARY.

**circum-venīō**, 4, -**vēnī**, -**ventum**,  
surround.  
**collis**, -**is**, *m.*, hill. Cf. **mōns**.  
**cōnor**, 1, attempt.  
**cūrō**, 1 [**cūra**], care for, take care.  
**dī-mittō**, 3, -**mīsī**, -**misum**, send  
away, send off.  
**ē-dicō**, 3, -**dixī**, -**dictum**, speak  
out, declare, proclaim.  
**ē-venīō**, 4, -**vēnī**, -**ventum**, come  
forth, turn out, happen. Cf. **accidō**.  
**extrā**, prep. w. acc., without, out-  
side of. Cf. **intrā**.  
**frangō**, 3, -**frēgī**, -**fractum**, break.  
**Hasdrubal**, -**alis**, *m.*, Hasdrubal,  
brother of Hannibal.  
**hortor**, 1, urge, encourage.  
**in-cidō**, 3, -**cidī**, -**cāsum** [**cadō**],  
fall into, happen, befall.

**Manlius**, -**i**, *m.*, Manlius, a Roman  
general.  
**mōnstrō**, 1, show, point out.  
**ob-ligō**, 1, bind, put under obliga-  
tion, oblige.  
**oc-cidō**, 3, -**cidī**, -**cisum** [**ob**,  
**caedō**, cut], cut down, kill.  
**occupō**, 1 [**ob**, **capīō**], take pos-  
session of, seize.  
**orbus**, -**a**, -**um**, adj., bereaved,  
childless.  
**orō**, 1 [**ōs**, mouth], pray, beg.  
**plēbs**, -**bis**, *f.*, the common people.  
**senātus**, -**ūs**, *m.* [**senex**], council  
of elders, senate. (345. 14.)  
**sub-dūcō**, 3, -**dūxī**, -**ductum**,  
draw from under, draw up.  
**uxor**, -**ōris**, *f.*, wife. Cf. **conjunx**.  
**vīs**, **vīs**, *f.*, strength, power. (262.)

CHAPTER LV.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: RELATIVE OF PURPOSE.

[It is suggested that the turning of English into Latin be now deferred till after the Reading Lessons, pp. 211-222, have been finished.]

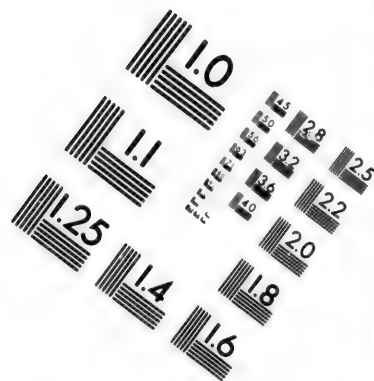
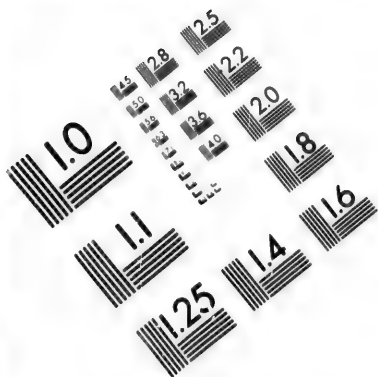
**364.** In all the Latin sentences in the preceding lesson in which **ut** and **nē** are used with the subjunctive, except **362. I. 9**, the dependent clause expresses a purpose. And, on the other hand, in the English sentences all the dependent clauses expressing purpose ("to render aid," "not to carry," etc.) had to be turned into Latin by **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive. But the Latin often expresses a purpose by means of a relative pronoun followed by the subjunctive. See the first six sentences below.

365.

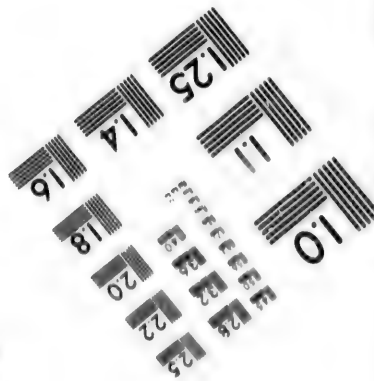
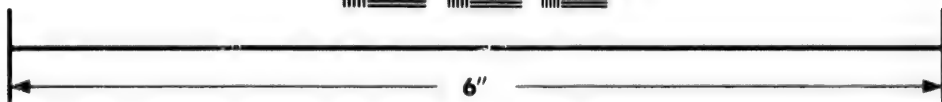
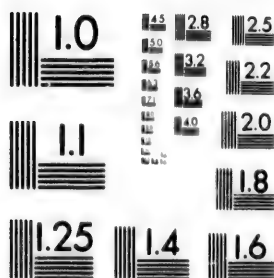
EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ancus **lēgātum** mittit ut **rēs** repetat. 2. Ancus **lēgātum** mittit quī **rēs** repetat. 3. **Lēgātī** **vērērunt** ut **pācem**





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4903



peterent. 4. *Lēgātī vēnērunt quī pācem peterent.* 5. *Pater filiō equum dedit ut equitāret.* 6. *Pater filiō equum dabat quī eum veheret.* 7. *Ad singulās urbēs scrībēmus nē mūrōs dīruant.* 8. *Nōn dubium est quīn Catō ad urbēs scrīpserit.* 9. *Quis dubitāvit quīn Catō imperāvisset ut urbēs mūrōs dīruerent?* 10. *Rōmulus urbem fēcit quae asyllum esset; Rōmulus urbem facit quae sit asyllum.*

II. 1. A horse was given to the boy by his father, for<sup>1</sup> him to ride. 2. A father sent a messenger to Rome to speak<sup>2</sup> to his son. 3. A father sends a messenger to Rome to speak<sup>2</sup> to his son. 4. Romulus makes proclamation that no one<sup>3</sup> shall leap<sup>4</sup> over his wall. 5. Romulus proclaimed that no one should leap over his wall. 6. We will warn them not to leap<sup>5</sup> over our walls. 7. Romulus sent messengers to invite<sup>2</sup> neighboring people to his games. 8. The father will give his son a horse for him to ride. 9. Who doubts that a kind father gives his son books? 10. Nobody doubted that the father had given his son many things.<sup>6</sup>

## 366.

## VOCABULARY.

*al-loquor*, 3, *-locūtus* [ad], *speaks* to, address.

*Ancus*, -i, m., *Ancus*, a Roman king.

*asyllum*, -i, n., a place of refuge, *asylum*.

*Catō*, -ōnis, m., *Cato*, a famous Roman censor.

*dī-ruō*, 3, *-ruī*, *-rutum*, *tear* asunder, *destroy*.

*equitō*, 1 [eques], *act the equestrian*, ride.

*finitimus*, -a, -um, adj. [finis], *bordering on, neighboring*.

*imperō*, 1, *order, command*, with dative. Cf. *jubeō* with acc.

*lūdus*, -i, m. [lūdō], *game, play*.

*nūntius*, -i, m., *bearer of news, messenger*.

*re-petō*, 3, *-ivī*, *-itum*, *seek again, demand back; res repetere, demand restitution*.

*trān-siliō*, 4, *-itum*, and *-uī*, — [salīō, leap], *leap over or across*.

<sup>1</sup> That he might ride.

<sup>2</sup> Translate in two ways.

<sup>3</sup> See 362. I. 6, and note.

<sup>4</sup> Present subjunctive.

<sup>5</sup> See 362. I. 10.

<sup>6</sup> Many things, multa.

## CHAPTER LVI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: **Ut** and **Nē**.

**367.** The subjunctive with **ut** to denote *purpose* has been illustrated (352). But the subjunctive with **ut** has other uses.

**368.** *Examine the following:—*

1. **Tantus est militum ardor ut ad bellum dūcantur**, so great is the ardor of the soldiers that they are led to war.
2. **Accidit ut nōn domī essem**, it happened that I was not at home.
3. **Fabrizius adeō inops dēcēssit ut nihil relīquerit**,<sup>1</sup> Fabrizio died so poor as to leave nothing.

In these examples the dependent clause denotes a *result*. Compare the translation of **ut** and the subjunctive in *purpose* clauses and in *result* clauses. *That not* in *result* clauses = **ut nōn**. Cf. 358.

**369.** Still another use of the subjunctive with **ut** and **nē** is illustrated in the following sentences:—

1. **Timeō ut veniat**, I fear that he is not coming, or will not come.
2. **Timeō ut vēnerit**, I fear that he has not come.
3. **Timēbam ut vēnisset**, I feared that he had not come.
4. **Timeō nē veniat**, I fear that he is coming, or will come.
5. **Timeō nē vēnerit**, I fear that he has come.
6. **Timēbam nē vēnisset**, I feared that he had come.

An inspection of the foregoing examples shows that **ut** and **nē** seem sometimes to exchange meanings.

After verbs of *fearing*, **ut** is translated *that not*, and **nē**, *that*.

Observe that in 1 and 4 the present subjunctive may be translated as a future.

**370.**

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Pompējus ita ēgit ut ā Sūllā diligerētur**. 2. **Is, ut Sūllae<sup>2</sup> subveniret, militēs collēgit**. 3. **Posteā in<sup>3</sup> Siciliam profectus est, ut eam prōvinciam ā Carbōne reciperet**.

<sup>1</sup> An exception to 348.

<sup>2</sup> See 343.

<sup>3</sup> See 333. 1.



4. Catilinae exercitus adeō ācriter dīmīcāvit, ut nēmō super-  
esset. 5. Accidit ut esset plēna lūna. 6. Atticus sic  
Graecē loquēbātur, ut Athēnīs nātus vidērētur. 7. Atticus  
Athēnīs ita vīxit, ut omnibus cīvibus esset cārissimus.  
8. Nōn dubitō quīn nostrī mīlitēs hostēs superāverint.  
9. Nōn est dubium quīn semper fidem servāveritis.  
10. Timeō ut sustineās labōrēs. 11. Metuō nē malum  
cōnsilium capiās. 12. Metuō ut sustinueris labōrēs.  
13. Quis metuit nē malum cōnsilium capiam?

Point out the *purpose* clauses in the above.

- II. 1. The boy so acts that he is loved by all. 2. They  
so acted that they were loved by all. 3. He will so act as to  
be loved by all. 4. He has so acted as to be loved by  
all. 5. They will not doubt our having come.<sup>2</sup> 6. They  
had not doubted our having come.<sup>3</sup> 7. I fear that you are  
not well. 8. I feared that you were not well. 9. I fear  
that you are sick. 10. I was afraid that you had been sick.  
11. The enemy are fighting so spiritedly that no one will  
survive.<sup>4</sup> 12. They have fought so sharply that not one has  
survived. 13. We will set out for<sup>5</sup> Sicily in order to receive<sup>6</sup>  
that province.

## 371.

## VOCABULARY.

ac-cidō, 3, -cidi, — [ad, cadō],  
fall upon, fall out, happen. Cf.  
ēvenīō and incidō.

ad-eō, adv. (to this), thus far, so,  
so very.

Atticus, -i, m., Atticus, a friend of  
Cicero.

Carbō, -ōnis, m., Carbo, a Roman.

Catilina, -ae, m., Catiline, a fa-  
mous Roman conspirator.

col-ligō, 3, -lēgi, -lēctum [com,  
legō], collect. Also conligō.

dī-micō, 1, fight, contend.

Graecē, adv. [Graecus], in Greek.  
loquor, 3, locūtus, speak, talk.

sub-venīō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum,  
come to the aid of, aid, assist,  
with dative. Cf. succurrō.

sustineō, 2, -tinui, -tentum [sub,  
teneō], hold up, bear, endure.

<sup>1</sup> As to be, ut, etc.

<sup>2</sup> That we have come.

<sup>3</sup> That we had come.

<sup>4</sup> Pres. subj.

<sup>5</sup> See I. 3, and note.

<sup>6</sup> Not infinitive.



## CHAPTER LVII. 1.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: *Cum*.

**372.** The subjunctive occurs very frequently in dependent clauses beginning with *cum*, meaning (1) *when, while, as, of time*; (2) *since, because, as, of cause or reason*; (3) *although, of concession*:

1. *Cum Servius in domo Tarquinī esset, mirābile accidit,* while Servius was in the house of Tarquin, a wonderful thing happened.
2. *Cum Tarquinius occisus esset, ejus uxor populum allocūta est,* when Tarquin had been killed, his wife addressed the people.
3. *Tullia, cum domum redīret, super corpus patris carpentum ēgit,* Tullia, as she was returning home, drove her wagon over the body of her father.

An inspection of the above examples shows that —

- (1) The tenses of the subjunctive are the imperf. and pluperfect.
- (2) The *cum* clause marks the time of the act of the principal clause, the verb of which is in the perfect.
- (3) The sentences may be called *narrative sentences*.

**373. RULE OF SYNTAX.** — *Cum* temporal, that is, *cum* in narrative clauses, is followed by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to mark the time of the action in the principal clause.

**374. Examine the following: —**

1. *Cum huic lēgī senātus repugnāret, Caesar rem ad populum dētulit,* since the senate opposed this law, Caesar referred the matter to the people.
2. *Cum dē imprōvisō vēnisset, Rēmī lēgātōs mīsērunt,* since he had come unexpectedly, the Remi sent ambassadors.
3. *Cum vīta metūs plēna sit, amīcitiās parāte,* since life is full of fear, form friendships.
4. *Cum mē interrogāveris, respondēbō,* as you have asked me, I will answer.

5. *Nihil mē adjūvit cum posset, he gave me no aid (aided me in nothing), although it was in his power.*

Notice that —

- (1) All the four tenses of the subjunctive are used.  
 (2) The *cum* clause states the cause or reason of the act of the principal clause; or denotes a concession, indicated in English by *though, admitting that, etc.*

**375. RULE OF SYNTAX.** — *Cum* causal or concessive is followed by the subjunctive in all its tenses.

1. *Cum* followed by the present or perfect subjunctive is almost always causal, and may be translated *since* or *as*; followed by the imperfect or pluperfect it is very often temporal.

2. *Cum* temporal and the subjunctive can often be translated in some other way better than by *when* or *as* with the indicative. Thus, in 372. 2, we might translate, *After the killing of Tarquin, etc.*; and in 3, *Tullia, returning home, or Tullia, on her way home.*

### 376.

### EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Cum jūssī essent invicem dicere, ūnus orsus est.*  
 2. *Pyrrhus, cum tot Rōmānōs mortuōs vidēret, manūs ad caculum sustulit.* 3. *Cum explōrātōrēs cēpisset, eōs per castra circumdūxit.* 4. *Quae cum ita sint,<sup>1</sup> perge.* 5. *Cum sit in nōbīs cōsiliū, cūr dubitāmus?* 6. *Cum dē imprōvisō vēnerit Caesar, ad eum lēgātōs mittēmus.* 7. *Cum amīcī adsint, gaudēmus.* 8. *Cum<sup>2</sup> nox appropinquāret, abiērunt.* 9. *Cum nox appropinquāvisset, abiērunt.* 10. *Caesar, cum frūstrā mīsisset, sōlus nāviculā cōnscendit nē āgnōscerētur.*

II. 1. When one had begun,<sup>3</sup> the rest became (*were*) silent.  
 2. Pyrrhus, having seen<sup>4</sup> the bravery of the Romans, spoke these words. 3. Since he has seen the bravery of the Romans, he raises his hands to heaven. 4. Since night is

<sup>1</sup> *Since these things are so = such of night; or, since night was approaching the case.*

<sup>2</sup> *Cum* may be translated as temporal or causal: *on the approach*

<sup>3</sup> See 373.

<sup>4</sup> *Pyrrhus, when he had seen.*

approaching, we will go off. 5. When our friends had arrived, we went to Boston. 6. On the arrival of our friends we went to Boston. 7. While Cæsar was embarking in a boat, no one recognized him. 8. As<sup>1</sup> Cæsar was alone, he was not recognized. 9. As<sup>1</sup> I was telling him a story, he suddenly laughed. 10. As<sup>1</sup> they had prudence, we did not hesitate.

## 377.

## VOCABULARY.

**ā-gnōscō**, 3, **gnōvī**, **gnitum**, [ad, (g)nōscō, *know*], *recognize*.

**ap-propinquō**, 1 [ad], *approach*.

**Bostonia**, -ae, f., *Boston*.

**cēteri**, -ae, -a, adj., *the rest*.

**circum-dūcō**, 3, **-xī**, **-ductum**, *lead around*.

**cōn-scendō**, 3, **-dī**, **-scēsum** [scandō, *climb*], *ascend, embark, go on board*.

**dubitō**, 1 [dubius], *doubt, hesitate*.

**dubius**, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful*.

**gaudeō**,<sup>2</sup> 2, **gāvisus sum**, *be glad, rejoice*.

**im-prō-visō**, adv. [videō], *unexpectedly*.

**in-vicem**, adv., *by turns, in turn*.

**jubeō**, 2, **jūssī**, **jūssum**, *bid, order*. Cf. **imperō**.

**mortuus**, -a, -um [P. of morior], *dead*.

**nāvīcula**, -ae, f. [nāvis], *little vessel, boat*.

**ordior**, 4, **orsus**, *begin, undertake*.

**pergō**, 3, **perrēxī**, **perrēctum** [per, regō], *go on, continue*.

**taceō**, 2, **tacui**, **tacitum**, *be silent, say nothing about*.

**tollō**, 3, **sustulī**, **sublātum**, *raise, lift up*.

**tot**, adj., indecl., *so many*. Cf. **quot**.

## 2.

## 378.

## FOR TRANSLATION.

THE BATTLE OF CANNE. — *Continued*.

Aemilius Paullus tēlis obrutus cecidit. Quem<sup>3</sup> cum mediā in pūgnā sedentem in saxō opplētum cruōre conspexisset quī-

<sup>1</sup> The *as* of *reason*, or of *time*?

<sup>2</sup> Four common verbs, **audeō**, *dare*, **gaudeō**, *rejoice*, **soleō**, *be accustomed*, **fidō**, *trust*, have the passive form in the perfect, and hence are called *semi-deponents*.

<sup>3</sup> Translate first mentally, taking the words as they stand, ren-

dering **cum**, *when*; then recast this preliminary translation, beginning with **cum quidam tribūnus**, and rendering **quem**, *him*.

Follow this method, when a Latin sentence appears difficult; but keep a sharp eye on the terminations of the words.

dam tribūnus militum: "Cape," inquit, "hunc equum et fuge, Aemili. Etiam sine tuā morte lacrimarum<sup>1</sup> satis luctusque est." Ad ea cōsul:<sup>2</sup> "Tū quidem macte virtūte estō.<sup>3</sup> Sed cavē,<sup>4</sup> exiguum tempus ē manibus hostium evādendī perdās.<sup>4</sup> Abī, nūntiā patribus, ut urbem mūniant ac,<sup>5</sup> prius quam hostis victor adveniat, praesidiis firment. Mē in hāc strāge meōrum militum patere<sup>6</sup> expirāre." Alter cōsul cum paucis equitibus Venusiam<sup>7</sup> perfūgit. Cōsulārēs aut praetoriū occiderunt<sup>8</sup> vīgintī, senātōrēs captī aut occīsī sunt trīgintā, nōbilēs virī trecentī, militum quadrāgintā mīlia, equitum tria mīlia et quīngentī. Hannibal in<sup>9</sup> testimōnium victōriae suae trēs modiōs aureōrum anulōrum Carthāginem mīsīt, quōs de manibus equitum Rōmānōrum et senātōrum dētraxerat.

## CHAPTER LVIII.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE: INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

79. *Examine the following:—*

## DIRECT.

1. **Quis est?** *who is he?*
2. **Ubi sumus?** *where are we?*
3. **Cūr rīdēs?** *why do you laugh?*
4. **Quem vīdistī?** *whom have you seen?*

## INDIRECT.

- Sciō quis sit,** *I know who he is.*  
**Sciō ubi sīmus,** *I know where we are.*  
**Sciō cūr rīdeān,** *I know why you laugh.*  
**Sciō quem vīderis,** *I know whom you have seen.*

<sup>1</sup> See 340. 5.

<sup>2</sup> Supply **dixit** or **respondit**. But it is livelier without a verb.

<sup>3</sup> Perhaps the literal translation of this phrase is, *be thou blessed in (or for) thy courage; macte for mactus, because tū is here almost more of a vocative than a nominative.*

<sup>4</sup> Supply **nē** after **cavē**, *beware lest you lose = beware of losing.*

<sup>5</sup> Connects **mūniant** and **firment**.

<sup>6</sup> Imperative from **patior**.

<sup>7</sup> Account for the case.

<sup>8</sup> From **occidō**. But **occīsī**, in the next clause, from **occidō**.

<sup>9</sup> *For; in* expresses purpose.

Compare each of the foregoing examples in the left hand column with the corresponding one on the right. Observe that each dependent clause in the right hand column begins with an interrogative word, and contains the substance of a question, though not a question in form. Such dependent clauses are called **Indirect Questions**. Observe the mood, and how it is translated.

**380. RULE OF SYNTAX. — Indirect questions take the subjunctive.**

1. The commonest interrogative words introducing indirect questions are **quis**, *who?* **cūr**, *why?* **num**, *whether?* **ubi**, *where?* **quō**, *whither?* **unde**, *whence?* **quot**, *how many?*

**381.**

**EXERCISES.**

[Read again the remarks and rule, p. 165.]

I. 1. Scit quid agās. 2. Scit quid ēgeris. 3. Sciēbat quid agerēs. 4. Sciēbat quid ēgissēs. 5. Audīvī quid agat. 6. Audīvī quid ēgerit. 7. Audīvī quid ageret. 8. Audīvī quid ēgisset. 9. Audīveram quid ageret. 10. Audīveram quid ēgisset.

II. 1. Volō scīre unde vēneris. 2. Dīc<sup>1</sup> mihi num meam sorōrem vīderis. 3. Nesciō unde veniant tot milītēs. 4. Quaeram num omnia fēliciter ēvēnerint. 5. Speculābimur quot hominēs in urbem incant et quot exeant. 6. Nāsīca hōmīnem interrogāvit num manibus ambulāre solitus esset. 7. Quaerēbat quae<sup>2</sup> cīvitatēs in armīs essent. 8. Quidam homo interrogātus est quae nāvēs essent tūtissimae. 9. Dīc mihi quid in manū habeās. 10. Caesar omnem equitātum mittit, quī videat<sup>3</sup> quās in partēs<sup>4</sup> hostēs iter faciant.

III. 1. He sees who is walking; has walked. 2. They see who are walking; have walked. 3. We shall see who walk; have walked. 4. We knew why he was laughing; had laughed. 5. You knew why I was laughing; had laughed.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 150, note.

<sup>2</sup> Compare 365. I. 2 and 4.

<sup>3</sup> See 279. 3.

<sup>4</sup> Into what parts = in what direction.

6. They wondered why he was praised; had been praised.  
 7. They will wonder why I am praised; have been praised.  
 8. Do you not wonder why we are praised; have been praised?  
 9. I wonder whether he has been admonished; is being admonished.  
 10. They wondered whether we were admonished; had been admonished.

## 382.

## VOCABULARY.

**interrogō**, 1, *ask, inquire.*

**Nāsica**, -ae, m., *Nasica*, surname of one of the Scipios.

**num**,<sup>1</sup> *interrog. adv., whether, introducing indirect questions.*

**rogō**, 1, *ask, question.*

**sciō**, 4, **sci**vi, **scitum**, *know*

**soleō**,<sup>2</sup> 2, **solitus**, *be accustomed.*

**speculor**, 1, *spy out, watch.*

**tūtus**, -a, -um, *adj., safe.*

**interrogō**, *ask a question, inquire*, and nearly limited to that sense.

**rogō**, *ask a question*, but much more commonly *ask a favor, make a request.*

**quaerō**,<sup>3</sup> *ask a question*, but much used in the sense of *seeking to gain or to know, searching into.*

*quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitum*

## CHAPTER LIX. 1.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE: WISHES AND CONDITIONS.

383. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Utinam pater veniat!** *would that father would come! I wish father would come! O that father would come!*
2. **Sī pater veniat, laetus sim,** *if father should come, I should be glad.*
3. **Utinam pater adesset!** *would that father were here!*
4. **Sī pater adesset, laetus essem,** *if father were here, I should be glad.*
5. **Utinam pater adfuisset!** *would that father had been here!*
6. **Sī pater adfuisset, laetus fuisssem,** *if father had been here, I should have been glad.*

<sup>1</sup> Introducing direct questions, it indicates that the answer *no* is expected, but does not usually admit of translation. <sup>2</sup> See p. 177, n. 2.



(1) In 1 and 2 what time do the words *would come*, *should come*, *should be*, point to? Plainly not to the past, nor to the instant present, but vaguely to the future; and this vague future is expressed in Latin by the present subjunctive. The wish and the condition referring to the future *may be* fulfilled; the father *may* come.

(2) In 3 and 4 the wish and condition refer to the present; and this present is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive. The wish and condition are plainly *contrary to what is the fact*; the father *is*, in fact, *not present*.

(3) In 5 and 6 the tense of the subjunctive offers no difficulty. The wish and condition are plainly *contrary to what was the fact*; the father *was*, in fact, *not present*.

**384. RULE OF SYNTAX.**—In wishes and conditions the present subjunctive is used of what *may come true*, the imperfect subjunctive of what *is not true*, the pluperfect subjunctive of what *was not true*. The same mood is regularly employed in the conclusion of such conditional sentences.

The indicative is not used in wishes. The use of the indicative in conditional sentences is easily understood.

**385. Examine the following:—**

1. *Sī pater adest, bene est, if father is present, it is well.*
2. *Sī pater aderat, bene erat, if father was present, it was well.*
3. *Sī pater aderit, bene erit, if father shall be present,<sup>1</sup> it will be well.*

Observe that in examples 1 and 2 a condition is stated without implying anything. In example 3, as the time is future, that which is supposed *may be* fulfilled. This form, then, of stating a supposition is almost exactly equivalent to that of the present subjunctive in 383; it is only a livelier way of putting it.

<sup>1</sup> In English we commonly use a present form in such conditions that refer to the future. Thus we say, *If he is (to-morrow, next week,*

*etc.) present, it will be well.* Do not be deceived, when translating into Latin, by this apparent present. See if the conclusion contains a future.



## 386.

EXERCISES.<sup>1</sup>

- I. 1. Sī victōriam certam videam, nunquam pūgnem.  
 2. Sī mē virum bonum iūdicārēs,<sup>2</sup> nōn mē corrumpere vellēs.<sup>2</sup>  
 3. Dictātor,<sup>3</sup> sī adfuisset, rem nōn melius gessisset.  
 4. Varrō, sī Carthāginiēnsium dux fuisset, temeritātis poenās dedisset.<sup>4</sup> 5. Sī patrem tuum crās videam, quid dīcat? 6. Nōn profectus essem, nisi Caesar jūssisset.  
 7. Sī rēctē faciās, laudēris. 8. Sī maneat Mārcus, gaudeāmus; sīn autem eat, tamen eum laudēmus. 9. Sī leō accēderet,<sup>5</sup> omnēs fugerent. 10. Utinam frāter meus vīveret clāssemque iterum dūceret! 11. Utinam māter nōbīs fābulam nārret! 12. Utinam tēcum<sup>6</sup> in agrīs ambulāvisssem!

II.<sup>7</sup> 1. Would that I were walking in the fields with you to-day! 2. I wish you had been walking<sup>8</sup> with me<sup>6</sup> yesterday. 3. O take<sup>9</sup> a walk with us in the fields to-morrow! 4. If you should see victory certain, my friend, should you not fight? 5. I should not now be setting out if Cæsar did not order it. 6. If you were acting rightly, you would be praised. 7. If you had acted rightly, you would have been praised. 8. I wish<sup>9</sup> you would act rightly, so as to<sup>10</sup> be praised. 9. If we should see a lion, we should flee.

<sup>1</sup> In translating these sentences, render the present subjunctive in such a way as to indicate vaguely future time; thus, **videam**... **pūgnem**, *should see*... *should fight*.

<sup>2</sup> Compare 383. 4, and read again 383 (2).

<sup>3</sup> Notice the position of this word, which is the subject of **gessisset**. It may be translated as it stands, first.

<sup>4</sup> *Given punishments of = paid the penalty for.*

<sup>5</sup> If a lion *were coming*, not *were*

*to come*, which would be expressed by the present subjunctive.

<sup>6</sup> See 265. 3.

<sup>7</sup> In turning these sentences into Latin, do not be misled as to the real time of the verbs; *were walking*, in the first sentence, denotes present time. Read again the examples, 383, and the remarks. See also the varied translation of the first example.

<sup>8</sup> Compare I. 12.

<sup>9</sup> Compare 383. 1.

<sup>10</sup> **Ut.** See 352.

10. I wish I had seen a huge lion. 11. If my brother<sup>1</sup> were living, he would now be commanding the fleet. 12. Would that your brother were alive!

## 387.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>ac-cēdō</b> , 3, -cēssi, -cēssum [ad], <i>go or come near, approach.</i>	<b>jūdicō</b> , 1 [jūdex], <i>judge, deem.</i>
<b>cor-rumpō</b> , 3, -rūpī, -ruptum [com], <i>break in pieces, destroy;</i> <i>corrupt, bribe.</i>	<b>rēctē</b> , adv. [rēctus], <i>rightly.</i>
<b>dictātor</b> , -ōris, m. [dictō, dicō], <i>chief magistrate, dictator.</i>	<b>sī</b> , conj. [sī, nē], <i>but if, if how-</i> <i>ever, if.</i>
<b>immāns</b> , -e, adj., <i>huge, immense.</i>	<b>temeritās</b> , -ātis, f. [temerē], <i>chance; rashness.</i>
	<b>utī-nam</b> , adv., <i>would that, O that,</i> <i>I wish that.</i>

✕

## 2.

## 388.

## COLLOQUIUM.

## JŌHANNĒS ET JACŌBUS.

*Jo.* Dīc mihi, Jacōbe, unde veniās, quid ēgeris.  
*have been doing*

*Ja.* Rūre veniō, ubi fēriārū partem ēgī. Et tū?  
*vacation spent*

*Jo.* Ego iter cum parentibus fēcī, neque sciō quandō  
domum revertar.  
*when return*

*Ja.* Utinam ego quoque iter faciam! Sī parentēs ades-  
sent, iter mēcum facerent.

*Jo.* Ego itineris diūturnitāte sum dēfessus, et gaudērem sī  
in scholā essem.  
*length*

*Ja.* Venī mēcum in scholam et unā ēdiscāmus.  
*together let us learn*

*Jo.* Tēcū libenter in scholam ībō, sed cōgnōscere velim  
quī sit praeceptor.  
*know should like*

*Ja.* Praeceptor est vir doctissimus. Vim Latīnī scit,  
atque semper est benīgnus, mōrōsus nunquam.  
*ever so much pleasant*

*Jo.* Quid tē docet?

<sup>1</sup> Imitate the order in I. 3 and 4; the subject might, however, be placed after sī.

*Ja.* Docet nōs modum subjunctīvum. Herī, exemplī causā,  
for example  
 nōbīs dē subjunctīvō in interrogātiōnibus indirēctīs explicāvit.  
questions

*Jo.* Multa dē interrogātiōnibus indirēctīs audīvī, neque unquam intellegere potuī. Fēcitne praeceptor ut tū ista intellexerēs?

*Ja.* Sānē, mī amīce, et ego, ut opīnor, faciam ut tū quoque  
yes indeed  
 eadem intellegās. Sī dicam, *Ubi est frāter tuus?* interrogā-  
question  
 tum sit dirēctum; sīn autem, *Nesciō ubi sit frāter,* interrogā-  
 tum sit indirēctum. Intellegisne?

*Jo.* Satis intellegō. Sed in hunc diem hāctenus.  
so-so for enough

## CHAPTER LX.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE.

**389.** Learn the future imperative, active and passive, of the regular and irregular verbs, and review the present imperative.

**390.** In the last lesson occurred the first illustrations of the subjunctive not in dependent clauses, that is, in wishes and in the principal clauses of conditional sentences. The subjunctive is similarly used in commands and appeals, and when so used is called the **Hortatory Subjunctive**.

**391.** *Examine the following paradigms:—*

#### COMMANDS AND APPEALS.

##### POSITIVE.

moneam, *let me advise.*  
 monē, or moneās, *advise.*  
 { moneat, { *let him advise, or*  
 { monuerit, { *he shall advise.*  
 moneāmus, *let us advise.*  
 monēte, *advise.*  
 { moneant, { *let them advise,*  
 { monuerint, { *or they shall*  
                   *advise.*

##### NEGATIVE.

nē moneam, *let me not advise.*  
 nē monueris, *do not advise.*  
 nē moneat, { *let him not, or he*  
 nē monuerit, { *shall not, advise.*  
 nē moneāmus, *let us not advise.*  
 nē monueritis, *do not advise.*  
 nē moneant, { *let them not, or*  
 nē monuerint, { *they shall not,*  
                   *advise.*

(1) Observe that positive commands and appeals are expressed by the subjunctive only, except in the second person; and negative commands and appeals, by the subjunctive with *nē*.<sup>1</sup>

(2) Observe also that the present and perfect subjunctive, in the third person, are used without essential difference of meaning; and that in *negative commands and appeals in the second person* the perfect<sup>2</sup> only<sup>3</sup> is given.

(3) The future imperative is mostly confined to laws and maxims: *Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepeliāt, thou shalt not bury a dead man within the city. Percontatōrem fugitō, nam garrulus idem est, avoid a questioner, for he is a babbler too.*

(4) The preceding paradigms, with the meanings, should be thoroughly committed to memory.

XT

## 392.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cotidiē scribe ad mē, mī fili, quid feceris. 2. Puer ad patrem scribit quid fecerit. 3. Mittamus nuntium ad Caesarem qui<sup>4</sup> eum moneat. 4. Nē mēcum in litore hodiē ambulāveris. 5. Nē pueri incauti cultrōs habeant. 6. Imperator cōsiliū cōficiat. 7. Nōlite, milites, hostium exercitum timēre. 8. Nē, milites, hostium exercitum time-eritis. 9. Omnia sua<sup>5</sup> sēcum<sup>6</sup> incolae portāverint. 10. Mihi aurēs praebēte, discipulī, et diligenter audite quae dicam. 11. Nē id quod est falsum dixeris. 12. Leō dixit: Restat pars quarta, at nē quisquam<sup>7</sup> audeat eam tangere.

II. 1. They shall not send<sup>8</sup> a messenger. 2. Let no one touch<sup>9</sup> the fourth part. 3. Touch not<sup>10</sup> the fourth part of the

<sup>1</sup> Prohibitions are more commonly expressed by *nōli* (*nōlite*) with the infinitive. See 318. I. 5 and 6.

<sup>2</sup> This form of the subjunctive in this use is here called the *perfect*, in deference to custom: it is really the *subjunctive of the future perfect*.

<sup>3</sup> The imperative so used is not common, and not to be imitated.

<sup>4</sup> Compare 365. I. 2 and 4.

<sup>5</sup> *Omnia sua*, their all.

<sup>6</sup> See 265. 3.

<sup>7</sup> *Let no one*. See 279. 6.

<sup>8</sup> *Nē* with perfect subjunctive.

<sup>9</sup> See I. 12.

<sup>10</sup> Express in two ways.

booty. 4. Let the pupils listen attentively to the words of the master. 5. Do not listen,<sup>1</sup> boys, to the counsels of the bad. 6. Write daily to your parents what<sup>2</sup> you are doing. 7. Carry your books home<sup>3</sup> with you and study diligently. 8. Do not forget<sup>1</sup> what<sup>4</sup> has been said to you to-day. 9. Touch not<sup>1</sup> wine; let us not touch wine; they shall not touch wine. 10. Let us go out and carry our all with us.

## 393.

## VOCABULARY.

**at**, conj., *but*. Cf. **autem**. (214.)  
**audeō**,<sup>5</sup> 2, **ausus sum**, *dare, be bold*.

**cōn-ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [**com, faciō**], *make, accomplish, carry out*.

**cotidlē**, adv. [**quot, diēs**], *daily*.

**falsus**, -a, -um, adj. [**fallō, de-ceive**], *deceptive, false*.

**in-cautus**, -a, -um, adj. [**caveō**], *incautious, heedless*.

**re-stō**, 1, **restiti**, —, *stay behind, remain*.

**tangō**, 3, **tetigi**, **tactum**, *touch*.

**at**, *but on the contrary, but for all that*.

**sed**, *but, without special emphasis*.

**autem**, *but, often to be rendered however; weaker than at or sed*.

## 394.

## FOR TRANSLATION.

MĀRCUS PORCIUS CATŌ, PUER.

M. Porcius Catō jam puer<sup>6</sup> invictum animi rōbur ostendit. Cum in domo Drūsī avunculī suī educāretur, Latīnī dē cīvitate impetrandā<sup>7</sup> Rōmān vērunt. Popēdius, Latīnōrum princeps, quī Drūsī hospes erat, Catōnem puerum rogāvit, ut Latīnōs apud avunculum adjuvāret. Catō vultū cōstanti

<sup>1</sup> Express in two ways.

<sup>2</sup> Compare I. 10.

<sup>3</sup> See 336.

<sup>4</sup> Id quod.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 177, note 2.

<sup>6</sup> Jam puer, *already a boy = even in boyhood*.

<sup>7</sup> Dē civitate impetrandā, *respecting the citizenship to be obtained = to obtain citizenship*.

negāvit id sē factūrum.<sup>1</sup> Iterum deinde āc saepius interpel-  
lātus<sup>2</sup> in prōpositō perstitit. Tunc Popēdius puerum in excel-  
sam aedium partem levātum tenuit,<sup>3</sup> et sē abjectūrum<sup>4</sup> inde  
minātus est, nisi precibus obtemperāret; neque hōc metū<sup>5</sup> ā  
sententiā eum potuit dīmovēre. Tunc Popēdius exclāmāsse<sup>6</sup>  
fertur:<sup>7</sup> “Grātulēmur<sup>8</sup> nōbīs,<sup>9</sup> Latīnī, hunc esse tam par-  
vum; sī enim senātor esset,<sup>10</sup> nē spērāre quidem<sup>11</sup> jūs<sup>12</sup> cīvi-  
tātis licēret.<sup>10</sup>

## CHAPTER LXI.

## THE INFINITIVE.

**395.** Learn the infinitives of the regular and irregular verbs.  
(86, 112, 180, 223, 235, etc.)

**396.** *Examine the following:—*

1. **Errāre est hūmānum**, *to err is human.*
2. **Possum vidēre**, *I am able to see.*
3. **Volō legere**, *I wish to read.*
4. **Eam sequī sē jubet**, *he orders her to follow him(self).*
5. **Sāturnus in Ītaliā vēnisse dīcitur**, *Saturn is said to have come into Italy.*

Observe that in each sentence the infinitive is used in Latin precisely as in English. This use of the infinitive, as offering no difficulty, has been tacitly illustrated in some of the foregoing exercises.

<sup>1</sup> **Negāvit . . . factūrum**, *denied himself to be going to do it = refused to do it.*

<sup>2</sup> **Perf. part.** See **amātus**, p. 34.

<sup>3</sup> **Puerum . . . levātum tenuit**, *held the raised-up boy = raised up and held the boy.*

<sup>4</sup> **Sē abjectūrum**, *that he would throw (him) down.*

<sup>5</sup> **Hōc metū**, *by this fear = by fear of this.*

<sup>6</sup> **Exclāmāsse** = **exclāmāvisse**.

<sup>7</sup> **Fertur** = **dīcitur**.

<sup>8</sup> **Grātulēmur**, *let us congratulate.* See 391.

<sup>9</sup> **Nōbīs**. See 343.

<sup>10</sup> **Esset . . . licēret**. See 383.

<sup>11</sup> **Nē . . . quidem**, *not even.*

<sup>12</sup> **Jūs cīvītātis**. Cf. **cīvītāte**, line 2.

## 397.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cūr mē vīs corrumpere? 2. Timēre incipiēbat. 3. Soror flēre incipiēbat. 4. Vincere scīs,<sup>1</sup> vīctōriā<sup>2</sup> ūtī nescīs. 5. Tarquinius Cūmās sē contulisse dīcitur. 6. Pontem jubet rescindī. 7. Dulce est prō patriā morī. 8. Catō esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat. 9. Puerōs decet tacēre, 10. Tūne Mariū audēbis occīdere? 11. Nōbīs est in animō<sup>3</sup> per prōvinciam īter facere. 12. Caesar ab urbe proficiscī matūrat.

II. 1. Pyrrhus wanted to bribe Fabricius. 2. Fabricius could not<sup>4</sup> be turned from (the path of) honor. 3. Why did you begin to weep? 4. Did Hannibal know how<sup>5</sup> to conquer? 5. Tarquin was said to have besieged Rome. 6. Rome is said to have been besieged. 7. Seeing is believing.<sup>6</sup> 8. The consul was ordered<sup>7</sup> to tear down the bridge. 9. The bridge is said to have been torn down. 10. It is pleasant<sup>8</sup> to live for (one's) friends. 11. We intend to tear down the bridge. 12. He is said to have departed from Italy.

## 398.

## VOCABULARY.

**ā-vertō**, 3, **-tī**, **-sum**, turn away from, avert.

**crēdō**, 3, **-dīdī**, **-dītum**, trust, believe, w. dat. (343.)

**decet**, 2, **deceit**, —, impers. (p. 200), it is becoming, fitting, proper.

**honestās**, **-ātis**, f. [honestus], honor, integrity, honesty.

**in-ci-plō**, 3, **-cēpl**, **-ceptum** [caplō] (take in hand), begin.

**matūrō**, 1 [matūrus, ripe], hasten. **moriōr**,<sup>9</sup> 3, **mortuus**, die.

**pōns**, **pontis**, m., bridge.

**re-scindō**, 3, **-scīdī**, **-scīssum**, tear away, tear down, break down.

**soror**, **-ōris**, f., sister.

<sup>1</sup> You know how.

<sup>2</sup> See 304.

<sup>3</sup> It is in mind to us = we intend.

<sup>4</sup> Could not = was not able.

<sup>5</sup> See I. 4.

<sup>6</sup> To see is to believe. Cf. I. 7.

<sup>7</sup> Use jubeō.

<sup>8</sup> Neuter. Cf. I. 7.

<sup>9</sup> **Moriōr** has future participle **moritūrus**.



## CHAPTER LXII. 1.

## ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

399. *Examine the following:—*

## DIRECT.

1. **Homo est**, *he is a man.*
2. **Īgnis calet**, *fire is hot.*
3. **Amīcus adest**, *(his) friend is present.*
4. **Mundus ā Deō regitur**, *the world is ruled by God.*

## INDIRECT.

1. **Dīcit sē hominem esse**, *he says that he is a man.*
2. **Sentīmus īgnem calēre**, *we perceive that fire is hot.*
3. **Putat amīcum adesse**, *he thinks that his friend is present.*
4. **Scīmus mundum ā Deō regī**, *we know that the world is ruled by God.*

Notice the difference between the direct and indirect forms of statement.

In the second group, compare the English with the Latin. Observe (1) that after the leading verb there is nothing in the Latin corresponding to the conjunction *that*; (2) that, while the English retains the nominative and indicative of the direct form, the Latin has instead the accusative and infinitive.

The second group illustrates the *indirect discourse*, so called because what some one says, thinks, or knows, is stated in the dependent clause *indirectly*.

**400. RULE OF SYNTAX.**—The accusative and infinitive are regularly used after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like.*

**401. RULE OF SYNTAX.**—The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.



## 402. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

dicit	} tē scribere,	{	he says that you are writing.
dīcet			he will say that you are writing.
dixit			he said that you were writing.
dicit	} epistulam scribī,	{	he says that the letter is being written.
dīcet			he will say that the letter is being written.
dixit			he said that the letter was being written.

## FUTURE.

dicit	} tē scriptūrum esse,	{	he says that you will write.
dīcet			he will say that you will write.
dixit			he said that you would write.
dicit	} epistulam scrip- tum irī, <sup>1</sup>	{	he says that the letter will be written.
dīcet			he will say that the letter will be written.
dixit			he said that the letter would be written

## PERFECT.

dicit	} tē scripsisse,	{	he says that you wrote (have written).
dīcet			he will say that you wrote (have written).
dixit			he said that you wrote (had written).
dicit	} epistulam scriptam esse,	{	he says that the letter was (has been) written.
dīcet			he will say that the letter was (has been) written.
dixit			he said that the letter was (had been) written.

A study of the above table will show that the present infinitive denotes the *same* time as that indicated by the tense of the leading verb; that the future infinitive denotes time *after* that indicated by the leading verb; and that the perfect infinitive denotes time *before* that indicated by the leading verb.

**403. RULE OF SYNTAX.** — The tenses of the infinitive refer to present, future, or past time, *relatively* to the time of the leading verb.

<sup>1</sup> More commonly, *fore ut* epistula with subj. Also see p. 192, n. 1.

# Tonight

## 2.

404.

### EXERCISES.

[It will be best to translate each of the following sentences twice; first, literally, just as they stand, then into good English: thus, *History relates two sons to have been to Cornelia* = *history relates that Cornelia had two sons*. The eighth thus: *The ambassador said himself a public messenger to be of the Roman people* = *the ambassador said that he was, etc.*]

I. 1. *Historia nārrat duōs filiōs fuisse Cornēliae*. 2. *Cornēlia dīxit filiōs suōs esse ōrnāmenta sua*. 3. *Scīmus matrēs filiōs amāre*. 4. *Trāditum<sup>1</sup> est Caesarem ā Brūtō et Cassiō occīsum esse*. 5. *Certum est cāsū bonum fieri nēmīnem<sup>2</sup>*. 6. *Sciō haec vēra esse*. 7. *Mārcellus Hannibalem vinci posse docuit*. 8. *Lēgātus dīxit sē pūblicum nūntium esse populī Rōmānī*. 9. *Thalēs aquam dīxit esse initium rērum*. 10. *Trāditum est Homērum fuisse caecum*. 11. *Lēgātus dīcit montem ab hostibus tenēri*.

[Before translating into Latin, cast each sentence mentally into the Latin form; thus the first sentence will be, *It is said two sons to have been to Cornelia*, or *Cornelia two sons to have had*; and the seventh, *We know you the truth to be about to tell*. This practice is of capital importance.]

II. 1. *It is said that Cornelia had two sons*. 2. *Have we not heard that Cornelia had jewels?* 3. *I think that you will have jewels*. 4. *We know that Cornelia loved her boys*. 5. *Do not<sup>3</sup> all mothers think that their sons are their jewels?* 6. *I think that the moon will be full to-morrow*. 7. *We know that you will tell the truth*. 8. *History relates that Hannibal was defeated by Marcellus*. 9. *It is related that Homer wrote poems*. 10. *I know that this has been done*. 11. *He said that the enemy held the mountain*.

<sup>1</sup> In the compound tenses of the passive voice the perfect participle occasionally loses its idea of time and becomes virtually an adjective. Here *trāditum est* = *it is (a thing) related*.

<sup>2</sup> Subject of *fieri*.

<sup>3</sup> *Nonne*.

ritten.  
written.  
written.

ritten.  
written.  
written

ritten).  
written).  
ritten).

ritten.  
written.  
ritten.

infini-  
of the  
er that  
ive de-

infini-  
tively

## 3.

## 405.

## EXERCISES.

[Read the first paragraph, page 191.]

I. 1. Jūrāte vōs rem publicam nōn dēsertūrōs esse. 2. Vōx quondam audīta est Rōmam ā Gallīs captum<sup>1</sup> īrī. 3. Certum est Hannibalem ā Scīpiōne vīctum esse. 4. Ferunt<sup>2</sup> eō diē lūnam fuisse plēnam, 5. Cum Nāsīca ad Ennium vēnisset, servus dīxit Ennium domī nōn esse. 6. Nāsīca sēnsit illum<sup>3</sup> intus esse. 7. Postea cum ad Nāsīcam vēnisset Ennius, exclāmāvit ipse Nāsīca sē<sup>3</sup> domī nōn esse. 8. Catō dīcere solēbat acerbōs inimicōs saepe vērum dīcere. 9. Abī, nūntiā tē vīdisse Gājum Marium in Carthāginis ruīnīs sedentem (*sitting*). 10. Mātrōna quaedam dictitābat sē trīgintā tantum annōs habēre.<sup>4</sup>

[See second paragraph, p. 191. The first sentence expressed in the Latin idiom will be, *Ennius says himself at home not to be*; the third, *He thinks himself at home to be about to be*; the fourth, *Cato thought his friends the truth not always to speak* (compare I. 8).]

II. 1. Ennius says that he is not at home. 2. He said that he had not been at home. 3. He thinks that he shall be at home to-morrow. 4. Cato thought that his friends did not always tell him<sup>5</sup> the truth. 5. It is evident that the world was not made by chance. 6. We have sworn that we will not desert our leader. 7. The soldiers swore that they had not deserted the republic. 8. It was evident that the enemy was being defeated.<sup>6</sup> 9. Do you not know that the enemy are near? 10. It is certain that they are advancing towards the town.

<sup>1</sup> Captum, being a supine (433), does not change its form to agree with Rōmam.

<sup>2</sup> Ferunt = dicunt.

<sup>3</sup> Observe the difference between illum in 6 and sē in 7.

<sup>4</sup> To have thirty years = to be thirty years old.

<sup>5</sup> Him = himself; not accusative.

<sup>6</sup> Notice that the time of the dependent verb is present, with reference to that of the leading verb.

## 406.

## VOCABULARY.

**acerbus**, -a, -um, adj. [ācer],  
harsh, bitter.  
**arbitror**, 1, *think, suppose, believe.*  
**cōn-stat**, 1, -stitit, —, impers.  
(415), *it is evident, clear.*  
**dē-serō**, 3, -uī, -tum, *desert, abandon.*  
**Ennius**, -ī, m., *Ennius*, a Roman poet.  
**ex-clāmō**, 1, *cry out, exclaim.*  
**Gallus**, -ī, m., *a Gaul.*  
**historia**, -ae, f., *history.*  
**in-imīcus**, -a, -um, adj. [amīcus],  
*unfriendly, hostile*; noun, an enemy. (172.)  
**intus**, adv. [in], *inside, within.*  
**jūrō**, 1 [jūs], *swear, take an oath.*  
**Mārcellus**, -ī, m., *Marcellus*, a Roman general.

**mātrōna**, -ae, f. [māter], *wife, lady, matron.*  
**nūntiō**, 1 [nūntius], *announce, report.*  
**ōrnāmentum**, -ī, n. [ōrnō], *ornament, jewel.* (345. 9.)  
**populus**, -ī, m., *people.*  
**pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj. [populus] (*pertaining to the people*), public. (345. 19.)  
**quondam**, adv., *once, formerly.*  
**sentiō**, 4, sēnsī, sēnsū, *feel, know (by the senses), see, perceive.*  
**tantum**, adv. [tantus], *only.*  
**Thalēs**, -is, m., *Thales*, a Greek philosopher.  
**trā-dō**, 3, -didī, -ditum [trāns], *give over, deliver; relate, recount.*  
**vērūm**, -ī, n. [vērus], *the truth.*

†

4.

## 407.

## FOR TRANSLATION.

## NĀSICA ET ENNIUS.

Nāsica,<sup>1</sup> cum ad poētā Ennium vēnisset,<sup>2</sup> eīque<sup>3</sup> ab ōstiō quāerenti<sup>4</sup> Ennium ancilla dīxisset eum domī<sup>5</sup> nōn esse, sēnsit illam<sup>6</sup> dominī jūssū dīxisse, et illum<sup>7</sup> intus esse. Paucīs post diēbus, cum ad Nāsicā vēnisset Ennius et eum ā<sup>8</sup> jānuā quāereret, exclāmat Nāsica sē domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, “Qui? ego nōn cōgnōscō vōcem,” inquit,<sup>9</sup> “tuam?”

<sup>1</sup> Subject of sēnsit.<sup>2</sup> Ad . . . vēnisset, *had come to, that is, to call on.*<sup>3</sup> To him, dat. of is. See 270. 2.<sup>4</sup> Pres. part. of quāerō, in the dat. with eī, *to him asking for.*<sup>5</sup> See 336.<sup>6</sup> Refers to ancilla, and is the subject acc. of dīxisse.<sup>7</sup> That is, Ennius.<sup>8</sup> Ā jānuā, *at the door.*<sup>9</sup> Observe the position of inquit.

Hic<sup>1</sup> Nāsica: "Homo es impudēns. Ego, cum tē quaerem, ancillae<sup>2</sup> tuae crēdidī tē<sup>3</sup> domī nōn esse; tū mihi nōn crēdis ipsī?"<sup>4</sup>

## CHAPTER LXIII. 1.

## PARTICIPLES.

**408.** Learn the participles of the regular and irregular verbs.

1. For declension of a present active participle, see 165. The ablative singular generally ends in *e*, but in *i* when the participle is used as an adjective.

2. The other participles, ending in *us*, *a*, *um*, are declined like **bonus** (71).

**409.** *Examine the following:—*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
|   | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{cadit,} \\ \text{cadet,} \\ \text{cecidit,} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{he falls} \\ \text{he will fall} \\ \text{he fell} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{fighting most} \\ \text{bravely.} \end{array}$ |
| 1. Fortissimē dīmicāns                    |  |
| 2. Hostēs adortus prōflīgāvit,            | he attacked and routed (having attacked, he routed) the enemy.   |
| 3. Eī advenientī aquila pilleum sustulit, | an eagle took off his cap as he was approaching (to him approaching).  |
| 4. Leōnidās superātus cēdere nōluit,      | Leonidas, (though) overpowered, would not yield.   |
| 5. Rōmā expulsus Athēnās ibit,            | (if) expelled from Rome, he will go to Athens.   |
| 6. Epistulam sibi commissam dētulit,      | he delivered the letter (which had been) intrusted to him.   |
| 7. Eā rē commōtus in Ītaliā rediit,       | he returned into Italy (because he was) alarmed at this event.   |
| 8. Nōs moritūrī salūtāmus,                | we, (who are) about to die, salute you.  |
| 9. Ob virginēs raptās,                    | on account of the seizure of the maidens (maidens seized).   |

<sup>1</sup> An adverb, *hereupon*.

<sup>3</sup> Subject acc. of *esse*. See 401.

<sup>2</sup> Dat. after *crēdidī*. See 343.

<sup>4</sup> Emphasizes *mihi*. (270. 4.)

Study the above examples with reference first to the tenses of the participles, and observe that the time of the participles is present, past, or future, relatively to the time of the leading verb.

Notice how the participle is translated in each example; only in the first is it best translated literally. What the Latin expresses by a participle we very often express by a clause beginning *as*, *though*, *if*, *because*, etc., by a relative clause, or by a verb coördinate with one following.

## 2.

## 410.

## EXERCISES.

[It will be best to translate every sentence literally, then into good English.]

I. 1. Remus irrīdēns mūrum trānsiliit. 2. Abī hinc, oblīta<sup>1</sup> frātrum, oblīta<sup>1</sup> patriae. 3. Lēgātō rēs repetentī<sup>2</sup> superbē respōsum est<sup>3</sup> ā Latīnīs. 4. Faliscī statim beneficiō victī portās Rōmānīs aperuērunt. 5. Fīlius Manlī Latīnum ex equō excussum trānsfixit.<sup>4</sup> 6. Rōmānī necessitatē victī lēgātōs mittunt. 7. Hunc Fabricius vinetum reducī jūssit. 8. Hannibal causam bellī quaerēns Saguntum ēvertit.<sup>5</sup> 9. Eā rē commōtus in Italiam rediit armīs injūriam acceptam vindicātūrus.<sup>5</sup> 10. Missōs<sup>6</sup> ā senātū lēgātōs honorificē excēpit.

[Cast each of the following sentences into the Latin idiom before attempting to translate. Thus, *Romulus killed Remus laughing at* (acc. in agreement with *Remus*); *Horatius stabbed his sister forgetful (oblītam)*; *to the ambassadors demanding*, etc.]

II. 1. Romulus killed Remus because he laughed at his wall. 2. Horatius stabbed his sister with his sword because

<sup>1</sup> Feminine of the perf. part. **oblītus**, from **obliviscor**. Translate, *Thou who hast forgotten* (lit., *having forgotten*).

<sup>2</sup> *To the ambassador demanding* = *to the ambassador who demanded*, or *when the ambassador demanded*.

<sup>3</sup> **Respōsum est**, it was replied = *answer was made*.

<sup>4</sup> **Excussum trānsfixit**, struck off and stabbed. See 409. 2.

<sup>5</sup> *About to avenge*, i.e., *in order to avenge*.

<sup>6</sup> Compare 409. 6.

quaere-  
ihī nōn

ar verbs.  
65. The  
participle

lined like

ghting most  
bravely.

ed (having

took off his

ough) over-

n Rome, he

ed the letter

d into Italy

e, salute you.  
the maidens

e. See 401.  
(270. 4.)

she was forgetful of her country. 3. The Latins answered the ambassadors<sup>1</sup> haughtily, when they demanded restitution. 4. The Gauls entered the open houses. 5. To the Romans, as they came out of the pass, the light was sadder than death<sup>2</sup> itself. 6. The old men went forth to meet<sup>3</sup> Manlius<sup>1</sup> as he was returning to Rome. 7.<sup>4</sup> They bound the prisoner and brought him back to the city. 8. The letter which had been written by the boy was delivered. 9. The Romans never despaired, though they were often defeated.<sup>5</sup> 10. Cæsar received the senate sitting,<sup>6</sup> when they came<sup>7</sup> to him.

## 411.

## VOCABULARY.

**com-moveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, shake, disturb, excite, alarm.

**dē-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, (bring down), deliver.

**dē-spērō**, 1, be hopeless, despair.

**ē-vertō**, 3, -tī, -sum, overturn, overthrow, destroy.

**ex-cutiō**, 3, -cussī, -cussum [quatiō], shake out, strike off, drive away, cast out.

**Falisci**, -ōrum, M., the Faliscans, a people of Etruria.

**hinc**, adv. [hic], from this place, hence.

**ir-rideō**, 2, -risī, -risum [in], laugh at, ridicule, jest, mock.

**Latinus**, -a, -um [Latium], Latin; noun, a Latin.

**necessitās**, -ātis, F. [necesse], necessity, constraint.

**ob-viam**, adv., in the way; with verb of motion, meet; w. dat.

**pateō**, 2, -uī, —, lie open, be open; part. patēns, open.

**porta**, -ae, F., gate, door. Cf. **jānuā**.

**re-dūcō**, 3, -xī, -ductum, lead back, bring back.

**senior**, -ōris, M. & F. (comp. of **senex**, old), elder, old person.

**statim**, adv. (stō), (standing there), on the spot, immediately, at once.

**superbē**, adv. [superbus], proudly, haughtily.

**trāns-figō**, 3, -fixī, -fixum, pierce through, pierce, stab.

**vindicō**, 1, claim, avenge, punish.

<sup>1</sup> Dative.

<sup>2</sup> See 211, 212.

<sup>3</sup> To meet, obviā.

<sup>4</sup> Compare I. 7.

<sup>5</sup> Not the last word: the Romans often defeated, etc.

<sup>6</sup> In agreement with Cæsar.

<sup>7</sup> Had come. See 373.



## CHAPTER LXIV.

## PARTICIPLES: ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

412. *Examine the following:—*

Sōle oriente, fugiunt tenebrae,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the sun rising,} \\ \text{when the sun rises,} \\ \text{at the rising of the sun,} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the shadows flee away.} \end{array} \right\}$
Datō signō, virginēs raptae sunt,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the signal having been given,} \\ \text{when the signal was given,} \\ \text{at the given signal,} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the maidens} \\ \text{were seized.} \end{array} \right\}$
Eō regnante, bellum exortum est,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{he reigning,} \\ \text{in his reign,} \\ \text{while he was reigning,} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{a war arose.} \end{array} \right\}$
Cōsul, bellō cōfēc- tō, Rōmam rediit,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the war having been finished,} \\ \text{when the war was finished,} \\ \text{having finished the war,} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the consul re-} \\ \text{turned to Rome.} \end{array} \right\}$
Tē duce, hostēs vin- cēmus,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{you (being) leader,} \\ \text{if you are our leader,} \\ \text{with you for a leader,} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{we shall conquer the} \\ \text{enemy.} \end{array} \right\}$
Messāllā et Pīsōne cōsulibus,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{M. and P. (being) consuls.} \\ \text{when M. and P. were consuls.} \\ \text{in the consulship of M. and P.} \end{array} \right\}$	
Serēnō caelō,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the sky (being) clear.} \\ \text{when the sky is clear.} \\ \text{in a clear sky.} \end{array} \right\}$	

1. The foregoing examples illustrate the very common construction called the **Ablative Absolute**.

2. In the first four examples there is a noun (or pronoun) in the ablative, and a participle agreeing with it. In the last three there is no participle expressed, but instead, another noun or an adjective.

3. Carefully compare the Latin with the English translation, and observe that each ablative absolute may be rendered by a clause beginning with *when*, *while*, or *if* (in other instances *because*, *although*, etc.), the Latin noun in the ablative becoming the subject of the clause in English, and that this noun refers to a *different person or thing* from the subject of the leading verb.



4. We may also sometimes translate the participle in the ablative absolute by a verb coördinate with a following verb. Thus the fourth might be translated, *The consul finished the war and returned.*

5. If I wish to express in the Latin, *While he was reigning, he carried on war*, he being the subject of both the principal and subordinate clauses, I say, **Is rēgnāns bellum gessit**; but if I wish to express, *While he was reigning, war arose*, he being subject of the subordinate clause, and *war* of the principal, I use the ablative absolute, thus, **Eō rēgnante, bellum exortum est**.

6. In the fourth example notice the change of idiom. We might say, *The consul, having finished the war, returned to Rome*; but the Latin has no perfect active participle corresponding to *having finished*; therefore, in Latin the perfect passive participle must be used in the ablative with the noun **bellum**. The same idea may, of course, be expressed by a **cum** clause. See 372.

7. From the nature of deponent verbs (passive form with active meaning), it will be seen that the English participle with *having* may be directly expressed in Latin, if there is a deponent verb of the right meaning; thus, *Cæsar having encouraged his men*, **Caesar militēs hortātus**.

8. Most instances of the so-called ablative absolute may be resolved as the ablative of time, means, cause, etc.,

## 413.

## EXERCISES.

[Translate each ablative absolute in as many ways as possible.]

I. 1. Strictō gladiō, trānsfixit puellam. 2. Expulsīs rēgibus, duo cōsulēs creātī sunt. 3. Quō factō,<sup>1</sup> mūtāta est proelī fortūna. 4. Occupātā Siciliā, quid postea āctūrus es? 5. Hannibal, visō frātris occīsī capite, dīxit: "Āgnōscō fortunam Carthāginis." 6. Hīs parātīs rēbus, Caesar militēs nāvēs cōscendere jubet. 7. Hōc factō, tūtus eris. 8. Alpibus superātīs, Hannibal in Italiā vēnit. 9. Caesar, mortuō Sūllā, Rhodum sēcēdere statuit. 10. Dēlētīs Teutonibus, C. Marius in Cimbrōs sē convertit.

<sup>1</sup> When this had been done. What is it literally?

[Before trying to translate the following sentences, consider well in each case what the probable Latin form of expression, or idiom, would be for the subordinate clause, adverbial phrase, etc.; thus, *When he had stabbed the girl* = *the girl (having been) stabbed*; *When Numa was king* = *Numa (being) king*; *By hurling their javelins* = *by the javelins hurled*.]

II. 1. When he had stabbed the girl, he put by his sword. 2. On the expulsion of King Tarquin, Brutus and Collatinus were made consuls. 3. When Numa was king, the temple of Janus was built. 4. Cæsar, after he had overcome the Gauls, waged war with Pompey. 5. On the death of Cato, there was no longer<sup>1</sup> a republic. 6. Having learned these facts (things), he hastened against the enemy. 7. The soldiers, by hurling their javelins, broke the enemy's line. 8. Having held a levy, the consul sets out immediately for (*ad*) the army. 9. O my country, thou hast overcome my anger by employing a mother's entreaties. 10. If we do<sup>2</sup> this, we shall all be safe.

## 414.

## VOCABULARY.

**ad-moveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, (move up, towards), apply, employ.

**cōgnōscō**, 3, -gnōvī, -gnitum [com, (g)nōscō], learn, recognize, know.

**Collātīnus**, -ī, M., Collatinus, surname of L. Tarquinius.

**con-iclō**, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [ja-iclō] (throw together), throw, hurl.

**con-tendō**, 3, -dī, -tum (draw tight), exert one's self, strive, hasten; contend.

**con-vertō**, 3, -tī, -sum, turn round, turn, change; **sē convertere**, turn one's self, turn,

**dēlēctus**, -ūs, M. [dēlligō, choose out], selection, levy.

**dē-pōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positum, put down, put by, lay down.

**ex-pellō**, 3, -puli, -pulsum, drive out or away, expel.

**Jānus**, -ī, M., Janus, the two-faced god.

**per-fringō**, 3, -frēgī, -fractum [frangō, break], break through, break.

**Rhodus**, -ī, F., Rhodes, an island in the Ægean.

**sē-cēdō**, 3, -cēssi, -cēssum, go apart, withdraw, retire.

**statuō**, 3, -uī, -ūtum, put, place; think, believe, determine.

**stringō**, 3, -nxi, strictum (draw tight), graze; draw, unsheathe.

<sup>1</sup> No longer = *nūlla jam*.

<sup>2</sup> If we do this = *this done*.

## CHAPTER LXV. 1.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**415.** *Examine the following:—*

1. **Pluit**, *it rains.*
2. **Tonat**, *it thunders.*
3. **Mē pudet stultitiae meae**, *I am ashamed (it shames me) of my folly.*
4. **Eum paenitet sceleris**, *he repents (it repents him) of his crime.*
5. **Pūgnābātur**, *fighting was going on (it was being fought).*
6. **Caesarī<sup>1</sup> pārendum<sup>2</sup> est**, *Cæsar must be obeyed (it must be obeyed to Cæsar).*
7. **Tibi licet exīre**, *you may go out (it is permitted to you to go out).*
8. **Hōc nōs facere oportet**, *we ought to do this (it behooves us to do this).*
9. **Caesarī placuit ut lēgātōs mitteret**, *Cæsar determined (it pleased Cæsar) to send ambassadors.*

(1) Observe in each of the foregoing examples that the leading verb has no personal subject either expressed or implied. In 7, the subject of **licet** is the infinitive **exīre**; in 8, the phrase **hōc nōs facere** is the subject of **oportet**; in 9, the clause **ut lēgātōs mitteret** is the subject of **placuit**. In each of the first six the subject is contained in the verb itself.

(2) Some verbs, like **pluit**, **tonat**, **pudet**, **paenitet**, **licet**, the use of which is mostly confined to the third person singular, are called **Impersonal Verbs**; many others, as in the examples **pūgnābātur**, **oportet**, **placuit**, are sometimes *used impersonally*.

(3) Examples 7 and 8 show one way of rendering *may* and *must* into Latin.

(4) In 3 and 4 notice the use of the accusative and genitive after the verbs.

**416. RULE OF SYNTAX.**—The impersonal verbs *miseret*, *paenitet*, *piget*, *pudet*, *taedet* take the accusa-

<sup>1</sup> See 417. 2.

<sup>2</sup> See 425. (4).

tive of the person and the genitive of the object or cause of the feeling.

Some examples of verbs used impersonally have already been given. See 362. I. 9; 370. I. 5; 410. I. 3.

417. *Examine the following:—*

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <b>Frātrī persuādet</b> , <i>he persuades his brother.</i> | <b>Frātrī persuādētur</b> , <i>his brother is persuaded.</i> |
| 2. <b>Lēgibus pārēbant</b> , <i>they obeyed the laws.</i>     | <b>Lēgibus pārēbātur</b> , <i>the laws were obeyed.</i>      |
| 3. <b>Crēdit mihi</b> , <i>he believes me.</i>                | <b>Mihi crēditur</b> , <i>I am believed.</i>                 |
| 4. <b>Amīcīs nocent</b> , <i>they injure their friends.</i>   | <b>Amīcīs nocētur</b> , <i>their friends are injured.</i>    |

Observe that the verbs are intransitive. Compare the active and passive in the examples one by one. Observe that in each case the passive is expressed by putting the verb in the third person singular, leaving the indirect object of the active unchanged.

**418. RULE OF SYNTAX.**—**Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in the passive, the person or thing affected (the subject in English) being expressed by the dative.**

## 419.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Omnēs decet rēctē agere.** 2. **Diū et ācritēr pūgnātum est.** 3. **Sequitur ut falsum sit.** 4. **Eōrum nōs miseret.**<sup>1</sup> 5. **Taedet mē vītāe.** 6. **Statuendum<sup>2</sup> vōbīs ante noctem est.** 7. **Licet mihi ex urbe ēgrēdī.** 8. **Nōs oportuit<sup>3</sup> hōc facere.** 9. **Trāditum est Scīpiōnem doctum fuisse.** 10. **Eādēm nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna.** 11. **Obsistitur illīs.** 12. **Cuī<sup>4</sup> parē potuit?** 13. **Persuādētur cōnsulī.**

<sup>1</sup> Compare 415. 3 and 4.

<sup>2</sup> *It behooved us to do = we ought to have done.*

<sup>3</sup> *The duty of deciding is to you = you must decide. Compare 425. 7.*

<sup>4</sup> See 343.

[Observe that the following sentences are modelled closely on the foregoing, and on the illustrative examples. Cast each one into the Latin form before thinking of the Latin words; thus the fifth sentence will be changed to *It disgusts me of the folly*, etc.]

II. 1. It becomes us all to live well. 2. The battle will be fought bravely. 3. It followed that<sup>1</sup> the enemy were defeated. 4.<sup>2</sup> He was ashamed of his cowardice. 5. I am disgusted with the folly of the men. 6. What must we do? 7. What ought we to have done?<sup>3</sup> 8.<sup>4</sup> May I take the book? 9. It was reported to Cæsar that the enemy were approaching. 10. It resulted<sup>5</sup> from these circumstances<sup>6</sup> that<sup>1</sup> all were silent. 11. The winds are opposed with difficulty. 12. Can the soldier be spared? 13. Are not the laws of the republic obeyed?

## 420.

## VOCABULARY.

**deceet**, 2, **deceult**, impers., *it is seemly, becoming, fitting.*

**ē-gredior**, 3, **-gressus** [**gradior**], *go out, go forth, march out.* Cf. **exeō**.

**fortiter**, adv. [**fortis**], *bravely, courageously.*

**licet**, 2, **-ult**, or **-itum est**, impers., *it is permitted, it is lawful, (one) may.*

**miseret**, 2, **-itum est**, impers. [**miser**], *it makes miserable, it excites pity, (one) pities.*

**ob-sistō**, 3, **-stiti**, **-stitum**, *oppose, withstand, resist*, w. dat.

**oportet**, 2, **-ult**, impers., *it is*

*necessary, it behooves, (one) must or ought.*

**parcō**, 3, **peperci** (**parsi**), **parsum**, *spare*, w. dat.

**piget**, 2, **-ult**, or **-itum est**, impers., *it disgusts, (one) is disgusted.*

**pudet**, 2, **-ult**, or **-itum est**, impers., *it shames, (one) is ashamed.*

**pūgnō**, 1 [**pūgna**], *fight.*

**stultitia**, -ae, f. [**stultus**, *foolish*], *folly.* (345. 11.)

**taedet**, 2, **-ult**, or **taesum est**, impers., *it disgusts, wearies, (one) is disgusted.*

**vix**, adv., *hardly, with difficulty.*

<sup>1</sup> A result clause, *ut*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Compare 415. 3.

<sup>3</sup> Compare I. 8.

<sup>4</sup> Compare 415. 7.

<sup>5</sup> **Fiebat**.

<sup>6</sup> **Rēs**.

II

## 2.

421.

## FOR TRANSLATION.

## THE DEATH OF THE PET SPARROW.

Lugete, o Veneres Cupidinesque,  
 Et quantumst<sup>1</sup> hominum<sup>2</sup> venustiorum.  
 Passer mortuus est meae puellae,  
 Passer, deliciae meae puellae,  
 Quem plus illa oculis<sup>3</sup> suis amabat:  
 Nam mellitus erat suamque<sup>4</sup> norat<sup>5</sup>  
 Ipsa<sup>6</sup> tam bene quam puella matrem  
 Nec sese a gremio illius<sup>7</sup> movebat,  
 Sed circumsiliens modo huc modo illuc  
 Ad solam dominam usque pipiabat.  
 Qui<sup>8</sup> nunc it per iter tenebricosum  
 Illuc unde negant redire quemquam.<sup>9</sup>  
 At vobis male sit,<sup>10</sup> malae tenebrae  
 Orci, quae omnia bella<sup>11</sup> devoratis:  
 Tam bellum mihi<sup>12</sup> passerem abstulistis.  
 O factum male!<sup>13</sup> io miselle passer!  
 Tua nunc opera<sup>14</sup> meae puellae<sup>15</sup>  
 Flendo turgiduli rubent<sup>16</sup> ocelli. — *Catullus*.

<sup>1</sup> For *quantum est*. Translate, *all ye lovely ones, whoever ye are*. What is it literally?

<sup>2</sup> Depends on *quantum*. See 340.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative after the comparative *plūs*. See 212.

<sup>4</sup> Supply *dominam*.

<sup>5</sup> For *nōverat*, but with the meaning of the imperfect.

<sup>6</sup> With *puella*.

<sup>7</sup> That is, *puellae*.

<sup>8</sup> Refers to *passer*.

<sup>9</sup> Subject acc. of *redire*. See 401 and 279. 6.

<sup>10</sup> *Ill betide you!*

<sup>11</sup> From *bellus*.

<sup>12</sup> Translate *my*.

<sup>13</sup> *Factum male*, *woful deed*. What is it literally?

<sup>14</sup> *On your account*.

<sup>15</sup> Genitive after *ocelli*.

<sup>16</sup> *Turgiduli rubent*, *are all swollen and red*.

## CHAPTER LXVI. 1.

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

## FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE. — GERUNDIVE.

[Review the participles of the regular and irregular verbs.]

**422.** The future active participle with the verb **sum** forms the FIRST, or ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION: **amātūrus sum, eram, etc., I am, was, etc., about to (going to, intending to) love.**

**423.** The gerundive with the verb **sum** forms the SECOND, or PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION: **amandus sum, eram, etc., I am, was, etc., to be loved; I deserve, ought, etc., to be loved.**

**424.**

## PARADIGMS.

	ACTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	PASSIVE.
PRES.	amātūrus sum		amandus sum
IMPER.	amātūrus eram		amandus eram
FUT.	amātūrus erō		amandus erō
PERF.	amātūrus fui		amandus fui
PLUP.	amātūrus fueram		amandus fueram
F.P.	amātūrus fuerō		amandus fuerō
	etc.		etc.

**425.** *Examine the following: —*

- Nōn dubitō quīn monitūrus sit,** *I do not doubt that he will advise.*
- Nōn dubitō quīn futūrum sit ut id fiat,** *I do not doubt that (it will happen that it be done) it will be done.*
- Sciōbam quid actūrus essēs,** *I knew what you were going to do.*
- Pontem faciendum cūrat,** *he (takes care a bridge to be built) has a bridge built.*
- Dēlenda est Carthāgō,** *Carthage must be destroyed.*
- Caesarī omnia erant agenda,** *everything had to be done by Cæsar.*
- Mihi scribendum est,** *(the duty of writing is to me) I must write.*



8. **Omnibus moriendum est**, (*the necessity of dying is to all*)  
*all must die.*  
 9. **Vōbīs jūdiciō ūtendum est**, (*the duty of using judgment is to*  
*you*) *you ought to use judgment.*

(1) The first three examples show how a future tense may be supplied for the subjunctive mood.

(2) Observe in the fourth example the use of the gerundive agreeing with a noun which is the object of **cūrō**, the whole expression denoting *to have a thing done*.

(3) The last five examples show some uses of the passive periphrastic conjugation. Notice that the idea of *necessity*, or *duty*, is prominent in these forms.

(4) In 7, 8, and 9 the verbs are used impersonally, that is, without any personal subject, the gerundive being in the nominative singular neuter. This impersonal use belongs to transitive verbs without an object expressed, and to intransitive verbs. For the case of **jūdiciō**, see 304.

(5) In the last four examples, **Caesarī**, **mihi**, **omnibus**, and **vōbīs**, denote in each case the person *to whom* there is a duty or necessity of doing something. This dative is most conveniently rendered with *by*, and is called the **Dative of Agent**.

**426. RULE OF SYNTAX.** — The dative is used with the gerundive to denote the person by whom the act must be done.<sup>1</sup>

## 2.

## 427.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Quis dubitat quān futūrī sītis doctī? 2. Quis dubitat quān lūdōs vīsūrī sīmus? 3. Nōn erat dubium quān lūdōs vīsūrus esset. 4. Nōlī dubitāre quān crās ventūrus sim. 5. Cōgnōvī quid āctūrus sit. 6. Audiam quid āctūrus sīs. 7. Cōgnōveram quid āctūrī essent. 8. Dux castra mōtūrus est. 9. Scrībenda est mihi epistula. 10. Scrībenda erat

<sup>1</sup> How is the agent with a verb in the passive otherwise and commonly expressed?



tibi epistula. 11. Oppidum militibus oppugnandum erit. 12. Hic liber mihi legendus est.

II. 1. There is no doubt that you are going to be a hero. 2. I doubt not that you will see the games. 3. Do not doubt<sup>1</sup> that he will be present. 4. Do you know what he is going to do? 5.<sup>2</sup> We ought to cultivate virtue. 6.<sup>2</sup> I must give the signal. 7.<sup>2</sup> We ought to read the poets. 8. The commander must be obeyed.<sup>3</sup> 9. The boy is not to be believed. 10. The town had to be fortified.

## 3.

## 428.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quaesivit ex oraculo Croesus utrum ipse superaturus esset. 2. Non erat dubium quin Falisci sese Romanis dedituri essent. 3. Nisi vinum defecisset, plura et graviora dicturi fuimus. 4. Magnam in spem veniebat fore<sup>4</sup> ut pertinaciam desisteret hostis. 5. Cum Scipio, graviter vulneratus, in hostium manus jamjam venturus esset, filius eum periculo liberavit. 6. Hoc censeo et Carthaginem esse delendam. 7. Aemilius liberos Graecis litteris erudiendos<sup>5</sup> curaverat. 8. Caesar dandum erat tuba signum. 9. Mihi utendum est iudicio meo.<sup>6</sup> 10. Ita nobis vivendum est, ut ad mortem parati simus.

II. 1. I will ask of the general whether he is going to advance. 2. Who doubts that the Romans will surrender themselves to the Faliscans? 3.<sup>7</sup> If words had not failed, I was going to write a longer letter. 4. I think the enemy will be defeated. 5. When Caesar was on the point of

<sup>1</sup> *Noli dubitare.* How else may this be expressed?

<sup>2</sup> Express in two ways — by using *oportet*, and then by the gerundive.

<sup>3</sup> *Lit. it must be obeyed to the commander.* Cf. 415. 6.

<sup>4</sup> *Fore = futurum esse, to be about to be,* may be omitted in translation.

<sup>5</sup> Compare 425. 4, and (2).

<sup>6</sup> See 425. 9.

<sup>7</sup> Compare I. 3.

starting<sup>1</sup> for Rome, he received a letter from Pompey. 6. My opinion is<sup>2</sup> that the town ought to be besieged. 7. These things must not be despised by<sup>3</sup> us. 8. A wise man will have his boys trained<sup>4</sup> in Latin literature.<sup>5</sup> 9. The citizens<sup>6</sup> must obey the laws. 10. The soldiers must use their own judgment.

## 429.

## VOCABULARY.

**Aemilius**, -ī, m., *Aemilius*, a Roman consul.

**cēseō**, 2, -uī, -um, *estimate; think, deem, be of opinion.*

**Croesus**, -ī, m., *Cræsus*, king of Lydia.

**dē-dō**, 3, -didī, -ditum, (*put away from one's self*) *surrender, deliver up.*

**dē-ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [**faciō**], (*make away from*) *revolt; fail, be wanting.*

**dē-sistō**, 3, -stitī, -stitum, (*stand off or apart*) *leave off, cease, desist.*

**doctus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of **doceō**], *learned.*

**gravis**, -e, adj., *heavy, serious.*

**graviter**, adv., *heavily, seriously.*

**ita**, adv., *thus, so.*

**jamjam**, adv., *already; jamjam ventūrus*, *on the point of coming.*

**jūdicium**, -ī, n. [**jūdicō**], *judgment, opinion.*

**op-pūgnō**, 1 [**ob**], *attack, assault, besiege.*

**ōrāculum**, -ī, n. [**ōrō**], *oracle.*

**parātus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of **parō**], *ready, prepared.*

**pertinācia**, -ae, f. [**pertināx**, *persistent*], *perseverance, obstinacy.* (345. 11.)

**signum**, -ī, n., *mark, sign, signal.*

**ūtor**, 3, **ūsus**, *use, employ, w. abl.*

**utrum**, adv., *whether.* Cf. **num**, 382.

**jūdicō**, **cēseō**, **existimō**, **arbitror**, **putō**, and **opīnor**, all mean *think*; but the first four imply more deliberation and reflection; primarily *think* as a judge, a magistrate, an appraiser, an arbiter; hence, in general, of official, authoritative opinion. **Putō** and **opīnor** imply rather private, personal judgment or opinion.

<sup>1</sup> On the point of starting = *al-ready about to start.*

<sup>2</sup> This I think. Cf. I. 6.

<sup>3</sup> See 425. (5).

<sup>4</sup> Cf. I. 7, and 425. (2).

<sup>5</sup> Compare 232. I. 4.

<sup>6</sup> **Ā civilibus**, to distinguish the agent from the indirect object.

## CHAPTER LXVII.

## GERUND. — GERUNDIVE. — SUPINE.

**430.** Learn the gerunds and supines of the regular and irregular verbs.

## GERUND.

**431.** *Examine the following: —*

G. **Caesar loquendī finem facit**, *Cæsar makes an end of speaking.*

**Cupidus est tē audiendī**, *he is desirous of hearing you.*

D. **Aqua utilis est bibendō**, *water is useful for drinking.*

Ac. **Inter pugnandum trīgintā nāvēs captae sunt**, *during the fight (amid the fighting) thirty ships were taken.*

Ab. **Mēns discendō alitur**, *the mind is strengthened by learning.*

1. The above examples illustrate the use of the gerund in its several cases. It will be seen that the gerund is used like the English verbal noun in *ing*. The nominative is supplied in Latin by the infinitive; *e.g.*, **vidēre est crēdere**, *seeing is believing*.

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

**432.** *Examine the following: —*

G. **Cōnsilia** { **urbem dēlendī**, } *plans for (of) destroying*  
                           { **urbis dēlendae**, } *the city.*

D. **Operam dat** { **agrōs colendō** (rare) } *he devotes himself to*  
                           { **agrīs colendīs**, } *tilling the fields.*

Ac. **Vēnērunt ad** { **pācem petendum** (rare) } *they came to sue*  
                           { **pācem petendam**, } *for peace.*

Ab. **Occupātus** { **litterās scribendō** (rare) } *I was engaged in*  
       **sum in** { **litterīs scribendīs**, } *writing letters.*

1. What is to be particularly studied in the above examples is the difference between the gerund and the gerundive construction, as shown within the braces. Observe (1) that the **gerund** is put in the required case, and has its object in the accusative; (2) that the **noun** is put in the required case, and the **gerundive** agrees with it.

2. Except in the genitive, where the two constructions are about equally common, the gerundive construction is almost always preferred.

3. Notice that the accusative of the gerund or gerundive with *ad* denotes a purpose. This construction is much used. In what other ways may a purpose be expressed?

## SUPINE.

433. *Examine the following:—*

1. *Lēgātī Rōmam veniunt pācem petītum, ambassadors come to Rome to sue for peace.*

2. *Id perfacile est factū, that is very easy to do, or to be done.*

Observe in the first example that the supine *petītum* has the same meaning as *ut petant*, *quī petant*, or *ad petendam*; that is, it expresses purpose. This use is common after verbs of motion.

434. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.

In the second example the supine in *ū* answers the question *in what respect?* *Perfacile factū, easy in respect to the doing.* This use is common after adjectives.

The supine in *ū* is really an *ablative of specification*. See 260.

## 435.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Multī convēnere studiō<sup>1</sup> videndae novae urbis.* 2. *Ars puerōs educandī difficilis est.* 3. *Ea<sup>2</sup> aquae causā<sup>3</sup> hauriendae dēscenderat.* 4. *Brūtus ad explōrandum cum equitibus antecēssit.* 5. *Militēs ad domum custōdiendam ā rēge missī sunt.* 6. *Nēmīnī dubium est quīn Fabius rem Rōmānam cunctandō restituerit.* 7. *Is opportūnus vīsus est locus commūniendō praesidiō.* 8. *Omnis spēs evādendī adempta est.* 9. *Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt auxilium rogātum.* 10. *Quod optimum est factū, faciam.*

<sup>1</sup> *From a desire; abl. of cause.*

<sup>2</sup> *She.* See 270. 2.

<sup>3</sup> The ablative *causā*, for the sake of, follows its genitive.

ad. v. l. g. m. v. l.

II. 1. You will have time to lead (of leading) out the army from that place. 2. He undertook the war for the sake<sup>1</sup> of destroying the republic. 3. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking. 4. While drinking<sup>2</sup> we conversed about many things. 5. Many leaders had assembled to see<sup>3</sup> Scipio. 6. Night put<sup>4</sup> an end to the fighting. 7. This seems (to be) a suitable place for building a house. 8. The enemy had entertained<sup>5</sup> the hope of getting possession of the camp.<sup>6</sup> 9. A multitude of men came together to witness<sup>3</sup> the games. 10. It is difficult to say what he will do.<sup>7</sup>

## 436.

## VOCABULARY.

**ad-imō**, 3, -ēmī, -ēptum  
[emō], *take away, remove.*

**alō**, 3, -uī, -tum, *nourish, strengthen, support.*

**ante-cēdō**, 3, -cēssī, -cēssum, *go before.*

**auxillium**, -ī, N. [augeō], *help, aid, support; pl. auxiliaries.*

**col-loquor**, 3, -locūtus [com], *speaking together, converse.*

**com-mūniō**, 4, (fortify strongly) *secure, intrench.*

**con-veniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum  
[com], *come together, assemble.*

**cunctor**, 1, *linger, hesitate.*

**edō**, *edere or ēsse, ēdī, ēsum or ēssum, eat.*

**ex-plōrō**, 1, *search out, examine, explore; reconnoitre.*

**Fabius**, -ī, M., *Fabius, a Roman general.*

**hauriō**, 4, **hausī**, **haustum**, *draw (water), drain, drink up.*

**opportūnus**, -a, -um, adj., *fit, convenient, suitable; opportune.*

**re-stituō**, 3, -uī, -ūtum [statuō], *(replace) give back, return, restore.*

**sus-cipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum  
[sub, capiō], *undertake.*

<sup>1</sup> **Causā**. See p. 209, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> **Inter bibendum**.

<sup>3</sup> Express in three ways.

<sup>4</sup> *Put an end to = make an end of.*

<sup>5</sup> *Entertain the hope = come into the hope.*

<sup>6</sup> What case with **potior**?

<sup>7</sup> Why must the subjunctive be used? What tense of the subjunctive to express future time? What form expresses the immediate future?

## READING LESSONS.

### LETTERS: CICERO TO HIS WIFE TERENTIA.

437.

B.C. 49.

Sī valēs, bene est, valeō.<sup>1</sup> Dā operam<sup>2</sup> ut convalēscās. Quod opus<sup>3</sup> erit, ut<sup>4</sup> rēs tempusque postulat, prōvideās<sup>5</sup> atque administrēs; et ad mē dē omnibus rēbus quam<sup>6</sup> saepissimē litterās mittās. Valē.

438.

B.C. 49.

S. V. B. E. E.<sup>7</sup> V. Valētūdinem tuam velim<sup>8</sup> cūrēs<sup>9</sup> diligētissimē.<sup>10</sup> Nam mihi et<sup>11</sup> scriptum et nūntiātum est tē<sup>12</sup> in febrim subitō incidisse. Quod<sup>13</sup> celeriter mē fēcistī dē Caesaris litterīs certiōrem,<sup>14</sup> fēcistī mihi grātum. Item posthāc, sī quid<sup>15</sup> opus erit,<sup>16</sup> sī quid acciderit novī,<sup>17</sup> faciēs<sup>18</sup> ut sciam. Cūrā ut valeās. Valē.

<sup>1</sup> The Romans often began their letters with these five words, or rather with the abbreviations S. V. B. E. V.

<sup>2</sup> Give labor = try.

<sup>3</sup> An indeclinable noun, *need*; *opus est*, is necessary.

<sup>4</sup> What indicates that *ut* does not mean *in order that*?

<sup>5</sup> The hortatory subjunctive. See 390.

<sup>6</sup> *Quam* strengthens the superlative; *quam saepissimē*, as often as possible.

<sup>7</sup> For ego.

<sup>8</sup> I could wish; *volō*, I wish.

<sup>9</sup> Equivalent to *ut cūrēs*.

<sup>10</sup> Notice the emphatic position of the adverb, after the verb.

<sup>11</sup> Et . . . et, both . . . and.

<sup>12</sup> Subj. of *incidisse*. See 401.

<sup>13</sup> In that.

<sup>14</sup> Fēcistī . . . certiōrem, made more certain = informed.

<sup>15</sup> Anything; *quid* is regularly used instead of *aliquid* after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*.

<sup>16</sup> See note 3, above.

<sup>17</sup> Of new; partitive genitive.

<sup>18</sup> A future equivalent to the imperative. *Faciēs ut sciam*, inform me. What is it literally?

## 439.

B.C. 36.

Sī valēs, bene est.<sup>1</sup> Cōstituerāmus, ut<sup>2</sup> ad tē antea scripseram, obviam Cicerōnem<sup>3</sup> Caesarī mittere; sed mutāvimus cōsiliū, quia dē illius<sup>4</sup> adventū nihil adhibēbāmus. Dē cēteris rēbus, etsi nihil erat novī,<sup>5</sup> tamen quid velīmus<sup>6</sup> et quid hōc tempore putēmus<sup>6</sup> opus<sup>7</sup> esse ex Siccā<sup>8</sup> poteris cōgnōscere. Tulliam adhūc mēcum teneō. Valētūdinem tuam cūrā<sup>9</sup> diligenter. Valē.

## 440.

B.C. 46.

<sup>10</sup> S. V. B. E. V. Nōs neque dē Caesaris adventū neque dē litterīs quās Philotīmus habēre dēcitur, quidquam<sup>11</sup> adhūc certī<sup>12</sup> habēmus. Sī quid erit certī, faciam tē statim certiōrem.<sup>13</sup> Valētūdinem tuam fac<sup>14</sup> ut cūrēs. Valē.

<sup>1</sup> Compare this form of beginning a letter with those of the two preceding.

<sup>2</sup> Compare the use of *ut* in 437, line 2.

<sup>3</sup> That is, his son Cicero.

<sup>4</sup> That is, Caesar's.

<sup>5</sup> Genitive neuter of *novus* depending on *nihil*. Compare the same word in 438, and the note.

<sup>6</sup> Translate the words *quid velīmus*, etc., just as they stand.

<sup>7</sup> Compare *opus erit* in 437 and 438, and the note.

<sup>8</sup> A friend of Cicero.

<sup>9</sup> Compare with this the beginning and the ending of 438.

<sup>10</sup> Observe how nearly this letter

can be translated in the order of the Latin words.

<sup>11</sup> *Anything at all*. To express *anything at all*, after a negative word, as here after *neque*, the Romans used *quidquam*, not *aliquid*. See 279. 6.

<sup>12</sup> Genitive neuter of *certus*, depending on *quidquam*. Compare *novi* in 438 after *quid*, and in 439 after *nihil*.

<sup>13</sup> Compare *fecisti certiōrem* in 438, and the note.

<sup>14</sup> See p. 150, note. *Fac ut cūrēs*, be sure to take care. What is the literal meaning? Compare with this the endings of the two preceding letters.



FABLES.

441.

DĒ VITIIS HOMINUM.

Jūppiter nōbīs<sup>1</sup> duās pērās imposuit: alteram,<sup>2</sup> quae nostris vitiis replēta est, post tergum nōbīs dedit; alteram<sup>3</sup> autem, quā<sup>4</sup> aliōrum vitia continentur, ante pectus nostrum<sup>4</sup> suspendit. Quārē nōn vidēmus quae<sup>5</sup> ipsī peccāmus; sī autem aliī peccant, statim eōs vituperāmus.

442.

MULIER ET GALLĪNA.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae eī<sup>6</sup> cotīdiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit illam<sup>7</sup> aurī massam intus cēlāre, et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod<sup>8</sup> in aliīs gallīnis reperīrī solet.<sup>9</sup> Itaque dum mājōribus dīvitiīs inhiat,<sup>10</sup> etiam minōrēs<sup>11</sup> perdidit.

443.

VULPĒS ET ŪVA.

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōnspicāta<sup>12</sup> ad illam subsiliit omnium vīrium suārum contentiōne,<sup>13</sup> sī eam forte attingere posset.

<sup>1</sup> With *imposuit*; *has placed on us*.

<sup>2</sup> *Alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other*.

<sup>3</sup> *Quā* = *in quā pērā*.

<sup>4</sup> Compare *ante pectus nostrum* with *post tergum nōbīs*.

<sup>5</sup> *What we sin* = *what sins we commit*. On *ipsī*, see 270. 4.

<sup>6</sup> *For her*.

<sup>7</sup> *Illam* = *illam gallīnam*, subject of *cēlāre*.

<sup>8</sup> *Nisi quod* = *praeter id quod*.

<sup>9</sup> *Is wont* = *is usually*.

<sup>10</sup> *Gapes for* = *is greedy for*. Notice here a peculiarity of the Latin: the present is used after *dum*, though the perfect *perdidit* follows. The English idiom requires us to translate such a present by the imperfect, *was greedy for*.

<sup>11</sup> Supply the Latin noun in the proper form.

<sup>12</sup> Perfect participle of *cōnspicor*, agreeing with *vulpēs*. Translate by the present participle.

<sup>13</sup> *With the exertion*.



Tandem dēfatigāta inānī iabōre discēdēns, “At nunc etiam,” inquit, “acerbae<sup>1</sup> sunt, nec eās<sup>1</sup> in viā reptās<sup>2</sup> tollerem.”<sup>3</sup>

## 444.

## RŪSTICUS ET CANIS FIDĒLIS.

Rūsticus in agrōs exiit ad opus suum. Fīliolum, quī in cūnīs jacēbat, reliquit canī<sup>4</sup> fidēlī atque validō custōdiendum.<sup>5</sup> Adrēpsit anguis immānis, quī puerulum exstinctūrus erat. Sed custōs fidēlis corripit eum dentibus acūtīs, et, dum eum necāre studet,<sup>6</sup> cūnās simul ēvertit super exstinctum anguem. Paulō post ex arvō rediit agricola; cum cūnās ēversās cruentumque canis rictum vidēret,<sup>7</sup> irā accenditur.<sup>8</sup> Temerē igitur custōdem filioli interfecit ligōne, quem manibus tenēbat. Sed ubi cūnās restituit,<sup>9</sup> super anguem occīsum repperit puerum vīvum et incolumem. Paenitentia facinoris<sup>10</sup> sēra<sup>11</sup> fuit.

## 445.

## PUER MENDĀX.

Puer in prātō ovēs pāscēbat,<sup>12</sup> atque per jocum clāmitābat, ut sibi auxilium ferrētur, quasi lupus gregem esset adortus. Agricolaē undique succurrēbant, neque<sup>13</sup> lupum inveniēbant. Ita ter quaterque sē clūsōs ā puerō vīdērunt. Deinde<sup>14</sup> cum ipse<sup>15</sup> lupus aggredērētur, et puer rē vērā<sup>16</sup> implōrāret au-

<sup>1</sup> The plural, as if ūvae had been used.

<sup>2</sup> Eās reptās, *them found as if I had found them.*

<sup>3</sup> Would I pick them up.

<sup>4</sup> The so called dative of the agent with custōdiendum. Translate, *left for his . . . dog to guard.*

<sup>5</sup> Literally, *to be guarded.*

<sup>6</sup> See p. 213, note 10.

<sup>7</sup> For the subjunctive, see 373.

<sup>8</sup> Present for perfect, called *historical present.*

<sup>9</sup> Translate as if it were restituerat; after ubi, ut, and postquam, meaning *when*, the perfect indicative is commonly used, but it is best rendered by the pluperfect.

<sup>10</sup> Translate, *for the deed.*

<sup>11</sup> Too late.

<sup>12</sup> The imperfect, denoting customary action; render, *used to tend.*

<sup>13</sup> But . . . not.

<sup>14</sup> See p. 106, note 1.

<sup>15</sup> Really. See 270. 6.

<sup>16</sup> Rē vērā, *in earnest.*

xilium, nēmō gregī subvēnit,<sup>1</sup> et ovēs lupī praeda<sup>2</sup> sunt factae. Mendacī hominī<sup>3</sup> nōn crēdimus, etiam cum vērā dīcit.

446.

SENEX ET MORS.

Senex quīdam līgna in silvā ceciderat,<sup>4</sup> et, fasce in umerōs sublātō,<sup>5</sup> domum redīre coepit. Cum fatīgātus esset<sup>6</sup> et onere et itinere, dēposuit līgna, et, senectūtis<sup>7</sup> et inopiae<sup>7</sup> miserīās sēcum reputāns, clārā vōce invocāvit mortem, ut sē omnibus malīs<sup>8</sup> liberāret. Mox adest<sup>9</sup> mors et interrogat quid vellet. Tum senex perterritus: "Prō! hunc lignōrum fascem, quaesō, umerīs<sup>10</sup> meīs impōnās."<sup>11</sup>



447.

VULPĒS ET LEŌ.

Vulpēs nunquam leōnem vīderat. Cum huīc forte occurrisset, ita exterrita est, ut paene morerētur<sup>12</sup> formīdine.<sup>13</sup> Eundem cōspicāta est iterum. Tum extinuit illa quidem, sed nēquāquam ut anteā. Cum tertiō<sup>14</sup> leōnī obviam facta esset, adeō nōn perterrita fuit,<sup>15</sup> ut auderet<sup>12</sup> accēdere propius et colloquī cum eō.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *succurrō*. See 343. How does the meaning *help* come from the primitive meaning?

<sup>2</sup> Predicate nominative.

<sup>3</sup> Why dative? See 343.

<sup>4</sup> From *caedō*, not *cadō*.

<sup>5</sup> From *tollō*, not *sufferō*.

<sup>6</sup> For the subjunctive, see 373.

<sup>7</sup> Notice the order: the genitives coming first are made emphatic.

<sup>8</sup> Abl. of separation. See 130.

<sup>9</sup> See p. 214, note 8.

<sup>10</sup> *Umeris* . . . *impōnās*, cf. *nōbis* . . . *imposuit* in 441.

<sup>11</sup> *Quaesō impōnās* = *quaesō ut impōnās*.

<sup>12</sup> Is this clause a *purpose* or *result* clause? See illustrative examples, 352 and 368.

Are the clauses beginning with *cum* *temporal* or *causal*? Read again the illustrative examples, 372 and 374.

<sup>13</sup> *Of fright*.

<sup>14</sup> *The third time*.

<sup>15</sup> *To such a degree was not frightened* = *was so far from being frightened*.

## 448. CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR, I., 1-5. — B.C. 58.

1. Gallia est omnis<sup>1</sup> dīvisā in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam<sup>2</sup> Aquītānī. tertiam quī<sup>3</sup> ipsōrum linguā<sup>4</sup> Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,<sup>5</sup> institūtis, lēgibus inter sē<sup>6</sup> differunt. Gallōs<sup>7</sup> ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereū quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae<sup>8</sup> longissimē absunt, minimeque<sup>9</sup> ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēmīnandōs<sup>10</sup> animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum<sup>11</sup> continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs<sup>12</sup> virtūte<sup>13</sup> praeceēdunt, quod fere cotīdiānīs proeliīs<sup>14</sup> cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs<sup>15</sup> fīnibus eōs<sup>16</sup> prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus<sup>17</sup> bellum gerunt. Eōrum<sup>18</sup> ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā<sup>19</sup> flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab<sup>20</sup> Sēquanīs et Helvētīīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septen-

<sup>1</sup> **omnis**: as a whole.

<sup>2</sup> **allam**: alteram in the sense of **secundam** would be more common.

<sup>3</sup> **quī**: supply mentally **īī**, as antecedent.

<sup>4</sup> **ipsōrum linguā**: in their own tongue.

<sup>5</sup> **linguā**: 260.

<sup>6</sup> **inter sē**: from each other. What literally?

<sup>7</sup> **Gallōs**: that is, the Celtic Gauls.

<sup>8</sup> **prōvinciae**: not reckoned a part of Gallia.

<sup>9</sup> **minimē . . . saepe**: very seldom.

<sup>10</sup> **effēmīnandōs**: 432 (2).

<sup>11</sup> **quibuscum**: 265, 3.

<sup>12</sup> **reliquōs Gallōs**: the rest of the Gauls.

<sup>13</sup> **virtūte**: see **linguā** and reference.

<sup>14</sup> **proeliīs**: 144, 145.

<sup>15</sup> **suīs**: refers to **Helvētīī**, the subject.

<sup>16</sup> **eōs . . . eōrum**: refer to **Germānīs**; **ipsī**, to **Helvētīī**.

<sup>17</sup> **fīnibus**: territories.

<sup>18</sup> **Eōrum**: of their country, though grammatically referring to **Hī omnēs**, or **Hōrum** above.

<sup>19</sup> **initium capit ā**: begins at.

<sup>20</sup> **ab**: on the side of.

triōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnacōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam<sup>1</sup> pertinet, spectat<sup>2</sup> inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is M. Messālā<sup>3</sup> et M. Pisōne cōsulibus rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et civitātī<sup>4</sup> persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suis cum omnibus cōpīs exīrent: per facile esse,<sup>5</sup> cum<sup>6</sup> virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae imperiō<sup>7</sup> potiri. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit,<sup>8</sup> quod undique loci<sup>9</sup> nātūrā Helvētīi continentur;<sup>10</sup> unā ex parte<sup>11</sup> flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum<sup>12</sup> Helvētium ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iurā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā<sup>13</sup> lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram<sup>14</sup> ab Helvētīs dividit. Hīs rēbus fiēbat<sup>15</sup> ut<sup>16</sup> et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs<sup>17</sup> bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte<sup>18</sup> hominēs<sup>19</sup> bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō

<sup>1</sup> ad Hispāniam: next to Spain.

<sup>2</sup> spectat: it lies or faces.

<sup>3</sup> M. Messālā . . . cōsulibus: 412, 6th example. The Romans indicated the year by naming the consuls. This was in B.C. 61.

<sup>4</sup> civitātī: 342 and 343.

<sup>5</sup> per facile esse: (saying that) it was very easy. 403.

<sup>6</sup> cum . . . praestārent: since they surpassed. 375.

<sup>7</sup> imperiō: 304.

<sup>8</sup> Id . . . persuāsit: he persuaded this (id) to them (eīs) = he persuaded them to this course the more easily on this account (hōc).

<sup>9</sup> loci: of their country.

<sup>10</sup> continentur: has not the same meaning in chap. 1.

<sup>11</sup> unā ex parte: on one side.

<sup>12</sup> agrum: country.

<sup>13</sup> tertiā: i.e., tertiā ex parte.

<sup>14</sup> prōvinciam nostram: see p. 216, n. 8.

<sup>15</sup> Hīs rēbus fiēbat: the consequence of this was. Lit., it was coming about from these things. fiēbat: 327.

<sup>16</sup> ut . . . vagārentur: see 368.

<sup>17</sup> finitimīs: 117.

<sup>18</sup> quā ex parte: and for this reason, quā = et eā, parte = causā.

<sup>19</sup> hominēs: (being) men.

multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī<sup>1</sup> atque fortitudinis angustōs<sup>2</sup> sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem mīlia passuum<sup>3</sup> CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.<sup>4</sup>

3. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī, cōstituērunt ea quae<sup>5</sup> ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum<sup>6</sup> numerum coēmere, sēmentēs<sup>7</sup> quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmenti suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiā cōfirmāre. Ad<sup>8</sup> eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt;<sup>9</sup> in tertium annum<sup>10</sup> profectiōem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi<sup>11</sup> lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscepit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō,<sup>12</sup> Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cūjus pater rēgnum<sup>13</sup> in<sup>14</sup> Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut<sup>15</sup> rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigī Aeduō, frātrī Divitiaci, quī eō tempore princīpātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur<sup>16</sup> persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat. Perfacile<sup>17</sup> factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvi-

<sup>1</sup> glōria bellī: *renown in war.*

<sup>2</sup> angustōs: *too narrow.*

<sup>3</sup> mīlia passuum: *thousands of paces = miles.* 340. The Roman passus was five feet, and a thousand of them made a Roman mile. Was this longer or shorter than our mile?

<sup>4</sup> patēbant: *extended.*

<sup>5</sup> ea quae: *such things as.*

<sup>6</sup> quam māximum numerum: *the greatest possible number.*

<sup>7</sup> sēmentēs . . . facere: *to make the greatest possible sowings = to sow as much land as possible.*

<sup>8</sup> Ad . . . cōficiendās: 432.

<sup>9</sup> dūxērunt: *they thought.*

<sup>10</sup> in tertium annum: *for the third year.* Mark the force of *in*.

<sup>11</sup> sibi: *upon himself.*

<sup>12</sup> Casticō: see p. 217, n. 4.

<sup>13</sup> rēgnum: *sovereignty.*

<sup>14</sup> in: *among.*

<sup>15</sup> ut . . . occupāret: *to seize; depends on persuādet.*

<sup>16</sup> ut idem cōnārētur: *to make the same attempt.*

<sup>17</sup> Perfacile . . . perficere: *to accomplish their undertakings, (cōnāta perficere) he proves to them to be very easy to do (factū). On factū, see 433, 2.*

tātis imperium obtentūrus esset :<sup>1</sup> nōn esse dubium<sup>2</sup> quā tōtius Galliae plūrimū<sup>3</sup> Helvētīi possent ; sē<sup>4</sup> suis cōpiis suoque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adducti inter sē<sup>5</sup> fidem et jūsjūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō,<sup>6</sup> per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae<sup>7</sup> sēsē<sup>8</sup> potiri posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs<sup>9</sup> est Helvētiis per indicium<sup>10</sup> ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinclis<sup>11</sup> causam dicere<sup>12</sup> coēgērunt. Damnātum<sup>13</sup> poenam sequi oportēbat ut igni cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā<sup>14</sup> causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad jūdicium<sup>15</sup> omnem suam familiam ad hominum mīlia decem undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suos, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit ; per eōs nē<sup>16</sup> causam diceret sē ēripuit. Cum civitās ob eam rem<sup>17</sup> incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātus

<sup>1</sup> **obtentūrus esset** : *was about to get*. Observe that **obtinēō** has not the same meaning as before.

<sup>2</sup> **nōn esse dubium** : depends upon a verb of saying, understood. **400.**

<sup>3</sup> **plūrimū . . . possent** : *were the strongest*.

<sup>4</sup> **sē** : *that he*, subject accusative of **conciliātūrum** (esse). **401.**

<sup>5</sup> **inter sē . . . dant** : *they give among themselves = they exchange*.

<sup>6</sup> **rēgnō occupātō** : *if they should seize the supreme power*. **412.**

<sup>7</sup> **tōtius Galliae** : find **potior** with the ablative in chap. 2.

<sup>8</sup> **sēsē** : subject accusative of **posse**.

<sup>9</sup> **Ea rēs** : *this conspiracy*. When **rēs** occurs, consider what word other than "thing" will best ex-

press the meaning. Note where it has already occurred.

<sup>10</sup> **per indicium** : that is, **per indicēs**, *through informers*.

<sup>11</sup> **ex vinclis** : we should say, *in chains*.

<sup>12</sup> **dicere** : *plead*.

<sup>13</sup> **Damnātum . . . cremārētur** : the clause **ut . . . cremārētur** explains **poenam** ; the punishment of being burned alive was bound (**oportēbat**) to follow, if he should be condemned. With **damnātum** supply **eum**, which is the object of **sequi**, as **poenam** is the subject accusative.

<sup>14</sup> **Diē cōstitutā** : *on the day appointed*. **136.**

<sup>15</sup> **jūdicium** : *trial*.

<sup>16</sup> **nē . . . diceret** : depends on **sē ēripuit**, *he escaped pleading his case*. He overawed the court.

<sup>17</sup> **rem** : *act*. See note 9.



cōgerent,<sup>1</sup> Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut<sup>2</sup> Helvētiū arbitrantur, quīn<sup>3</sup> ipse sibi mortem cōscīverit.

5. Post ējus mortem nihilō minus<sup>4</sup> Helvētiū id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut<sup>5</sup> ē fīnibus suis exeant. Ubi jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia numerō ad<sup>6</sup> duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant<sup>7</sup> combūrun, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā<sup>8</sup> parātiōrēs ad<sup>9</sup> omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium<sup>10</sup> molita cibāria sibi quemque<sup>11</sup> domō efferre jubent. Persuādent<sup>12</sup> Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs fīnitimīs utī eōdem ūsī<sup>13</sup> cōsiliō, oppidīs suis vicisque exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs<sup>14</sup> proficiscantur; Boiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Norēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs<sup>15</sup> ad sē sociōs<sup>16</sup> sibi adsciscunt.

<sup>1</sup> cōgerent: after cum, like cōnārētur. 373.

<sup>2</sup> ut: as.

<sup>3</sup> quīn . . . cōscīverit: but that he himself decreed death to himself = that he died by his own hand.

The golden rule for discovering the meaning of a Latin sentence is, Take the words in the Latin order. Four-fifths of the following chapter may be read mentally this way. Try it. When once the meaning is clear, translate; that is, render into good English.

<sup>4</sup> nihilō minus: none the less.

<sup>5</sup> ut . . . exeant: that is, to go forth from their country.

<sup>6</sup> ad: about.

<sup>7</sup> portātūrī erant: 422.

<sup>8</sup> sublātā: from tollō, remove.

<sup>9</sup> ad . . . subeunda: see ad

eās rēs cōficiendās, chap. 3, and the note; subeunda, from subeō: 327.

<sup>10</sup> trium mēnsium: for three months.

<sup>11</sup> quemque: 279, 4.

<sup>12</sup> Persuādent Rauracīs . . . utī . . . proficiscantur: find the same constructions with persuādeō in chap. 3.

<sup>13</sup> ūsī: from ūtor. Translate, to adopt the same plan, burn their towns and villages, and set out with them. But how literally?

<sup>14</sup> cum iīs: that is, with the Helvetii.

<sup>15</sup> receptōs . . . adsciscunt: it is best to translate receptōs as if it were recipiunt et.

<sup>16</sup> sociōs, as allies, appositive to Boiōs.

449.

VOCABULARY.

For words not found here, see general Vocabulary.

**acceptus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of *accipio*], *acceptable, agreeable*.  
**ad-dūcō**, 3, -xī, -ctum, *influence, induce*.  
**ad-ficiō** (af-), 3, -fēcī, -fectum [*faciō*], *move, affect*.  
**ad-sciscō**, 3, -scivī, -scitum, *take to one's self, take*.  
**Aeduī**, -ōrum, m. plu., *the Æduans*.  
**Aeduus**, -a, -um, adj., *Æduan*.  
**angustus**, -a, -um, adj., *narrow*.  
**ante**, adv., *before*.  
**Aquītānī**, -ōrum, m. plu., *the Aquitanians*.  
**Aquītānia**, -ae, f., *Aquitania, a province of southern Gaul*.  
**biennium**, -i, n. [*bis, annus*], *space of two years*.  
**Boī**, -ōrum, m. plu., *the Boii*.  
**Casticus**, -ī, m., *Casticus*.  
**Catamantaloedēs**, -is, m., *Catamantaloedes*.  
**Celtae**, -ārum, m. plu., *the Celts*.  
**cibārius**, -a, -um, adj. [*cibus*], *pertaining to food; as noun in plu., provisions, supplies*.  
**co-emō**, 3, -ēmī, -emptum [*com*], *buy up*.  
**com-būrō**, 3, -būssī, -būstum [*ūrō*], *burn up, destroy*.  
**com-meō**, 1 [*eō*], *come and go, resort*.  
**com-parō**, 1, *furnish, procure*.  
**con-ciliō**, 1 [*concilium*], *bring together, gain over, win*.  
**con-dūcō**, 3, -xī, -ductum [*com*], *lead together, collect*.  
**cōn-firmō**, 1 [*com*], *establish, appoint, assure, assert*.  
**con-jūrātiō**, -ōnis, f. [*conjūrō*], *conspire, conspiracy*.

**cōn-sciscō**, 3, -scivī, -scitum [*com*] *adjudge*.  
**continenter**, adv. [*continēns*], *continuously, incessantly*.  
**con-tineō**, 2, -uī, -tentum [*com, teneō*], *bound, hem in*.  
**cotīdianus**, -a, -um, adj. [*quot, diēs*], *daily*.  
**cremō**, 1, *burn*.  
**cultus**, -ūs, m. [*colō, cultivate*], *civilization, culture*.  
**cupidus**, -a, -um, adj. [*cupiō*], *desirous*.  
**dē-ligō**, 3, -lēgī, -lēctum [*legō*], *choose out, select*.  
**dictiō**, -ōnis, f. [*dicō*], *a saying, a pleading*.  
**ditissimus**, -a, -um, *same as divitissimus, richest*.  
**dividō**, 3, -visī, -visum, *divide, separate*.  
**Divitiacus**, -ī, m., *Divitiacus*.  
**Dumnorix**, -igis, m., *Dumnorix*.  
**ef-feminō**, 1 [*ex, femina, a female*], *make effeminate, weaken*.  
**ex-sequor**, 3, -secūtus, *follow out; assert, maintain*.  
**extrēmus**, -a, -um [*superl. of ex-ter*], *furthest, remotest, extreme*.  
**ex-ūrō**, 3, -ūssī, -ūstum, *burn up, consume*.  
**facile**, adv. [*facilis*], *easily*.  
**famīlia**, -ae, f. [*famulus, slave*], *household; dependants*.  
**Garumna**, -ae, m., *the Garonne*.  
**Helvētī**, -ōrum, m., *the Helvetians*.  
**Helvētius**, -a, -um, *Helvetian*.  
**hūmānitās**, -ātis, f. [*hūmānus*], *refinement*.  
**im-portō**, 1 [*lu*], *bring in, import*.



- in-cendō**, 1, -dī, -cēsum [candō, glow], *set fire to, burn.*  
**in-citō**, 1, incite, arouse.  
**in-dūcō**, 3, -xī, -ductum, bring into; arouse, persuade, induce.  
**inferior**, -iōris, adj. [comp. of inferior, below], lower.  
**institūtum**, -ī, n. [instituo], custom, habit.  
**jumentum**, -ī, n. [jungō], beast of burden.  
**Jūra**, -ae, m., Jura, a mountain.  
**jūs-jurandum**, juris-jurandī, n. [jūs, jūrō], oath.  
**lātē**, adv. [lātus], widely, extensively.  
**lātitudō**, -inis, f. [lātus], breadth, width.  
**Latobrigī**, -ōrum, m. plu., the Latobrigi.  
**lēgatiō**, -ōnis, f. [lēgō, depute], embassy.  
**Lemannus**, -ī, m., Lake Geneva.  
**longitūdō**, -inis, f. [longus], length.  
**mātrimōnium**, -ī, n. [māter], marriage.  
**Mātrona**, -ae, m., the Marne.  
**mercātor**, -ōris, m. [mercor, trade], trader, merchant.  
**Messāla**, -ae, m., Messala, a Roman consul.  
**molō**, 3, -uī, -itum, grind.  
**nihilum**, -ī, n., nothing.  
**nōbilitās**, -ātis, f. [nōbilitas], the nobility, the nobles.  
**Norēla**, -ae, f., Noreia.  
**Nōricus**, -a, -um, adj., of Noricum.  
**ob**, prep. w. acc., on account of.  
**ob-aerātus**, -ī, m. [aes], debtor.  
**Orgetorix**, -igis, m., Orgetorix.  
**per-facilis**, -e, adj., very easy.  
**per-ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], make thoroughly, perform, accomplish.  
**per-moveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, move thoroughly, excite, arouse.  
**per-suādēō**, 2, -suābī, -suāsum, persuade, induce.  
**per-tineō**, 2, -uī, -ter-tum [teneō], reach, extend; tend, concern.  
**Pisō**, -ōnis, m., Piso, a Roman consul.  
**plūrimum**, adv. [plūrimus], most; very much.  
**prae-cēdō**, 3, -cēs:ī, cēssum, go before; surpass, excel.  
**praeter-quam**, adv., beyond, except.  
**prīncipātus**, -ūs, m. [prīnceps], pre-eminence, sovereignty.  
**privātus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of privō], private, isolated.  
**probō**, 1, show, prove.  
**profectiō**, -ōnis, f. [proficiscor], setting out, departure.  
**propterea quod**, because.  
**Rauraci**, -ōrum, m. plu., the Rauraci.  
**reditiō**, -ōnis, f. [redeō], return.  
**Rhodanus**, -ī, m., the Rhone.  
**sēmentis**, -is, f., sowing.  
**septemtriō**, -ōnis, m., in plu., the seven stars of the Great Dipper; north.  
**Sēquana**, -ae, f., the Seine.  
**Sēquani**, -ōrum, m. plu., the Sequanians.  
**Sēquanus**, -a, -um, adj., Sequanian.  
**sup-petō**, 3, -ivī, -iī, -itum [sub], be at hand, in store.  
**suspiciō**, -ōnis, f. [suspīcor], suspicion.  
**Tulingī**, -ōrum, m. plu., the Tulingi.  
**ūnā**, adv. [ūnus], at the same time, together.  
**vergō**, 3, no perf. or sup., turn, slope, lie.  
**vinculum**, (vinculum) -ī, n. [vinciō], bond, chain.

ōtum, *nove*  
*se.*  
-suāsum,  
m [teneō],  
*cern.*  
*Roman con-*  
plūrimus],  
ssum, *go be-*  
*beyond, ex-*  
[princeps],  
*ity.*  
[P. of pri-  
roficiscor],  
*use.*  
lu., *the Rau-*  
eō], *return.*  
*Rhone.*  
*ag.*  
, *in plu., the*  
*reat Dipper;*  
*Seine.*  
lu., *the Sequa-*  
j., *Sequanian.*  
-itum [sub],  
aspicor], *sus-*  
a., *the Tulingi.*  
*the same time,*  
or sup., *turn,*  
n) -ī, n. [vin-

## VOCABULARIES.



## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

IN this vocabulary words inclosed in brackets are, in most cases, those which are given in Latin lexicons and special vocabularies as the primitives of those against which they are set. But, except in compounds, it would be more correct to regard the bracketed words as *connected with the others in formation from a common root or stem*. It is on this ground that such instances will be found as *metus* referred to *metuō*, and *metuō* to *metus*. Neither is, strictly speaking, derived from the other, but both are formed from the stem *metu*.

Words printed in *Gothic Italic* type are at once derivatives and definitions. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in SMALL CAPITALS.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupil should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

### ā or ab

**ā** or **ab**, prep. w. abl., *away from, by*.  
**ab-dō**, 3, -didī, -ditum, *remove, conceal*. Cf. *cēlō*.  
**ab-dūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, take off*.  
**ab-eō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, *go from, go off, go away*. (327.)  
**ab-iciō**, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], *throw off, throw down*.  
**ab-ies**, -etis, F., *fir-tree*. (11. 4.)  
**ab-sum**, -esse, āfuī, *be away, absent, distant*; with **ā** or **ab** and abl.  
**āc**, conj., *see atque*.  
**ac-cēdō**, 3, -cēssī, -cēssum [ad], *go or come near, approach*. ACCEDE. Cf. *appropinquō*.  
**ac-cendō**, 3, -dī, -cēnsūm [ad, and supposed candō], *kindle, inflame*.  
**accidō**, 3, -cidī, — [ad, cadō], *fall upon, fall out, happen*. ACCIDENT. Cf. *incidō* and *eveniō*.  
**accipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [ad, capiō], *(take to), receive, accept; suffer*.

### ad-imō

**accūsō**, 1 [ad, causa], *accuse*.  
**ācer**, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, keen; active*. (150.) ACRID. Cf. *acūtus*.  
**acerbus**, -a, -um, adj. [ācer], *bitter, sour, harsh*.  
**aciēs**, -ēi, F. [ācer], *edge; order of battle*.  
**ācritēr**, adv. [ācer], *sharply, eagerly*.  
**acūtus**, -a, -um, adj. [acuō, sharpen], *sharp*. Cf. *ācer*.  
**ad**, prep. w. acc., *to, towards, near*.  
**ad-eō**, adv., *to this, thus far; so, so very*.  
**ad-eō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, *go to, approach, visit*. (327.)  
**ad-ferō**, adferre, attulī, allātum (adl), *bear to, bring*. (321.)  
**ad-hūc**, adv., *hitherto, up to this time*.  
**ad-flō**, 1, *blow upon*.  
**ad-iciō**, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], *(throw to or against), add, join to*.  
**ad-imō**, 3, -ēmī, -ēptum [emō], *(take to one's self from another), take away, remove*.

ad-ipiscor, 3, adeptus [apiscor],  
*get, obtain. Cf. potior.*

ad-jungō, 3, -jūnxī, -jūnetum, *add, join. ADJUNCT.*

ad-juvō, 1, -jūvī, -jūtum, *aid, help.*

ad-ministrō, 1, *manage, do, perform, administer.*

ad-miror, 1, *wonder at, admire.*

ad-modum, adv., *very.*

ad-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum (*move up or towards*), *apply, employ.*

ad-orior, 4, -ortus (*rise up against*), *attack. Cf. aggredior.*

ad-rēpō, 3, -rēpsī, -rēptum, *creep towards, steal slowly up.*

ad-spiciō (asp), 3, -spexī, -spec-tum [*ad, speciō*], *look at; look.*

adspectus, -ūs, m. [*adspiciō*], *sight, appearance, aspect.*

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī (*affuī*), *be present, stand by, side with, w. dat.*

adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f. [*ado-lēscō, grow*], *youth, young person. ADOLESCENCE. Cf. juvenis.*

ad-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, *come to, arrive. Cf. perveniō.*

adventus, -ūs, m. [*adveniō*], *approach, arrival. ADVENT.*

ad-versus, prep. w. acc., *against, towards.*

ad-versus, -a, -um, adj. [*P. of ad-vertō*], *opposite, opposed, adverse; rēs adversae, adversity.*

aedificium, -ī, n. [*aedificō*], *building. EDIFICE.*

aedificō, 1 [*aedis, faciō*], *build.*

aedis (ūs), -is, f., *building, temple; plur., house.*

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj., *sick, weak, feeble. (71.)*

Aemilius, -ī, m., *Aemilius, a Roman consul. (79.)*

aequālis, -e, adj. [*aequus*], *equal; noun, equal in age, companion.*

aequus, -a, -um, adj., *level, equal; calm.*

āēr, āeris, m., *air.*

aereus, -a, -um [*aes*], *of copper, of bronze.*

aes, aeris, n., *copper, bronze; money.*

aestās, -ātis, f., *summer.*

aestus, -ūs, m., *tide.*

aetas, -ātis, f., *age, time of life. (105.)*

affligō, 3, -xī, -ctum [*ad*], *cast down, prostrate, ruin.*

Āfrica, -ae, f., *Africa.*

Āfricānus, -ī, m. [*Āfrica*], *Africanus, surname of Scipio.*

Āfricus, -ī, m., *south-west (wind).*

ager, agrī, m., *field, territory. Cf. campus. (65.)*

agger, -eris, m. [*ad, gerō*], (*what is carried to, i.e.*) *materials for a mound; mound, rampart.*

aggredior, 3, -gressus [*ad, gradior*], *go to; attack. AGGRESSIVE. Cf. adrior.*

agitō, 1 [*frequentative of agō*], *shake, disturb, vex, chase. AGITATE.*

agnōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nitum [*ad, (g)nōscō, know*], *recognize. Cf. cōgnōscō.*

agō, 3, ēgī, āctum, *drive, lead, act, do.*

agricola, -ae, m. [*ager, colō*], *farmer.*

agri cultūra, -ae, f. [*ager, colō*], *agriculture. Cf. agricola.*

āla, -ae, f., *wing.*

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white. Cf. candidus.*

Alexander, -drī, m., *Alexander, king of Macedon.*

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [*alius*], *belonging to another; another's. ALIEN.*

**alimentum**, -ī, n. [alō], *nourishment, food, provisions.*

**aliquandō**, adv. [alius], *at some time, ever; formerly, once.* Cf. ōlim.

**aliquis**, -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron., *some one, some.* (279.)

**alius**, -a, -ud, adj., *another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another.* (201.)

**al-loquor** [adl], 3, -locūtus [ad], *speak to, address.*

**alō**, 3, -uī, -itum and -tum, *nourish, support, strengthen; keep.*

**Alpēs**, -ium, f., *the Alps.*

**alter**, -era, -erum, adj., *the other (of two); alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other; as num. adj., second.* (200.)

**altus**, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep.*

**ambō**, -ae, -ō, num. adj., *both.*

**ambulō**, 1, *walk, take a walk.*

**America**, -ae, f., *America.*

**amicitia**, -ae, f. [amicus], *friendship.*

**amicus**, -a, -um, adj. [amō], *friendly; noun, friend.*

**ā-mittō**, 3, -mīsi, -missum, *send away, let go, lose.* Cf. perdō.

**amnis**, -is, m., *river.* (154, 172.)

**amō**, 1, *love, like, be fond of.* (319.)

**amplus**, -a, -um, adj., *large, splendid, renowned.* AMPLE.

**an**, conj., *or, used in the second member of a double question.*

**ancilla**, -ae, f., *maid-servant.*

**ancora**, -ae, f., *anchor.*

**Ancus**, -ī, *Ancus, fourth king of Rome.*

**Androclus**, -ī, m., *Androclus.*

**anguis**, -is, m., *snake, serpent.* (154.)

**angustiae**, -arum, f. [angustus, narrow], *narrow pass.* Cf. Eng. "narrows."

**animal**, -ālis, n. [anima, breath], *living being, animal.* (149.)

**animus**, -ī, m., *mind, soul, spirit.* (273.)

**annus**, -ī, m., *year.* ANNUAL.

**ānser**, -eris, m., *goose.*

**ante**, prep. w. acc., *before.*

**anteā**, adv. [ante], *before.*

**ante-cēdō**, 3, -cēssi, -cēssum, *go before.* Cf. anteeō.

**ante-eō**, -īre, -īi, —, *go before, surpass.* Cf. antecēdō.

**antiquus**, -a, -um, adj. [ante], *old, ancient.* ANTIQUITY. Cf. vetus.

**ānulus**, -ī, m., *ring, finger-ring.*

**aper**, aprī, m., *wild boar.*

**aperiō**, 4, -uī, -tum, *open.*

**apertus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of aperiō], *uncovered, open.*

**ap-pellō**, 1 [ad], *address, call, name.* —  
APPEAL.

**ap-petō**, 3, -ivī, or -īi, -itum [ad], *seek after, strive for.*

**ap-propinquō**, 1 [ad], *come near, approach.* Cf. accēdō.

**aptō**, 1, *fit, apply, adjust.* ADAPT.

**apud**, prep. w. acc., *with, by, near, among.*

**Āpūlla**, -ae, f., *Apulia, a division of Italy.*

**aqua**, -ae, f., *water.* AQUATIC.

**aquila**, -ae, f., *eagle.*

**āra**, -ae, f., *altar.*

**arātrum**, -ī, n. [arō], *plough.*

**arbitror**, 1, *think, suppose, believe.* (429.)

**arbor**, -oris, f., *tree.*

**arceō**, 2, -uī, — *keep off.*

**arcus**, -ūs, m., *bow.* ARC.

**Arlovistus**, -ī, m., *Ariovistus, king of a German tribe.*

**arma**, -orum, n. [armō], *arms, weapons, tools.*

**armō**, 1 [arma], *arm, equip.*

**arō**, 1, *plough.*

**Arpīnum**, -ī, n., *Arpinum*, a town in Italy.

**ars**, artis, f., *art*.

**arvum**, -ī, n. [arō], *ploughed land, field*.

**arx**, arcis, f., *citadel*. (163.)

**Ascalaphus**, -ī, m., *Ascalaphus*.

**Asia**, -ae, f., *Asia*.

**asper**, -era, -erum, adj., *rough, harsh, severe*. ASPERITY.

**asylum**, -ī, n., *place of refuge, asylum*.

**at**, conj., *but*. (393.)

**āter**, -tra, -trum, adj., *black, sable*.

**Athēnae**, -ārum, f., *Athens*.

**Athēniēnsis**, -e, adj., [Athēnae], *of Athens, Athenian*.

**at-que** (before vowels and consonants, *āc* before consonants only) [ad, in addition], *and also, and especially, and*. Cf. et and -que.

**atrōx**, -ōcis, adj. [āter], *savage, fierce, harsh, cruel*. ATROCIOUS.

**Atticus**, -ī, m., *Atticus*, a friend of Cicero.

**attingō**, 3, -tigi, -tactum [ad, tangō], *touch, approach, arrive at, reach*.

**auctor**, -ōris, m. [augeō. increase], *maker, author*.

**auctōritās**, -ātis, f. [auctor], *counsel, advice, authority*.

**audācter**, adv. [audāx], *boldly*.

**audāx**, -ācis, adj. [audeō], *daring, bold*. (164). AUDACIOUS.

**audeō**, 2, ausus [audāx], *dare, be bold*. (p. 177, note 2.)

**audiō**, 4, *hear, listen*. (223.) AUDIENCE.

**au-ferō**, auferre, abstulī, ablātum [ab(s)], *bear off, carry away*. (321.) ABLATIVE.

**augeō**, 2, auxī, auctum, *increase, enlarge*.

**aureus**, -a, -um, adj. [aurum], *of gold, golden*.

**auris**, -is, f., *ear*.

**aurum**, -ī, n., *gold*.

**aut**, conj., *or*; aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*. Cf. vel.

**autem**, conj. (never the first word), *but, however, moreover*. (393.)

**autumnus**, -ī, m., *autumn*.

**auxillum**, -ī, n. [augeō], *help, aid, support*; plur., *auxiliaries*.

**avārus**, -a, -um, adj., *greedy, rapacious*. AVARICIOUS.

**ā-vertō**, 3, -tī, -sum, *turn away from, avert*.

**avis**, -is, f., *bird*. (154.)

**avunculus**, -ī, m. [diminutive of avus], *(maternal) uncle*.

**avus**, -ī, m., *grandfather*.

**barbarus**, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, barbarous, barbarian*.

**beātus**, -a, -um, adj. [beō, bless], *blessed, happy*. BEATITUDE.

**Belgae**, -ārum, m., *the Belgae, a Gallic tribe*.

**bellō**, 1 [bellum], *war, carry on war*. Cf. bellum gerō.

**bellum**, -ī, n. [bellō], *war*. (38.)

**bellus**, -a, -um, adj., *pretty, charming, lovely*.

**bene**, adv. [bonus], *well*.

**beneficium**, -ī n. [bene, faciō], *benefit, favor*.

**benignē**, adv. [benignus], *kindly*.

**benignus**, -a, -um, adj. [bene, genus], *(of good birth), kind, good*. BENIGNANT.

**bēstia**, -ae, f., *beast*.

**bibō**, 3, bibī, pōtum, *drink*. IMBIBE.

**bonum**, -ī, n. [bonus], *good thing, blessing*; plur., *goods, possessions*.



**bonus**, -a, -um, adj., comp. *melior*, superl. *optimus*; *good*. (71, 208.)  
**bōs**, *bovis*, m. and f., *ox*, *cow*. (262.)

**Bostonia**, -ae, f., *Boston*.  
**bracchium**, -ī, n., *arm*.  
**brevis**, -e, adj., *short*, *brief*.  
**Britanni**, -ōrum, m., *the Britons*.  
**Britannia**, -ae, f., *Britain*.  
**Brūtus**, -ī, m., *Brutus*, a *Roman* surname.

**C.**, abbreviation for *Gājus*.  
**cachinnō**, 1, *laugh aloud*. Cf. *rīdeō*.

**cadō**, 3, *cecidī*, *cāsum*, *fall*.  
**caecus**, -a, -um, adj., *blind*.  
**caedō**, 3, *cecidī*, *caesum*, *cut*, *cut to pieces*; *kill*.

**caelum**, -ī, n., *sky*, *heaven*.  
**caeruleus**, -a, -um, adj. [for *caeruleus*, from *caelum*], *dark-blue*.

**Caesar**, (J.), -aris, m., *Julius Caesar*, a *famous Roman*.

**Cālus**, -ī, m. See *Gājus*.  
**calathus**, -ī, m., *basket*.  
**calcar**, -āris, n. [*calx*, *heel*], *spur*. (149.)

**callēns**, -entis, adj. [P. of *calleō*, *be hard*], *hard*, *tough*.

**calliditās**, -ātis, f. [*callidus*, *cunning*], *shrewdness*, *cunning*.

**calor**, -ōris, m. [*caleō*, *be warm*], *heat*, *warmth*. CALORIC.

**Campānia**, -ae, f., *Campania*, a *division of Italy*.

**campus**, -ī, m., *field*. CAMP. Cf. *ager*.

**candidus**, -a, -um, adj. [*candeō*, *shine*], *bright*, *fair*, *white*. CANDID. Cf. *albus*.

**canis**, -is, m. and f., *dog*. (153.) CANINE.

**Cannae**, -ārum, f., *Cannae*, a *village in Apulia*.

**Cannēnsis**, -e, adj. [*Cannae*], of *Cannae*.

**Cantium**, -ī, n., *Kent* (in *Britain*).  
**cantō**, 1 [*canō*], *sing*. CHANT.

**cantus**, -ūs, m. [*canō*], *singing*, *song*. (278.) CHANT.

**capillus**, -ī, m., *hair* (of the head). CAPILLARY.

**capiō**, 3, *cēpī*, *captum*, *take*, *seize* (235); *cōnsilium capiō*, *adopt a plan*. CAPTURE.

**captivus**, -ī, m. [*capiō*], *captive*, *prisoner*.

**caput**, -itis, n., *head*. (105.) CAPITAL.

**Carbō**, -ōnis, m., *Carbo*, a *Roman*.

**carcer**, -eris, m., *prison*. INCARCERATE.

**careō**, 2, -uī, -itum, *be without*, *want*.

**carmen**, -inis, n., *song*, *poem*. (278.)  
**carō**, *carnis*, f., *flesh*.

**carpō**, 3, -sī, -tum, *pluck*.

**carrus**, -ī, m., *wagon*, *cart*. CAR.

**Carthāginīēnsis**, -e, adj. [*Carthāgō*], of *Carthage*, *Carthaginian*.

**Carthāgō**, -inis, f., *Carthage*, a *town in Africa*.

**Carthāgō Nova**, a *town in Spain*.

**cārus**, -a, -um, adj., *dear*, *precious*.

**castra**, -ōrum, n., *camp*.

**cāsus**, -ūs, m. [*cadō*], a *falling*; *misfortune*, *chance*.

**catellus**, -ī, m. [*diminutive of catulus*], *little dog*, *puppy*.

**Catīlina**, -ae, m., *Catiline*, a *famous Roman conspirator*.

**Catō**, -ōnis, m., *Cato*, a *celebrated Roman censor*.

**cauda**, -ae, f., *tail*.

**causa**, -ae, f., *cause*, *reason*; *causā* (after a genitive), *for the sake*.

**caveō**, 2, *cāvī*, *cautum*, *beware*, *guard against*.



**cēdō**, 3, cēssī, cēssum, *go, depart, withdraw; grant.*

**celer**, -eris, -ere, *adj., swift.* (179.)

**CELERITY.**

**celeriter**, *adv. [celer], swiftly.*

**cēlō**, 1, *conceal.* Cf. abdō.

**cēnseo**, 2, -uī, -um, *reckon; think, deem, be of opinion.* **CENSURE.** (429.)

**centum**, *num. adj., indecl., hundred.* **CENT.**

**Cerēs**, -eris, *f., Ceres, goddess of agriculture.* **CEREAL.**

**certē**, *adv. [certus], certainly, surely, of course.*

**certō**, 1, *contend, strive, vie with.*

**certus**, -a, -um, *adj., fixed, determined, certain, sure; certiore facio, make (one) more certain, inform.*

**[cēterus]**, -a, -um, *adj. (usually in plur.), the other, the rest.*

**cibus**, -ī, *m., food.* Cf. pābulum.

**Cicerō**, -ōnis, *m., Cicero, a famous Roman orator.*

**Cimbri**, -ōrum, *m., the Cimbri, a German tribe.*

**cingō**, 3, cinxī, cinetum, *bind, encircle, surround.*

**circiter**, *adv. [circus, circle], round about; about.*

**circum-dūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead around.*

**circum-siliō**, 4, -sī, — [saliō], *jump or hop around.*

**circum-venīō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, *surround; circumvent.*

**civis**, -is, *m. and f., citizen.* (154.)

**civitas**, -ātis, *f. [civis], (body of citizens), state; citizenship.* **CITY.**

**clādēs**, -is, *f., destruction, defeat, disaster.*

**clāmitō**, 1 [frequentative of clāmō], *cry out, call out.* Cf. exclāmō.

**clāmor**, -ōris, *m. [clāmō], shout, cry.* **CLAMOR.**

**clārus**, -a, -um, *adj., clear, renowned, famous; loud.*

**clāssis**, -is, *f., class of citizens; fleet.* (154.)

**cliēns**, -entis, *m., client.* (163.)

**coepī**, coepisse (defective verb, tenses from pres. stem wanting), *began.*

**coerceō**, 2, -uī, -itum [co(m), arceō, inclose], *confine, check, restrain.*

**cōgnōscō**, 3, -nōvī, -nitum [com, (g)nōscō], *learn, recognize, know.* Cf. āgnōscō.

**cōgō**, 3, -ēgī, -āctum [com, agō], *drive together, compel.*

**cohortor**, 1 [co(m), intensive], *exhort, urge, encourage.*

**Collātinus**, -ī, *m., Collatinus, surname of Lucius Tarquinius.*

**collēga (conl)**, -ae, *m. [legō], (one who is chosen with another), colleague.*

**colligō (conl)**, 3, -lēgī, -lectum [com, legō], *collect.*

**collis**, -is, *m., hill.* (154.) Cf. mōns.

**colloquium**, -ī, *n. [colloquor], conversation, colloquy.*

**col-loquor**, 3, -locūtus [com], *speak together, converse.*

**colō**, 3, coluī, cultum, *cultivate, till.* Cf. incolā, agricolā.

**colōnia**, -ae, *f. [colōnus, husbandman, colō], colony.*

**color**, -ōris, *m., color.*

**columba**, -ae, *f., dove.*

**com** (col, con, cor, co), *primitive form of cum, a prefix denoting completeness or union; sometimes intensive.*

**comes**, -itis, *m. and f. [comitor (com, eō)], comrade, companion.*

**comitor**, 1 [comes], *accompany, attend.*

**commeātus**, -ūs, M. [commeō, *go to and fro*], *passage, trip, expedition.*

**com-mittō**, 3, -mīsī, -mīssum, (*join together*), *commit*; proelium committere, *join battle, engage, begin fighting.*

**com-modus**, -a, -um, adj. (*that has proper measure*), *convenient, suitable.*

**com-moror**, 1, *stay, linger, delay, remain.*

**com-moveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, (*put in violent motion*), *shake, disturb, agitate.* COMMOTION.

**com-mūniō**, 4, (*fortify strongly*), *secure, intrench.*

**com-periō**, 4, -perī, -pertum, *ascertain, learn, find out.*

**com-pleō**, 2, -plēvī, -plētum, *fill out, fill up.* Cf. impleō.

**com-primō**, 3, -pressī, -pressum [premō], *press together; check, suppress.*

**con-cutiō**, 3, -cussī, -cussum [com, quatiō], *shake violently.*

**cōn-ferō**, cōferre, contulī, collātum (conl), [com], *bring together, collect; sē cōferre, betake one's self.* CONFER.

**cōn-ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [com, faciō], *make, accomplish, carry out.*

**cōn-fiteor**, 2, -fessus [com, fateor], *confess.*

**cōn-fligō**, 3, -xī, -etum [com], *contend, fight.* CONFLICT.

**con-iciō**, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [com, jaciō], (*throw together*), *throw, hurl.*

**con-junx**, -jugis, M. and F. [com, jungō, *join*], *spouse, wife; husband.*

**cōnor**, 1, *attempt, try.*

**cōn-scendō**, 3, -dī, -scēnsus, [com, scandō, *climb*], *ascend, embark; go on board*

**cōn-sequor**, 3, -cūtus [com], *follow close upon; follow.*

**cōn-sidō**, 3, -sēdī, -sēssus [com], (*sit together*), *encamp.*

**cōnsilium**, -ī, N. [cōnsulō, cōnsul], *advice, counsel, prudence; plan, design.*

**cōn-similis**, -e, adj., *very similar, quite like.*

**cōn-spiciō**, 3, -spexī, -spectum [com, speciō, *look*], *look at attentively; observe, see, behold.*

**cōn-spicor**, 1, [cōnspiciō], *see at a glance, descry, catch sight of.*

**cōnstāns**, -antis, adj., [P. of cōnstō], *firm, steady.*

**cōn-stat**, 1, -stitit, impers., *it is evident, clear.*

**cōn-stituō**, 3, -uī, -ūtum [com, statuō], (*place or put together*), *station, place; determine.*

**cōn-suēscō**, 3, -suēvī, -suētum [com], *become accustomed; in perf., be accustomed.*

**cōnsuētūdō**, -inis, F. [cōnsuētus], *habit, custom.*

**cōnsul**, -ulis, M. [cōnsulō, *consult*], *consul.* (134.)

**cōnsulāris**, -e, adj. [cōnsul], *pertaining to a consul, consular; noun, ex-consul.*

**cōnsulātus**, -ūs, M. [cōnsul], *office of consul, consulship.*

**cōn-sūmō**, 3, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum [com], *take up completely, consume.*

**con-temnō**, 3, -psī, -ptum [com], *despise.* CONTEMN.

**contemplor**, 1, *look at, observe.* CONTEMPLATE.

**con-tendō**, 3, -di, -tum [com],  
(draw tight), exert one's self, strive;  
hasten. **CONTEND.**

**contentiō**, -ōnis, f. [contendō],  
struggle, exertion, effort; **conten-**  
**tion.**

**contentus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of  
contineō], **contented**; w. abl.

**con-testor**, 1 [com, testis, witness],  
call to witness, invoke.

**con-tinēns**, -entis, f. [P. of con-  
tineō, sc. terra], **continent.**

**con-tineō**, 2, -uī, -tentum [com,  
teneō], hold together, hold, **con-**  
**tain.**

**contrā**, prep. w. acc., against.

**con-valēscō**, 3, -valūī —, [com,  
valeō], get well, grow strong. **CON-**  
**VALESCENT.** Cf. valeō.

**con-veniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum [com],  
come together, assemble.

**con-vertō**, 3, -tī, -sum [com], turn  
around, turn, change. **CONVERT.**

**cōpla**, -ae, f. [com, ops], abundance,  
wealth; plur., troops, forces.

**cor**, cordis, n., heart.

**cōram**, prep. w. abl., in presence of.

**Corinthus**, -ī, f., **Corinth.** (11, 4.)

**Coriolānus**, -ī, m., **Coriolanus**, sur-  
name of C. Marcius, a Roman  
consul.

**Cornēlla**, -ae, f. **Cornelia**, mother  
of the Gracchi.

**Cornēllus**, -ī, m., **Cornelius**, a Ro-  
man family name.

**cornū**, -ūs, n., horn.

**corpus**, -oris, n., body. (140.)  
**CORPSE.**

**corrīgō**, 3, -rēxī, -rēctum [com,  
regō], make straight, reform, **cor-**  
**rect.**

**corripīō**, 3, -uī, -reptum [com,  
rapiō], seize, take hold of.

**cor-rumpō**, 3, -rūpī, -ruptum,

[com], break in pieces, destroy;  
**corrupt**, bribe.

**cortex**, -icis, m. and f., bark, shell,  
rind.

**cōrus**, -ī, m., north-west (wind).

**cotidiē**, adv. [quot, diēs], daily.

**crās**, adv., to-morrow.

**Crassus**, -ī, m., **Crassus**, a rich Ro-  
man, contemporary of Caesar.

**creātor**, -ōris, m. [creō], **creator.**

**crēber**, -bra, -brum, adj., frequent,  
numerous.

**crēdō**, 3, -didī, -ditum, trust, believe;  
w. dat. **CREDIT.**

**creō**, 1, make, create; choose, elect.

**Croesus**, -ī, m., **Croesus**, king of  
Lydia.

**crūdēlls**, -e, adj., **cruel**, hard-hearted.

**crūdēllter**, adv. [crūdēllis], **cruelly.**

**cruentus**, -a, -um, adj. [cruor],  
stained with blood, bloody.

**cruor**, -ōris, m., blood, gore. Cf. san-  
guis.

**crūs**, crūris, n., leg.

**culpa**, -ae, f. [culpō], blame, fault.  
**CULPABLE.** Cf. vitium.

**culpō**, 1 [culpa], blame, find fault  
with.

**culter**, -trī, m., knife. **COULTER.**

**cum**, conj., when; since, as; though,  
although. (372 ff.)

**cum**, prep. w. abl., with.

**Cumae**, -ārum, f., **Cumae**, a town  
in Campania.

**cūnae**, -ārum, f., cradle.

**cunctātiō**, -ōnis, f. [cunctor], de-  
laying, delay.

**cunctor**, 1, linger, hesitate.

**cupiditās**, -ātis, f. [cupidus, cupiō],  
desire, eagerness. **CUPIDITY.**

**Cupido**, -inis, m. [cupidus], **Cupid**,  
god of love.

**cupiō**, 3, -ivī, or -iī, -itum, desire,  
be eager for. Cf. dēsiderō.

**cūr**, adv. [quā, rē], *why, wherefore*.  
**cūra**, -ae, f. [cūrō], *care, anxiety*.  
**cūrō**, 1 [cūra], *care for, take care*.  
**currō**, 3, cucurri, cursum, *run*.  
**currus**, -ūs, m. [currō], *chariot, car*.  
**cursus**, -ūs, m. [currō], *a running, course*.  
**curvus**, -a, -um, adj., *curved, bent; bending*.  
**custōdiō**, 4 [custōs], *guard, protect, defend*.  
**custōs**, -ōdis, m. and f. [custōdiō], *guardian, keeper*. CUSTODIAN.  
**cymba**, -ae, f. *boat*. Cf. nāvicula.  
**Cyrrus**, -ī, m., *Cyrus, king of Persia*.

**Daedalus**, -ī, m., *Daedalus, builder of the Labyrinth*.  
**damnō**, 1, *condemn*.  
**Dārēus**, -ī, m., *Darius, king of Persia*.  
**Dātis**, -is, m., *Datis, a Persian general*.  
**dē**, prep. w. abl., *from, about, concerning, of; (of time), in, during, about*.  
**dea**, -ae, f., *goddess*. (p. 8, note 1).  
**dēbeō**, 2, -uī, -itum, *owe, ought*.  
**DEBIT, DEBT**.  
**decem**, num. adj., indecl., *ten*.  
**December**, -bris, m. [decem], *December*. Often as adj.  
**decem-plex**, -icis, adj. [plicō], *tenfold*.  
**dē-cernō**, 3, -crēvī, -crētum (*separate from*), *decide, determine; decree*.  
**dē-cerpō**, 3, -sī, -tum [carpō], *pluck off*.  
**decet**, 2, decuit, impers., *it is becoming, fitting, proper*.  
**decimus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [decem], *tenth*.

**dē-dō**, 3, -didī, -ditum (*put from one's self*), *surrender, deliver up*.  
**dē-dūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, draw down, launch*. DE-DUCT.  
**dē-fatigō**, 1, *tire out, exhaust*.  
**dē-fendō**, 3, -dī, -fēnsū [dēfēnsor], (*strike off from*), *defend, protect*.  
**dēfēnsor**, -ōris, m. [dēfendō], *defender, protector*.  
**dē-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (*bring from*), *deliver; report*.  
**dē-fessus**, -a, -um, adj., *tired out, weary*.  
**dē-ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], (*make away from*), *revolt; fail, be wanting*.  
**dē-formis**, -e, adj. [forma], *misshapen, ugly; base, disgraceful*.  
**de-inde**, adv. (*from thence*), *then, afterwards*.  
**dēlectō**, 1, *delight*.  
**dēlēctus**, -ūs, m. [dēligō], *selection; levy*.  
**dēlēcō**, 2, -ēvī, -ētum, *destroy*. DE-LETE.  
**dēllelae**, -ārum, f., *delight, darling*.  
**dē-migrō**, 1, *migrate from; emigrate, remove*.  
**Dēmōsthenēs**, -is, m., *Demosthenes, a famous Athenian orator*.  
**dēnique**, adv., *finally, at last*.  
**dēns**, dentis, m., *tooth*. DENTIST.  
**dē-pereō**, 4, -īī, —, *go to ruin, perish, be lost*.  
**dē-pōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positum, *put down, put by, lay down*. DE-PONENT.  
**dē-scendō**, 3, -dī, -scēnsū [scandō, climb], *come down, descend*.  
**dē-serō**, 3, -uī, -tum, *desert, abandon*.  
**dēsiderō**, 1, *desire, long for, miss* (319). Cf. optō, volō, and cupiō.

**dē-siliō**, 4, -siliū [saliō, leap], leap down. Cf. subsiliō and transiliō.

**dē-sistō**, 3, -stiti, -stitum [stand off or apart], leave off, cease; *desist*.

**dē-spērō**, 1 [spēs], be hopeless, despair.

**dē-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, be wanting, lack; w. dat. Cf. dēficiō.

**dē-trahō**, 3, -traxi, -tractum, draw off, take away.

**deus**, -ī, m., god. (262.)

**dēvorō**, 1, swallow up, devour.

**Diāna**, -ae, f., *Diana*, goddess of the chase.

**dicō**, 3, dixi, dictum, say, tell.

**dictātor**, -ōris, m. [dictō, dicō], chief magistrate, dictator.

**dictātūra**, -ae, f. [dictātor], office of dictator, dictatorship.

**dictitō** [frequentative of dicō], keep saying.

**diēs**, -ē, m. and f., day. (253.)

**diff-erō**, differre, distuli, dilātum [dis], scatter, separate, put off; *differ*. (321.)

**difficilis**, -e, adj. [dis, facilis, far from easy], hard, difficult. (207.)

**digitus**, -ī, m., finger. DIGIT.

**dignitās**, -ātis, f. [dignus], worth, dignity; office.

**dignus**, -a, -um, adj., worthy.

**diligēns**, -entis, adj. [P. of diligō], diligent, careful.

**diligenter**, adv. [diligēns], diligently.

**diligentia**, -ae, f. [diligēns], diligence, carefulness.

**dī-llgō**, 3, -lēxi, -lēctum [legō], esteem, love. (319.)

**dimicō**, 1, fight, contend. Cf. pugnō.

**dī-midius**, -a, -um, adj. [medius], half.

**dī-mittō**, 3, -misi, -missum, send away, let go.

**dī-moveō**, 2, -mōvi, -mōtum (move asunder), separate, drive away.

**dī-ruō**, 3, dirui, dirutum, tear asunder, destroy. Cf. rescindō.

**dis**, dī (a prefix denoting separation), asunder, apart, in different directions. Cf. differō, discēdō, dissimilis, dimittō, diruō.

**Dis**, Ditis, m., *Dis*, another name of Pluto.

**dis-cēdō**, 3, -cēssi, -cēssum, depart, withdraw, go off.

**discipulus**, -ī, m. [discō], learner, scholar, pupil. DISCIPLE.

**discō**, 3, didici, —, learn.

**dis-similis**, -e, adj., (far from like), unlike, dissimilar. (207.)

**dīū**, adv., for a long time, long.

**dives**, -itis, adj. (comp. ditior, superl. divitissimus), rich. (167. 3.)

**divitiae**, -arum, f. [dives], riches, wealth.

**dō**, dare, dedi, datum, give; put.

**doceō**, 2, -ui, -tum, teach, show.

**doctus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of doceō], learned. DOCTOR.

**dolor**, -ōris, m., pain, grief. DOLOROUS.

**dolus**, -ī, m., trick, deceit.

**domicilium**, -ī, n. [domus], home, abode.

**domina**, -ae, f. [dominus], mistress.

**domīnor**, 1 [dominus], be a lord and master, rule. DOMINEER.

**dominus**, -ī, m. [domina], lord, master. (66.)

**domus**, -ūs, f., house, home; domī, at home. (262, 336.)

**dōnō**, 1 [dōnum], give, present. DONATE.

**dōnum**, -ī, n. [dō], gift, present.

**dormiō**, 4, *sleep*. DORMITORY.  
**Drūsus**, -ī, M., *Drusus*, a Roman.  
**dubitō**, 1 [dubius], *hesitate, doubt*.

INDUBITABLE.

**dubiur**, -ī, N. [dubius], *doubt*.  
**dubius**, -a, -um, adj. [duo], *doubtful*. DUBIOUS.

**ducenti**, -ae, -a, num. adj. [duo, centum], *two hundred*.

**dūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductum [dux], *lead*.

**Duilius** (C.), -ī, M., *Caius Duilius*, a Roman general.

**dulcis**, -e, adj., *sweet, pleasant*. DULCET. Cf. suāvis.

**dum**, adv., *while, as long as; until*.

**duo**, duae, duo, num. adj., *two*. (311. 4.)

**duo-decim**, num. adj., indecl. [decem], *twelve*.

**duo-de-trigintā**, num. adj., indecl., *twenty-eight*.

**dūrus**, -a, -um, adj., *hard*. ENDURE. Cf. difficilis.

**dux**, ducis, M. and F. [dūcō], *leader, general*. DUKE. Cf. imperātor.

**ecce**, interj., *lo! see! see there!*

**ē-dīcō**, 3, -dīxī, -dictum, *speak out, declare, proclaim*. EDICT.

**edō**, edere or ēsse, ēdī, ēsum or ēsum, *eat*.

**ēducō**, 1, *bring up, train, educate*.

**ē-dūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out, bring away*.

**ef-ferō**, efferre, extulī, ēlātum [ex], *bear out, bring forth*. (321.)

ELATE.

**efficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [ex, faciō], *bring to pass, effect, complete; make, construct*.

**egēns**, -entis, adj. [P. of egeō], *in want, needy, destitute*.

**ego**, pers. pron., I. (264.)

**ē-gredior**, 3, ēgressus [gradior, step], *go out, go forth; disembark, land*. Cf. exeō.

**ēgregiē**, adv. [ēgregius], *remarkably, excellently*.

**ē-gregius**, -a, -um, adj. [grex], *remarkable, excellent*. EGREGIOUS.

**ēlegāns**, -antis, adj., *choice, elegant*.

**elephantus**, -ī, M., *elephant*.

**ē-lūdō**, 3, -sī, -sum, *deceive, mock; elude*.

**ē-mergō**, 3, -sī, -sum, *arise, come forth; emerge*.

**emō**, 3, emī, emptum, *buy, purchase*.

**enim**, conj. (never the first word), *for*. Cf. nam.

**Ennius**, -ī, M., *Ennius*, father of Roman poetry.

**ē-nūntiō**, 1, *say out, divulge, declare, report*. ENUNCIATE.

**ē**, see ex.

**eō**, adv. [is], *to that place, thither, there*.

**eō**, ire, ii, itum, *go*. (327.)

**eōdem**, adv. [idem], *to the same place*.

**Ēpirus**, -ī, F., *Epirus*, a division of Greece.

**epistula**, -ae, F., *letter, epistle*.

**eques**, -itis, M. [equus], *horseman, knight*.

**equester**, -tris, -tre, adj., [eques], *(pertaining to a horseman), equestrian*.

**equitātus**, -ūs, M. [equitō, eques], *(body of equites), cavalry*.

**equitō**, 1 [eques], *(be a horseman), ride*.

**equus**, -ī, M., *horse*.

**ergō**, adv., *therefore, accordingly*. Cf. igitur and itaque.

**ē-ripiō**, 3, -uī, -reptum [rapiō], *snatch out, seize and bear off*.

**errō**, 1, *wander; err, mistake*.



**ē-rudiō**, 4, [rudis, rough], train, teach, instruct.

**essedum**, -ī, n., two-wheeled war-chariot.

**et**, conj., and; et . . . et, both . . . and. Cf. atque, ac, and -que.

**etiam**, adv. and conj. [et, jam, and now], also, even.

**et-si**, conj., though, although.

**Eurōpa**, -ae, f., Europe.

**ē-vādō**, 3, -vāsī, -vāsum, go forth, escape. EVADE.

**ē-veniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, come forth, turn out, happen. EVENT. Cf. accidō and incidō.

**ē-vertō**, 3, -tī, -sum, overturn, overthrow, destroy.

**ē-volō**, 1, fly away.

**ex** or **ē**, prep. w. abl., out of, from.

**exāminō**, 1 [exāmen, test], weigh out, weigh.

**excelsus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of excellō], elevated, lofty, high.

**ex-cipio**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō], take out, except; receive, welcome.

**ex-clāmō**, 1, cry out, exclaim. Cf. clāmitō.

**ex-cūsō**, 1 [causa], excuse.

**ex-cutiō**, 3, -cussī, -cussum [quatiō], shake out, strike off, drive away, cast out.

**ex-eō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, go out, come out. EXIT. Cf. ēgredior.

**ex-erceō**, 2 [arceō], keep busy, employ; train. EXERCISE.

**exercitus**, -ūs, m. [exerceō], (the thing trained), army.

**exiguus**, -a, -um, adj., scanty, small, slight.

**expeditiō**, -ōnis, f. [expediō], excursion, expedition.

**ex-pellō**, 3, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out or away, expel.

**ex-prior**, 4, -pertus, make trial of, test. EXPERT.

**ex-plicō**, 1, -āvi, -ētum, and -uī, -itum, unfold, explain.

**explōrātor**, -ōris, m. [explōrō], a searcher out, explorer; spy, scout.

**ex-plōrō**, 1, search out, examine, explore; reconnoitre.

**ex-pōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positum, put or set out, expose; draw up, marshal.

**ex-pūgnō**, 1, take by storm, assault. Cf. oppūgnō.

**ex-sistō**, 3, -stitī, -stitum (stand forth), exist, appear.

**ex-spectō**, 1, await, wait for, expect.

**ex-spirō**, 1, breath out, breath one's last, expire.

**ex-stinguō**, 3, -nxi, -nctum (quench completely), extinguish; kill, destroy.

**ex-terreō**, 2, -uī, -itum, frighten, affright.

**ex-timēscō**, 3, -timuī, — [timeō], fear greatly.

**extrā**, prep. w. acc., without, outside of. Cf. intrā.

**ex-turbō**, 1, thrust out, drive away.

**faber**, -brī, m., worker, carpenter. FABRIC.

**Fabius**, -ī, m., Fabius, a famous Roman general.

**Fabricius**, -ī, m., Fabricius, a famous Roman general.

**fābula**, -ae, f. [for, speak], story, tale, fable.

**facilis**, -e, adj. [faciō], (that can be done), easy to do, easy. FACILITY.

**facinus**, -oris, n. [faciō], (the thing done), deed; crime. Cf. scelus.

**faciō**, 3, fēcī, factum, do, make.

**fāgus**, -ī, F., *beech-tree*. (11. 4.)  
**Fallsci**, -ōrum, M., the *Faliscans*,  
*a people of Etruria*.  
**falsō**, adv. [falsus], *falsely*.  
**falsus**, -a, -um, adj. [fallō, deceive],  
*deceptive, false*.  
**fāma**, -ae, F. [for, speak], *rumor*;  
*fame, renown*.  
**famēs**, -is, F., *hunger, famine*.  
**fās**, N., indecl. [for, speak], *divine*  
*law*; often translated as adj.,  
*right, lawful*.  
**fasces**, -is, M., *bundle*.  
**fatigō**, 1, *tire out, weary*. FATIGUE.  
**fātum**, -ī, N. [for, speak], (*that which*  
*is spoken*), *fate, destiny*.  
**faveō**, 2, fāvī, fautum, *be favorable*  
*to, favor, befriend*; w. dat.  
**febris**, -is, F. [ferveō, be hot], *fever*.  
**Februārius**, -ī, M., *February*. Often  
as adj.  
**fēliciter**, adv. [fēlix], *luckily, for-*  
*unately*.  
**fēlix**, -icis, adj., *lucky, fortunate*.  
**fera**, -ae, F. [ferus], *wild animal*,  
*wild beast*.  
**ferē**, adv., *nearly, for the most part*,  
*almost, about*. Cf. paene.  
**ferō**, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, bring*;  
ferunt, *they say*. (321.) Cf.  
portō and vehō.  
**ferōx**, -ōcis, adj. [ferus], *fierce*,  
*impetuous*.  
**ferreus**, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum], *of*  
*iron, iron*.  
**ferrum**, -ī, N., *iron*.  
**ferus**, -a, -um, adj., *wild, savage*,  
*cruel*.  
**fidēlis**, -e, adj. [fidēs], *trusty, faith-*  
*ful*. Cf. fidus.  
**fidēlīter**, adv. [fidēlis], *faithfully*.  
**fidēs**, -ēī, F. [fidō, trust], *trust, faith*.  
**fidus**, -a, -um, adj. [fidō, trust],  
*trusty, faithful*.

**filia**, -ae, F., *daughter*. (p. 8, note 1).  
Cf. nāta.  
**filioles**, -ī, M. [diminutive of filius],  
*little son*.  
**fillus**, -ī, M., *son*. (79.) FILIAL.  
**finiō**, 4 [finis], *end, finish*. FINITE.  
**finis**, -is, M., *end, boundary*. (154.)  
**finitimus**, -a, -um, adj. [finis],  
*bordering on, neighboring*.  
**fiō**, fieri, factus (*supplies pass. to*  
*faciō*), *be made, become*. (327.)  
**firmō**, 1 [firmus], *make strong*.  
**firmus**, -a, -um, adj. [firmō], *stead-*  
*fast, strong*. FIRM.  
**flagrō**, 1, *burn*.  
**flectō**, 3, -xī, -xum, *bend, turn*.  
**fleō**, 2, flēvī, flētum, *weep, cry*.  
**flō**, 1, *blow*.  
**flōs**, flōris, M., *flower*. FLORAL.  
**flūmen**, -inis, N. [fluō], (*that which*  
*flows*), *river, stream*. (172.)  
**fluō**, 3, fluxī, fluxum, *flow*.  
**fluvius**, -ī, M. [fluō], (*the flowing*  
*thing*), *river, stream*. (172.)  
**folium**, -ī, N., *leaf*. FOLIAGE.  
**fōns**, fontis, M., *spring, fount, foun-*  
*tain*.  
**fore**, for futurum esse.  
**formidō**, -inis, F., *fear, terror*.  
**forte**, adv. [fors, chance], *perchance*,  
*perhaps, possibly*.  
**fortis**, -e, adj., *strong, brave, cour-*  
*ageous*.  
**fortiter**, adv. [fortis], *bravely*,  
*courageously*.  
**fortitūdō**, -inis, F. [fortis], *strength*,  
*bravery, endurance, fortitude*.  
**fortūna**, -ae, F. [fors, chance], *for-*  
*tune*.  
**forum**, -ī, N., *market-place; forum*.  
**frangō**, 3, frēgī, fractum, *dash in*  
*pieces, break*. FRACTION.  
**frāter**, -tris, M., *brother*. FRATER-  
 NAL.



**frētus**, -a, -um, adj., *relying on, trusting to*; w. abl.

**frigidus**, -a, -um, adj. [frigeō, *freeze*], *cold, frigid*.

**frondōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [frōns], *covered with leaves, leafy*.

**frōns**, frondis, f., *leaf, foliage; garland of leaves*.

**frōns**, -tis, f., *brow, forehead*. FRONT.

**frūctus**, -ūs, m. [fruor], *fruit*. Cf. frūmentum.

**frūmentārius**, -a, -um, adj. [frūmentum], *pertaining to grain; rēs frūmentāria, grain-supply*.

**frūmentum**, -ī, n. [fruor], *corn, grain*. Cf. frūctus.

**fruor**, 3, frūctus, *enjoy*; w. abl. (304.)

**frūstrā**, adv., *in vain*.

(**frūx**), frūgis, f. (oftener plur.; gen. frūgum), [fruor], *fruit of the earth, fruits*. Cf. frūctus.

**fuga**, -ae, f. [fugiō, *flee*], *flight*.

**fuglō**, 3, fūgī, -itum [fugō, *fuga*], *run away*. FUGITIVE.

**fugō**, 1 [fugiō, *fuga*], *put to flight, chase, drive*.

**fungor**, 3, fūctus, *perform, discharge*; w. abl. (304.) FUNCTION.

**Gājus**, gen. Gāi (also written Cāius), m., *Caius, a Roman first name*.

**Galba**, -ae, m., *Galba*.

**Gallia**, -ae, f., *Gaul*.

**Gallicus**, -a, -um, adj. [Gallus], *belonging to the Gauls, Gallic*.

**gallina**, -ae, f. [gallus, *cock*], *hen*.

**Gallus**, -ī, m., *a Gaul*.

**gaudeō**, 2, gāvīsus [gaudium], *be glad, rejoice*. (p. 177, note 2.)

**gaudium**, -ī, n. [gaudeō], *joy, delight*.

**gener**, -erī, m., *son-in-law*.

**gēns**, gentis, f., *clan, family*. GENTEEL.

**genū**, -ūs, n., *knee*. (245.)

**genus**, -eris, n., *birth, race; kind, nature*. GENDER.

**Germānus**, -a, -um, adj., *German*; noun, a *German*.

**gerō**, 3, gessi, gestum, *bear, carry; wage, manage, do*.

**gladiātor**, -ōris, m. [gladius], (*swordsmen*), *gladiator*.

**gladius**, -ī, m., *sword*.

**glōria**, -ae, f., *glory, fame, renown*.

**gracilis**, -e, adj., *slender*. (207.)

**gradus**, -ūs, m., *step*. (245.) GRADE.

**Graecē**, adv. [Graecus], *in Greek*.

**Graccia**, -ae, f., *Greece*.

**Graecus**, -a, -um, adj., *Grecian, Greek*; noun, a *Greek*.

**grāmen**, -inis, n., *grass*.

**grānum**, -ī, n., *grain, seed*.

**grātulor**, 1 [grātus], *congratulate*; w. dat.

**grātus**, -a, -um, adj., *acceptable, pleasing*. GRATEFUL.

**gravis**, -e, adj., *heavy, serious*. GRAVE.

**graviter**, adv. [gravis], *heavily, seriously*.

**gremium**, -ī, n., *lap, bosom*.

**grex**, gregis, m., *flock, herd*.

**gustō**, 1, *taste, eat*.

**habeō**, 2, *have, hold*.

**habitō**, 1 [frequentative of habeō], *inhabit; dwell, live*. (194.)

**Hannibal**, -alis, m., *Hannibal, a famous Carthaginian general*.

**Hasdrubal**, -alis, m., *Hasdrubal, a Carthaginian general, brother of Hannibal*.

**hasta**, -ae, F., *spear*.

**hauriō**, 4, *hausi*, *haustum*, *draw* (water), *drain*. EXHAUST.

**Hector**, -oris, M., *Hector*, chief of the Trojan warriors.

**Henna**, -ae, F., *Henna*, a city of Sicily.

**heri**, adv., *yesterday*.

**hic**, *haec*, *hōc*, dem. pron., *this*, *this of mine*; abl., *hōc*, *on this account*; as pers. pron., *he*, *she*, *it*. (275.)

**hiems**(hiemps), *hiemis*, F., *winter*; *storm*.

**hinc**, adv. [*hīc*], *from this place*, *hence*.

**Hispānia**, -ae, F., *Spain*.

**Hispānus**, -ī, M., *a Spaniard*.

**historia**, -ae, F., *history*.

**hodiē**, adv. [*hōc*, *diē*], *to-day*.

**Homerus**, -ī, M., *Homer*, the earliest and greatest Greek poet.

**homo**, -inis, M. and F. (*human being*), *man*. (138.)

**honestās**, -ātis, F. [*honestus*], *honor*, *integrity*, *honesty*.

**honōrificē**, adv., *honorably*.

**honor**, -ōris, M., *honor*.

**honōrō**, 1 [*honor*], *honor*, *respect*.

**hōra**, -ae, F., *hour*.

**Horātius**, -ī, M., *Horatius*, *Horace*.

**horridus**, -a, -um, adj. [*horreō*, *shudder at*], *frightful*, *rough*, *wild*.

**HORRID**.

**hortor**, 1, *urge*, *exhort*, *encourage*.

**hortus**, -ī, M., *garden*. (38.)

**hospes**, -itis, M. and F., *host*, *guest*, *guest-friend*. HOSPITAL.

**hostis**, -is, M. and F., *enemy*. (149, 172.) HOSTILE.

**hūc**, adv. [for old form *hōc*], *to this place*, *hither*.

**hūmānus**, -a, -um, adj. [*homo*], *human*; *cultivated*, *refined*.

**humilis**, -e, adj. [*humus*, *ground*], (*pertaining to humus*), *low*, *lowly*, *humble*, *poor*. (207.)

**ibi**, adv. [*is*], *in that place*, *there*.

**Icarus**, -ī, *Icarus*, son of *Daedalus*.

**idem**, *eadem*, *idem*, determ. pron. [*is*], *same*. (270.)

**idōneus**, -a, -um, adj., *fit*, *suitable*, *proper*.

**Idūs**, -uum, F. plur., *the Ides* (of the month). The thirteenth, except in March, May, July, and October; in those months the fifteenth. (244, 1.)

**igitur**, conj. (seldom the first word), *therefore*, *then*. Cf. *ergō* and *itaque*.

**ignāvia**, -ae, F. [*ignāvus*], *laziness*, *idleness*, *cowardice*.

**ignāvus**, -a, -um, adj. [*in*, *not*, *gnāvus*, *busy*], *lazy*, *idle*, *cowardly*.

**ignis**, -is, M., *fire*. (149.)

**ignōrō**, 1 [*ignārus*, *ignorant*], *not know*, *be ignorant of*.

**ille**, -a, -ud, demon. pron., *that* (*yonder*); as pers. pron., *he*, *she*, *it*. (275.)

**illūc**, adv. [*ille*], *to that place*, *thither*, *there*.

**imāgō**, -inis, F., *image*, *likeness*, *picture*. (134.)

**imitor**, 1, *imitate*.

**immānis**, -e, adj., *huge*, *immense*, *monstrous*. Cf. *māgnus*.

**impediō**, 4 [*in*, *pēs*], (*entangle the feet*), *impede*, *hinder*, *prevent*.

**im-pellō**, 3, -pulī, -pulsum [*in*], *urge on*, *impel*, *prompt*.

**imperātor**, -ōris, M. [*imperō*], *commander*, *general*. EMPEROR.

**imperium**, -ī, N. [*imperō*], *command*, *authority*, *power*. EMPIRE.

**imperō**, 1 [imperium], order, command; w. dat.

**impetrō**, 1, accomplish; gain, procure, obtain. Cf. adipiscor.

**impetus**, -ūs, m. [impetō, rush upon], attack, onset. IMPETUS.

**im-pleō**, 2, -ēvi, -ētum [in], fill up, fill full, fill. Cf. compleō.

**im-plōrō**, 1 [in], cry out to, beseech, implore.

**im-pōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positum [in], put or place upon.

**improbus**, -a, -um, adj. [in, not, probus, good], bad, wicked. Cf. malus.

**im-prō-visō**, adv. [videō], unexpectedly.

**im-pudēns**, -entis, adj. [in], shameless, impudent.

**in**, prep. w. acc. into, to, against, for; w. abl., in, on. (333, 1, 2.)

**in**, prefix, in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. un-, in-, not.

**inānis**, -e, adj., empty, useless.

**in-cautus**, -a, -um, adj., incautious, heedless.

**in-certus**, -a, -um, adj., uncertain.

**in-cidō**, 3, -cidi, -cāsum [cadō], fall into; happen, befall. Cf. accidō and eveniō.

**in-ci-piō**, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [capiō], (take in hand), begin. Cf. ordior.

**in-cōgnitus**, -a, -um, adj., unknown.

**incola**, -ae, m. and f. [incolō], inhabitant.

**in-colō**, 3, -uī, — [incola], dwell in, inhabit, live, dwell. Cf. habitō and vivō.

**incolumis**, -e, adj., unharmed, safe.

**inde**, adv. [is], thence.

**indiciū**, -ī, n., discovery, disclosure.

**in-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itum, go in, enter; begin. (327.)

**inferi**, -ōrum, m. (inferus, below], inhabitants of the lower world, the dead. INFERNAL.

**in-ferō**, inferre, intulī, illātum (inl) (bear in or against), cause; bellum inferre, make war upon; w. dat. (321.)

**infestus**, -a, -um, adj., hostile, troublesome, dangerous. INFEST.

**in-ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], stain, color.

**in-finitus**, -a, -um, adj. [fīnis], boundless, unlimited, infinite, vast.

**in-flectō**, 3, -xī, -xum, bend; change, alter. INFLECT.

**in-gredior**, 3, -gressus [gradior, step], enter.

**in-hiō**, 1, gape at, long for.

**in-imicus**, -a, -um, adj. [amicus], unfriendly, hostile; noun, enemy. (172.) INIMICAL.

**initium**, -ī, n. [ineō], beginning. INITIAL.

**injūria**, -ae, f. [in, jūs], injustice, injury, wrong.

**injūstē**, adv. [injūstus], unjustly.

**inopia**, -ae, f. [inops, without resources], want, poverty.

**inquā**, defective verb, say; inquit (placed after one or more quoted words), said he.

**in-stituō**, 3, -uī, -ūtum [statuō, place], fix, determine, undertake. INSTITUTE.

**instrūctus**, -a, -um [P. of instruō], furnished, equipped.

**in-struō**, 3, -struxī, -strūctum [struō, build], build up, form, instruct, teach.

**insula**, -ae, f., island. PENINSULA.

**in-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, be in, among; w. dat. and in w. abl.

**intel-legō**, 3, -lēxī, -lēctum [inter],

see into; understand. INTELLECT.

**inter**, prep. w. acc., between, among, amid.

**inter-eō**, -īre, -īi, -itum, perish.

**inter-dum**, adv., sometimes.

**inter-ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], kill, put to death. Cf. necō and occidō.

**interior**, -us, adj. [no positive], inner, interior.

**inter-pellō**, 1, interrupt; entreat, importune.

**inter-rogō**, 1, ask, inquire, question. (382.) INTERROGATION.

**inter-sum**, -esse, -fuī, —, be present at or among; w. dat. Cf. ad-sum.

**intrā**, prep. w. acc., within. Cf. extra.

**in-tueor**, 2, look towards, at, or upon. INTUITION.

**intus**, adv. [in], within, inside.

**in-veniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, come upon, find, meet with, discover.

INVENT. Cf. reperio.

**in-vicem**, adv., by turns, in turn, alternately.

**in-victus**, -a, -um, adj., unconquerable, invincible.

**invitō**, 1, invite.

**invitus**, -a, -um, adj., unwilling, reluctant.

**in-vocō**, 1, call upon, invoke.

**iō**, interj., ah! oh!

**ipse**, -a, -um, intens. pron., self, very. (270.)

**ira**, -ae, f., anger, wrath; ire.

**ir-rideō**, 2, -risī, -risum [in], laugh at, ridicule; jest, mock.

**is**, ea, id, determ. pron., that; as pers. pron., he, she, it. (270.)

**iste**, -a, -ud, demon. pron., that (of yours). (275.)

**ita**, adv., so, thus. Cf. sic.

**Italia**, -ae, f., Italy.

**Italus**, -a, -um, adj., Italian.

**ita-que**, conj., and so, therefore. Cf. ergō and igitur.

**item**, adv. [ita], likewise, also. ITEM.

**iter**, itineris, n. [eō], way, road, march. (262.) ITINERANT.

**iterum**, adv., a second time, again. ITERATION.

**Ithaca**, -ae, f., Ithaca, an island in the Ionian Sea.

**Itius**, m., Itius, a port in Gaul.

**jaceō**, 2, -uī, — [jaciō], (be thrown), lie.

**jaciō**, 3, jēcī, jactum [jaceō], throw, cast, hurl, fling.

**jam**, adv., already, now, at last. Cf. nunc.

**jamjam**, adv., already; jamjam ventūrus, on the point of coming.

**jānuā**, -ae, f. [Jānus], door. Cf. porta.

**Jānus**, -ī, m. [jānuā], Janus, the two-faced god.

**jējūnium**, -ī, n. [jējūnus], fast, hunger.

**jējūnus**, -a, -um [jējūnium], fasting, hungry, without food.

**jocus**, -ī, m. (plur. joci and joca), joke, jest; per jocum, in jest, for a joke.

**Jōhanniculus**, -ī, m., little John, Johnny, Jack.

**jubeō**, 2, jūssī, jūssum, bid, order, command. Cf. imperō.

**jūcundus**, -a, -um, adj., pleasant, agreeable.

**jūdex**, -icis, m. [jūdicō], judge. (105.)

**jūdicium**, -ī, n. [jūdicō], judgment, opinion.

**jūdicō**, 1 [jūdex], *judge*. (429.)

**Jūlius**, -ī, m., *Julius*, a Roman family name.

**Jūppiter**, Jovis, m., *Jupiter*, the supreme deity of the Romans. (202.)

**jūrō**, ī [jūs], *swear, take an oath*.

**jūs**, jūris, n., *right, justice*. (140.) Cf. fās.

**jūssus**, -ūs, m. [jubeō], *command, order*.

**jūstē**, adv. [jūstus], *rightly, justly*.

**juvenis**, -is, m. and f., *youth, young person*. Cf. adulēscēns.

**juventūs**, -ūtis, f. [juvenis], *the season of youth, youth*.

**Labiēnus**, -ī, m., *Labienus*, a lieutenant of Cēsar's.

**labor**, m., -ōris, *labor*.

**labōrō**, 1 [labor], *work, toil*.

**labrum**, -ī, n., *lip*.

**lactis**, m., *milk*. LACTEAL.

**Lacedaemonī**, -ōrum, m., the *Lacedaemonians*.

**lacrīma**, -ae, f., *tear*. LACRYMOSE.

**lacus**, -ūs, m., *lake, pond*.

**Laevinus**, -ī, m., *Laevinus*, a Roman consul.

**lapis**, -idis, m., *stone*. LAPIDARY.

**Latīnē**, adv. [Latinus], *in Latin*.

**Latinus**, -a, -um, adj. [Latium], *Latin*; noun, a *Latin*.

**lātrō**, 1, *bark, bark at*.

**latrō**, -ōnis, m., *robber*.

**lātus**, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide*. LATITUDE.

**latus**, -eris, n., *side*. LATERAL.

**laudō**, 1 [laus], *praise, laud*.

**laus**, laudis, f. [laudō], *praise, glory, fame*.

**lēgātus**, -ī, m. [lēgō, depūte], *ambassador, lieutenant*. LEGATE.

**legiō**, -ōnis, f. [legō], (*a gathering*), *legion*.

**legō**, 3, lēgī, lēctum, *gather; select; read*.

**lēnis**, -e, adj., *soft, smooth, gentle*.

**leō**, -ōnis, m., *lion*. (134.)

**lepus**, -oris, m., *hare*.

**levis**, -e, adj. [levō], *light*. (150.)

**levō**, 1 [levis], *lift up, raise, lighten*.

**lēx**, lēgis, f., *law*. LEGAL.

**libenter**, adv. [libet, it pleases], *willingly, gladly*; libenter videō, *I am glad to see*.

**liber**, -brī, m., *hook*.

**liber**, -era, -erum, adj., *free*. LIBERAL. (71.)

**Liber**, -erī, m., *Bacchus, god of wine*.

**liberē**, adv. [liber], *freely, fearlessly*.

**liberī**, -ōrum, m. [liber], *children*. (60.)

**liberō**, 1 [liber], *set free, free, liberate*; w. abl.

**libertās**, -ātis, f. [liber], *freedom, liberty*.

**licet**, 2, licuit or licitum est, *impers., it is permitted, (one) may*.

**ligneus**, -a, -um, adj. [lignum], *of wood, wooden*.

**lignum**, -ī, n., *wood*; plur., *sticks of wood*.

**ligō**, -ōnis, m., *mattock, hoe*.

**līlūm**, -ī, n., *lily*.

**lingua**, -ae, f., *tongue, language*.

**littera**, -ae, f., *letter (of the alphabet)*; plur., *letter, epistle; literature*.

**litus**, -oris, n., *shore, beach, bank*.

**locus**, -ī, m. (plur., locī and loca), *place, position, spot*. LOCAL.

**longē**, adv. [longus], *far off; widely, greatly, much, by much*.

**longus**, -a, -um, adj., *long*. LONGITUDE.

**loquor**, 3, locūtus, *speak, talk*.

**lūctus**, -ūs, m. [lūgeō], *mourning, lamentation.*

**lūcus**, -ī, m. [lūceō, *shine*], (*open place in a wood*), *wood, grove.*

**lūdō**, 3, lūsī, lūsum [lūdus], *play.*  
INTERLUDE.

**lūdus**, -ī, m. [lūdō], *game, play.*

**lūgeō**, 2, lūxī, —, *mourn, lament.*

**lūmen**, -inis, n. [lūceō, *lūx*], *light.*

LUMINOUS.

**lūna**, -ae, f. [lūceō, *lūx*], *moon.*

LUNA.

**lupus**, -ī, m., *wolf.*

**luscīna**, -ae, f., *nightingale.*

**lūx**, lūcis, f. [lūceō, *shine*], *light, daylight.*

**M.**, abbreviation of *Marcus*, a Roman first name.

**macte**, adj. [voc. of *mactus*], *be honored, be blessed; hail! well done!* (p. 178, note 3.)

**maculō**, 1, *stain.*

**magis**, adv. [māg(nus)], *more.*

**magister**, -trī, m. [māg(nus)], *master, teacher.* Cf. *praeceptor.*

**magistrātus**, -ūs, m. [magister], (*the office of a magister*), *magistracy, magistrate.*

**māgnificus**, -a, -um, adj. [māgnus, *faciō*], *splendid, magnificent.*

**māgnitūdō**, -inis, f. [māgnus], *greatness, size, magnitude.*

**māgnus**, -a, -um, adj. (comp. *mājor*, superl. *māximus*), *great, large.*

**mājor**, -us, comp. of *māgnus.*  
MAJOR.

**male**, adv. [malus], *badly, ill.* (219.)

**mālō**, mälle, mālui, — [magis, *volō*], *be more willing, prefer, would rather.* (316.)

**malum**, -ī, n., *bad thing, evil.*

**mālum**, -ī, n., *apple.*

**malus**, -a, -um, adj. (comp. *pējor*, sup. *pessimus*), *bad, evil; baleful.* (208.) Cf. *improbis.*

**māne**, adv., *in the morning.*

**maneō**, 2, mānsi, mānsum, *stay, remain, await.*

**mānēs**, -ium, m., *departed spirits, souls.*

**Manlius**, -ī, m., *Manlius, a Roman.*

**manus**, -ūs, f., *hand; force, band.* (244, 1.) MANUAL.

**Mārcellus**, -ī, m., *Marcellus, a Roman general.*

**mare**, -is, n., *sea.* (149.) MARINE.

**maritimus**, -a, -um, adj. [mare], *belonging to the sea, bordering on the sea, maritime.*

**Marius** (C.), -ī, m., *Gājus Marius, a famous Roman general.*

**Mārtius**, -ī, m. [Mārs], *March.*  
Often as adj.

**massa**, -ae, f., *mass.*

**māter**, -tris, f., *mother.* MATERNAL.

**māteria**, -ae, f. [māter], (*mother-stuff*), *materials, timber.*

**mātrōna**, -ae, f. [māter], *matron, wife, lady.*

**mātūrō**, 1 [mātūrus, *ripe*], *hasten.*

**māximē**, adv. [māximus], *most, especially, greatly.* (219.)

**māximus**, -a, -um, superl. of *māgnus.* (208.)

**medicus**, -ī, m. [medeor, *cure*], *physician.* MEDICINE.

**mediterrāneus**, -a, -um, adj. [medius, *terra*], *midland, inland.*  
MEDITERRANEAN.

**medius**, -a, -um, adj., *middle;* often to be translated *midst.*

**Meldi**, -ōrum, m., *the Meldi, a people of Gaul.*

**mellor**, -us, comp. of *bonus.* (208.)



**mellitus**, -a, -um, adj. [mel, *honey*],  
*honey-sweet, darling*.

**memor**, -oris, adj., *mindful*. (150.)

MEMORABLE.

**memoria**, -ae, f. [memor], *memory*.

**mendācium**, -ī, n. [mendāx], *lying, falsehood*.

**mendāx**, -ācis, adj., [mentior],  
*lying, deceitful*.

**mēns**, mentis, f., *mind, purpose*.  
(273.) MENTAL.

**mēnsa**, -ae, f., *table*.

**mēnsis**, -is, m., *month*.

**mentior**, 4 [mendāx], *lie, deceive*.

**Mercurius**, -ī, m., *Mercury, messenger of the gods*. (79.)

**mereō**, } 2, *be worthy of, deserve*,  
**mereor**, } *merit*.

**meridiānus**, -a, -um, adj. [merī-  
diēs], *of or belonging to midday,*  
*noon; meridian*.

**Metellus**, -ī, m., *Metellus, a Roman*  
*general*.

**metuō**, 3, -ui, -ūtum [metus], *fear*.  
Cf. timeō.

**metus**, -ūs, m. [metuō], *fear, dread*.  
Cf. timor.

**meus**, -a, -um, poss. pron. (voc.  
sing. mas. mī), *my, mine*.

**migrō**, 1, *migrate*.

**miles**, -itis, m., *soldier*. (105.) MIL-  
ITARY.

**mille**, num. adj., indecl. in sing.;  
in plur. milia, -ūm, *thousand*.  
(311, 6.)

**Miltiadēs**, -is, m., *Miltiades, a Greek*  
*general*.

**Minerva**, -ae, f., *Minerva, goddess*  
*of wisdom*.

**minimē**, adv. [minimus], *least*;  
*no, by no means, far from it*.

**minister**, -tri, m. [minus], (*an in-*  
*ferior*), *servant*. (66.) MINISTER.  
Cf. magister.

**minor**, 1 [minae, *threats*], *threaten*.

**minor**, -us, comp. of parvus.

**minus**, adv. [minor], *less*.

**mirābilis**, -e, adj. [mīror, *wonder*  
*at*], *to be wondered at; wonderful,*  
*extraordinary*.

**misellus**, -a, -um, adj. [diminutive  
of miser], *poor little*.

**miser**, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched,*  
*unhappy, miserable*.

**miseret**, 2, -itum est, impers. [mi-  
ser], *it makes miserable, it excites*  
*pity, (one) pities; nōs miseret, we*  
*pity*. (415.)

**miseria**, -ae, f. [miser], *wretched-*  
*ness, misery*.

**Mithridatēs**, -is, m., *Mithridates,*  
*king of Pontus*.

**mittō**, 3, mīsi, missum, *send*. MIS-  
SION.

**modestia**, -ae, f. [modestus], *mod-*  
*esty*.

**modus**, -ī, m. [modus], *measure*;  
*peck*.

**modo**, adv. [modus], *only; modo*  
*... modo, now ... now*.

**molestus**, -a, -um, adj. [mōlēs,  
*pile*], *troublesome*. MOLEST.

**mollīō**, 4 [mollis], *soften*. MOL-  
LIFY.

**moneō**, 2, -uī, -itum, *remind, ad-*  
*vise, warn*. MONITOR. (112.)

**mōns**, montis, m., *mountain, hill*.  
Cf. collis.

**mōnstrō**, 1 [moneō], *show, point*  
*out*. DEMONSTRATE.

**monumentum**, -ī, n. [moneō],  
(*that which reminds*), *memorial,*  
*monument*.

**mora**, -ae, f., *delay*.

**Morini**, -ōrum, m., *the Morini, a*  
*people of Gaul*.

**moriōr**, 3, mortuus [mors], (*fut.*  
*part. moritūrus*), *die*.

**mōrōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [mōs], *fretful, cross; morose.*

**mortālis**, -e, adj. [mors], (*liable to death*), *mortal.*

**mortuus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of morior], *dead.*

**mors**, mortis, f. [morior], *death.*

**mōs**, mōris, m., *manner, habit, custom.* - (140.) **MORAL.**

**mōtus**, -ūs, m. [moveō], *motion, movement; tumult, disturbance.*

**moveō**, 2, mōvī, mōtum, *move.*

**mox**, adv., *soon, presently.*

**mulier**, -eris, f., *woman.*

**multitūdō**, -inis, f. [multus], *multitude.*

**multum**, adv. [multus], *much.*

**multus**, -a, -um, adj., comp. plūs, superl. plūrimus, *much, many.*

**mundus**, -ī, m., *world, universe.* Cf. orbis terrarum.

**mūniō**, 4 [moenia, *fortifications*], *fortify, defend.*

**mūnitiō**, -ōnis, f. [mūniō], *fortification. MUNITION.*

**mūrus**, -ī, m., *wall.*

**mūtō**, 1, *change, alter.* **MUTATION.**

**nam**, conj., *for.* Cf. enim.

**nanciscor**, 3, nancetus and nactus, *get, obtain; find, meet with.*

**narrō**, 1, tell, relate, report, *narrate.*

**nāscor**, 3, nātus, *be born; be found.*

**Nāsica**, -ae, m., *Nasica, surname of one of the Scipios.*

**nāta**, -ae, f. [P. of nāscor], *daughter.* Cf. filia.

**nātūra**, -ae, f. [nāscor], *nature.*

**nauta**, -ae, m. [for nāvita; nāvis], *sailor.*

**nāvicula**, -ae, f. [diminutive of nāvis], *little vessel, boat.* Cf. cymba.

**nāvigātiō**, -ōnis, f. [nāvigō], *a sailing; navigation.*

**nāvigō**, 1 [nāvis, agō], *sail, set sail.*

**nāvis**, -is, f., *ship.* (154.) **NAVAL.**

**nē**, conj., *that not, lest; w. hortatory subjunctive, not.*

**ne**, interrog. adv., enclitic. (p. 10, n. 2.) Cf. nōme and num.

**necessārius**, -a, -um, adj. [necessē], *necessary.*

**necessitās**, -ātis, f. [necessē], *necessity, constraint.*

**necō**, 1, *kill, slay.* Cf. interficiō and occidō.

**necō**, 3, nexuī and nexī, nexum, *bind, weave.*

**negō**, 1 [nē, aiō, say], *say not, deny; refuse.*

**nēmō**, -inis, m. and f. [nē, homo], *no one.* For gen. and abl. use nullius, nullō.

**Neptūnus**, -ī, m., *Neptune, god of the sea.*

**nē-quāquam**, adv., *by no means, not at all.*

**ne-que or nec**, and *not; neque... neque, neither... nor.*

**nē-sciō**, 4, *know not, be ignorant of neuter*, -tra, -trum, adj., *neither (of two).* (200.) **NEUTRAL.**

**niger**, -gra, -grum, adj., *black.* Cf. ater.

**nihil**, n., *indeed, nothing.*

**nimium**, adv., *too, too much.*

**ni-si**, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

**nix**, nivis, f., *snow.* (167, 2.)

**nōbilitas**, -e, adj. [nōscō], *well-known, famous; noble.*

**noceō**, 2, -uī, -itum, *do harm to, hurt, injure; w. dat. NOXIOUS.* Cf. obsum.

**noctū**, adv. [nox], *by night, in the night.*



**nōlō**, nōlle, nōluī, —, [nē, volō],  
be unwilling, will not, not wish.  
(316.)

**nōmen**, -inis, n. [nōscō], (that by  
which a thing is known), name.  
NOMINAL. (134.)

**nōminō**, 1 [nōmen], name, call.

**nōn**, adv. [nē, ūnum], not.

**nōn-ne**, interrog. adv., expecting  
an affirmative answer, not? Cf.  
-ne and num.

**nōn-nūllus**, -a, -um, adj. (not none),  
some.

**nōnus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [novem],  
ninth.

**nōscō**, 3, nōvī, nōtum, learn, know.  
P. nōtus, -a, -um, as adj. known.

**noster**, -tra, -trum, poss. pron.,  
our, ours. Nostri, our men.

**novus**, -a, -um, adj., new. Nov-  
ELTY.

**nox**, noctis, f., night. (167. 2.)  
NOCTURNAL.

**nūbēs**, -is, f., cloud. (149.)

**nūllus**, -a, -um, adj. [nē, ūllus],  
not any, no, none. (200.) NUL-  
LITY.

**num**, interrog. adv., expecting a  
negative answer, whether. Cf.  
nōnne and -ne.

**Numa**, -ae, m., Numa (Pompilius),  
second king of Rome.

**numerus**, -ī, m., number.

**nummus**, -ī, m., piece of money,  
coin.

**nunc**, adv., now. Cf. jam.

**nunquam**, adv. [nē, unquam],  
never.

**nūntiō**, 1 [nūntius], announce,  
report.

**nūntius**, -ī, m. [nūntiō], bearer of  
news, messenger.

**nusquam**, adv. [nē, usquam], no-  
where.

**nūtrīō**, 4, feed, nourish, support.  
Cf. alō.

**ō**, interj., O, Oh!

**ob-eō**, -īre, -īī, -itum, go to, reach,  
meet.

**ob-ligō**, 1 [ligō, bind], bind, oblige,  
put under obligation.

**obliviscor**, 3, oblitus, forget.

**ob-ruō**, 3, -uī, -utum, overwhelm,  
cover, bury.

**obses**, -sidis, m. and f. [ob, sedeō],  
(one who sits or remains as a  
pledge), hostage.

**ob-sideō**, 2, -sēdī, -sēssum [sedeō],  
(sit against), blockade, besiege.

**ob-sisto**, 3, -stitī, -stitum, oppose,  
withstand, obstruct; w. dat.

**ob-sum**, -esse, -fuī, —, be against,  
opposed to; injure; w. dat.

**ob-temperō**, 1, comply with, yield  
to; w. dat.

**ob-tineō**, 2, -uī, -tentum [teneō],  
hold fast, keep, occupy. OBTAIN.

**ob-viam**, adv., in the way, towards;  
with verb of motion, meet; w. dat.

**occūsus**, -ūs, m. [occidō], (a sink-  
ing), setting.

**occidō**, 3, -cidī, -cāsum [ob, cadō],  
fall down, fall.

**occidō**, 3, -cidī, -cīsum [ob, caedō,  
cut], cut down, kill. Cf. necō and  
interficiō.

**occupō**, 1 [ob, capiō], take posses-  
sion of, seize; occupy. Cf. potior.

**oc-currō**, 3, -currī, -cursum [ob],  
run to meet; meet, fall in with.  
OCCUR.

**ōceanus**, -ī, m., ocean.

**ocellus**, -ī, m. [diminutive of ocu-  
lus], little eye.

**octāvus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [octō],  
eighth.

**octō**, num. adj., indecl., eight.

**oculus**, -ī, m., *eye*. OCULAR.  
**of-ferō**, offere, obtulī, oblātum  
 [ob], (bring before), present, offer.  
 (321.)  
**officium**, -ī, n. [opus, faciō], service,  
 duty, office.  
**olim**, adv. [olle, old form of ille],  
 (at that time); formerly, once; at  
 some time or other; hereafter. Cf.  
 aliquandō and quondam.  
**omnis**, -e, adj., whole, all, every. Cf.  
 tōtus.  
**onus**, -eris, n., load, burden. ON-  
 EROUS.  
**opera**, -ae, f. [opus], labor, care,  
 attention; operam dare, try; ope-  
 rā, on account of. OPERATE.  
**oportet**, 2, -uit, impers. [opus], it  
 is necessary, it behooves; (one)  
 must or ought.  
**oppidānus**, -a, -um, adj. [oppi-  
 dum], of a town; noun, townsman.  
**oppidum**, -ī, n., town.  
**op-pleō**, 2, -ēvi, -ētum [ob], fill  
 up; cover.  
**opportūnus**, -a, -um, adj., fit, con-  
 venient, suitable; *opportune*.  
**op-pūgnō**, 1 [ob], attack, assault,  
 besiege. Cf. expūgnō and obsideō.  
 [ops], opis, f., aid, assistance;  
 plur., power, strength, resources.  
**optimē**, adv. [optimus], most ex-  
 cellently, best. (219.)  
**optō**, 1, wish, desire, long for. Cf.  
 cupiō and dēsiderō.  
**opus**, -eris, n., work, labor (140); as  
 indecl. noun, need, necessity; opus  
 est, it is necessary.  
**ōrāculum**, -ī, n. [ōrō], oracle.  
**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, f. [ōrō], prayer, plea;  
 speech, oration.  
**ōrātor**, -ōris, m. [ōrō], orator, am-  
 bassador.  
**orbis**, -is, m., circle, orb; orbis ter-

rārum, earth, world. (154.)  
**orbis**, -a, -um, adj., bereaved, child-  
 less.  
**Orcus**, -ī, m., *Orcus*, the lower world;  
 also *Pluto*, the god of the lower  
 world.  
**ordior**, 4, orsus, begin, undertake.  
 Cf. incipiō.  
**ōrdō**, -inis, m., row, rank; *order*,  
 arrangement.  
**oriēns**, -entis, m. [P. of orior],  
 rising; east.  
**orior**, 4, ortus (pres. ind. of conj.  
 3, orēris, oritur; imp. subj. orīrer  
 or orīrer; fut. part. oritārus), rise,  
 appear; begin.  
**ōrnāmentum**, -ī, n. [ōrnō], (that  
 which adorns), ornament, jewel.  
**ōrnō**, 1, adorn, ornament.  
**ōrō**, 1 [ōs], pray, beg. Cf. petō and  
 rogō.  
**ōs**, ōris, n., mouth, face. ORAL.  
**os-tendō**, 3, -dī, -tum [ob(s)],  
 (stretch out before), show, display.  
**ōstium**, -ī, n. [ōs], entrance, door.  
**ovis**, -is, f., sheep.  
**ōvum**, -ī, n., egg. OVAL.  
**pābulum**, -ī, n. [pāscō], food, fod-  
 der. Cf. cibus.  
**paene**, adv., nearly, almost. Cf.  
 ferē.  
**paenitentia**, -ae, f. [paeniteō],  
 repentance, penitence. PENITEN-  
 TIARY.  
**palūs**, -ūdis, f., swamp, marsh.  
**pār**, paris, adj., equal.  
**parātus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of parō],  
 ready, prepared.  
**parcō**, 3, perperci (parci), parsum,  
 spare; w. dat.  
**parēns**, -entis, m. and f., parent.  
 (167. 1.)

**pāreō**, 2, -uī, —, (come forth, appear), be obedient to, obey; w. dat.

**pariō**, 3, peperī, paritum and par tum, bring forth, lay.

**pariter**, adv. [pār], equally.

**parō**, 1, make ready, prepare, get.

**pars**, partis, f., **part**, piece, portion, share.

**partior**, 4 [pars], divide; **part**, share.

**Parus**, -ī, f., **Paros**, an island in the Aegean Sea. (11. 4.)

**parvus**, -a, -um, adj. (comp. mi. superl. minimus), small, little.

**pāscō**, 3, pāvī, pāstum, feed, tend; **pasture**.

**passer**, -eris, m., sparrow.

**passus**, -ūs, m. [pateō], (a stretching out of the feet in walking), step, **pace**.

**pāstor**, -ōris, m. [pāscō], feeder, keeper; shepherd. (134.) **PASTOR**.

**pateō**, 2, -uī, —, lie open, be open. P. patēns, open.

**pater**, -tris, m., father. (134.) **PATERNAL**.

**patienter**, adv. [patiēns], **patiently**, with patience.

**patior**, 3, passus, bear, suffer, endure. **PASSION**.

**patria**, -ae, f. [patrius, pater; sc. terra], fatherland, native land, country. **EXPATRIATE**.

**paucus**, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), few, little. **PAUCITY**.

**paulō**, adv. [paulus], by a little, little.

**paulus**, -a, -um, adj., little.

**Paullus**, -ī, m., surname of Æmilius.

**pauper**, -eris, adj., poor. (107. 3.)

**pāx**, pācis, f. (no gen. plur.),

**peace**. **PACIFY**.

**peccātum**, -ī, s. [peccō], mistake,

**fault, sin**.

**peccō**, 1, make a mistake, commit a fault, sin.

**pectus**, -oris, n., breast.

**pecus**, -oris, n., cattle, herd.

**pedes**, -itis, m. [pēs], foot-soldier.

**pējor**, -us, comp. of malus. (208.)

**pellis**, -is, f., skin, hide. **PELT**.

**pēnsum**, -ī, n. [P. of pendō], (what is weighed out, e.g. wool, as a task for spinning), task; lesson, exercise.

**per**, prep. w. acc., through, by, by means of, on account of.

**pēre**, -ae, f., bag, wallet.

**per-agē**, 1 [ager], wander through, pass over, traverse.

**per-dō**, 3, -didī, -ditum, destroy; lose. Cf. amittō.

**per-dūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, lead or bring through.

**per-eō**, -īre, -iī, —, perish, be ruined. (327.)

**per-fodiō**, 3, -fodi, -fossus, dig through, pierce, stab.

**per-fringō**, 3, -frēgī, -fractum, [frangō], break through, break.

**per-fugiō**, 3, -fūgī, —, flee (for refuge).

**pergō**, 3, perrēxī, perrēctum [per, regō], go on, continue.

**periculum**, -ī, n. [perior, try], trial, attempt; risk, danger, **peril**.

**peritus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of perior, try], (having tried), skilful.

**per-mittō**, 3, -misi, -missus, allow, grant, suffer, **permit**. Cf. sinō.

**per-paucus**, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), very few.

**Persae**, -ārum, m., the Persians.

**per-sequor**, 3, -cūtus, follow persistently, follow up.

**per-spiciō**, 3, -spexī, -spectum, [speciō], see through, see into; perceive, observe. **PERSPECTIVE**.

**per-stō**, 1, -stitī, -stātum, *stand fast, persevere, persist.*

**per-terreō**, 2, -uī, -itum, *thoroughly frighten.*

**pertinācia**, -ae, f. [pertināx], *perseverance; obstinacy. PERTINACITY.*

**per-veniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum (*come through to the end*), *arrive. Cf. adveniō.*

**pēs**, pedis, m., *foot. (105.) PEDAL.*

**petō**, 3, -īvī or -īī, -itum, *seek, demand, beg. PETITION. Cf. orō and rogō.*

**Philotimus**, -ī, m., *Philotimus.*

**piger**, -gra, -grum, adj., *slow, lazy, indolent.*

**piger**, 2, -uit or -itum est, *impersonal, it disgusts, (one) is disgusted. (416.)*

**pigritia**, -ae, f. [piger], *laziness, sloth, indolence.*

**pilum**, -ī, n., *javelin.*

**pīpiō**, 1, *chirp.*

**placeō**, 2, -uī, -itum [placidus], *please; w. dat.*

**placidē**, adv. [placidus], *softly, gently, quietly. PLACIDLY.*

**placidus**, -a, -um, adj. [placeō], *gentle, quiet, calm. PLACID.*

**plānitiēs**, -ēī, f. [plānus, *even, level*], (*a flatness*), *level ground, plain.*

**plānus**, -a, -um, adj. [plānitiēs], *even, flat, level, plain.*

**Plataeēnsēs**, -ium, m., *the Plataeans, inhabitants of Plataea.*

**plēbs**, plēbis, f., *the common people, multitude. PLEBEIAN.*

**plēnus**, -a, -um, adj. [pleō, *fill*], *full.*

**plērusque**, -aque, -umque, adj. (*generally plur.*), *very many, most, the greater part.*

**plumbum**, -ī, n., *lead; plumbum album, tin.*

**plūs**, plūris, adj., *comp. of multus. (208.)*

**Plūtō**, -ōnis, *Pluto, m., god (of the lower world) of Hades.*

**pōeulum**, -ī, n., *cup, bowl.*

**poēma**, -atis, n., *poem.*

**poena**, -ae, f. [pūniō], *quit-money, fine, punishment. PENAL.*

**Poenī**, -ōrum, m., *the Carthaginians.*

**Poeniceus**, -a, -um, adj. [Poenī], *Carthaginian. See Pūnicus.*

**poēta**, -ae, m., *poet.*

**polliceor**, 2, *promise. Cf. pōmittō.*

**Polyphēmus**, -ī, m., *Polyphemus, a Cyclops.*

**Pompējus**, -cī, m., *Pompey, a famous Roman general.*

**pōmum**, -ī, n., *fruit.*

**pōndus**, -eris, n. [pendō, *weigh*], *weight.*

**pōnō**, 3, posuī, positum, *put, place, set. POSITION.*

**pōns**, -ntis, m., *bridge.*

**Popēdius**, -ī, m., *Popedius, a Latin.*

**populus**, -ī, m., *people.*

**Porcius**, -ī, m., *a Roman family name.*

**Porsena**, -ae, m., *Porsena, an Etruscan king.*

**porta**, -ae, f., *gate, door. PORTAL. Cf. jānuā.*

**portō**, 1, *carry, bring. Cf. ferō and vehō.*

**porticus**, -ūs, f. [porta], *portico.*

**portus**, -ūs, m., *harbor, port. (247.)*

**possum**, posse, potuī, — [potis, *able, sum*], *be able, can. (292.)*

**post**, prep. w. acc., *after, behind; as adv., for postēū, afterwards, after.*

**post-eā**, adv., *afterwards.*

**posterus**, -a, -um, adj. [post] (comp. posterior, superl. postrēmus or postumus), *following, next*.  
**post-hāc**, adv., *after this time, hereafter, henceforth*.  
**postridiē**, adv. [posterō diē], *on the day after, the following day*.  
**postulō**, 1, ask, demand. Cf. quārō and rogō.  
**potēns**, -entis, adj., [P. of possum], *able, powerful; potent*.  
**potior**, 4 [potis, able], *become master of, get, get possession of; w. gen. or abl. Cf. adipiscor*.  
**praebeō**, 2 [prae, habeō], *hold forth, offer, furnish*.  
**praeceps**, -ipitis, adj. [prae, caput], *head-foremost, headlong; rash, precipitate*.  
**praeceptor**, -ōris, m. [praeceptum], *teacher, preceptor*. Cf. magister.  
**praeceptum**, -ī, n. [praeceptor], *maxim, precept*.  
**praeda**, -ae, f., *booty, spoil, prey*.  
 PREDATORY.  
**praedicō**, 1 [prae, dicō, -āre, make known], *proclaim, boast*.  
**prae-eō**, -īre, -ī, -itum, *go before; be at the head*. (327. 2.)  
**praemium**, -ī, n., *reward, prize*.  
 PREMIUM.  
**praesidium**, -ī, n. [prae, sedeō, sit before], *defence, help; troops, garrison*.  
**praeestāns**, -antis, adj. [P. of prae-stō], *pre-eminent, distinguished*.  
**prae-stō**, 1, -stiti, -stitum (stātum), *stand before; surpass; fulfil, discharge, perform*.  
**prae-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, *be before, at the head of, command; w. dat.*  
**praeter**, prep. w. acc., *beyond, besides, except*.

**praeter-eō**, -īre, -ī, -itum, *go by, pass by, omit*. (327. 2.) PRETERITE.  
**praetōrius**, -a, -um, adj. [praetor], (pertaining to a praetor), *praetorian; noun, ex-praetor*.  
**prātum**, -ī, n., *meadow*.  
**premō**, 3, pressi, pressum, *press; with ōre, bite, eat*.  
**[prex]**, precis, f. (used mostly in plur.), *prayer, entreaty*.  
**primus**, -a, -um, adj. [superl. with comp. prior, no pos.], *first, foremost*. PRIME.  
**princeps**, -ipis, adj. [primus, capiō], (taking the first place), *first, chief; noun, chief, leader*. (105.) PRINCE.  
**prius-quam**, conj., *before that, before*.  
**privō**, 1, *deprive; w. abl.*  
**prō**, interj., *O!*  
**prō**, prep. w. abl., *before, in behalf of, for; considering*.  
**prō-cēdō**, 3, -cessi, -cessum, *go forward, advance, proceed*. Cf. prō-gredior.  
**procul**, adv., *far, far from*.  
**prō-dō**, 3, -didi, -ditum, *give forth; hand down; give up, betray*.  
**prō-dūcō**, 3, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead forth*.  
**proellum**, -ī, n., *battle, combat*. Cf. pūgna.  
**proficiscor**, 3, -fectus, *set out, march, go*. Cf. exeō and ēgredior.  
**pro-fiteor**, 2, -fessus [fateor], *acknowledge, confess, declare*. PROFESS.  
**prō-fligō**, 1, *overthrow, destroy, ruin*.  
 PROFLIGATE.  
**profundus**, -a, -um, adj., *deep, profound*.  
**prō-gredior**, 3, -gressus [gradior,

step], go forward, advance. PROGRESS. Cf. *prōcēdō*.

**pro-hibeō**, 2 [habeo], (*hold in front of*), hold back, check, hinder, prevent, *prohibit*.

**prō-iciō**, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], throw forward, cast away, cast. PROJECT.

**prō-mittō**, 3, -mīsī, -missum [let or send forth], *promise*; let grow. Cf. *polliceor*.

**prope**, prep. w. acc., and adv. (comp. *propius*, superl. *proximē*), near, near to; nearly, almost.

**prō-pōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positum, put before, set forth; make known, declare. PROPOSE.

**prōpositum**, -ī, n. [prōpōnō], purpose, design, resolution. PROPOSITION.

**proprius**, -a, -um, adj., (*one's*) own. PROPER.

**prō-pūgnō**, 1 (*fight in front*), rush out to battle, make sorties.

**prō-sequor**, 3, -cūtus, follow, pursue. PROSECUTE.

**Prōserpina**, -ae, f., *Proserpina*, daughter of *Ceres*.

**prō-sternō**, 3, -strāvī, -strātum, overthrow, destroy; *prostrate*.

**prō-sum**, *prōdesse*, *prōfuī*, —, be useful to, benefit; w. dat. (293.)

**prō-vehō**, 3, -vexī, -vectum, carry forward, convey; in pass., ride, sail.

**prō-videō**, 2, -vīdī, -vīsum, (*see forward*), *provide*.

**prōvincia**, -ae, f., *province*.

**proximus**, -a, -um (superl. with comp. *propior*, no pos.), nearest, next. PROXIMITY.

**prūdēns**, -entis, adj. [for *prōvidēns*], wise, sagacious, knowing, *prudent*. (164.)

**prūdenter**, adv. [prūdēns], *wisely, prudently*.

**prudentia**, -ae, f. [prūdēns], *fore-sight, sagacity, wisdom, prudence*.

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj. [populus], (*pertaining to the people*), *public*.

**Pūblius**, -ī, m., *Publius*, a Roman first name.

**pudet**, 2, *puduit* or *puditum est*, impers., it shames, (*one*) is ashamed.

**puella**, -ae, f. [diminutive of *puer*], girl, maiden.

**puellāris**, -e, adj. [puella], *girlish*.

**puer**, -erī, m., *boy, child*. PUERILE.

**puerulus**, -ī, m. [diminutive of *puer*], little boy.

**pūgna**, -ae, f. [pūgnō], battle, contest. PUGNACIOUS. Cf. *proelium*.

**pūgnō**, 1 [pūgna], fight. Cf. *dīmīcō*.

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrom, adj., *beautiful, fair, comely*.

**pulchritūdō**, -inis, f. [pulcher], beauty.

**pulvis**, -eris, m., *dust*. PULVERIZE.

**Pūnicus**, -a, -um, adj. [Poenī], *Carthaginian, Punic*; mālum Pūnicum, *pomegranate*. See *Poeniceus*.

**pūniō**, 4 [poena], *punish*.

**putō**, 1, *think, believe, reckon*. (429.)

**Pyrēnaeus**, -a, -um, adj., *Pyrenean, Pyrenees*.

**Pyrrhus**, -ī, m., *Pyrrhus, king of Epirus*.

**quadrāgintā**, num. adj., indecl. [quattuor], *forty*.

**quadrīngentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj. [quattuor, centum], *four hundred*.

**quaerō**, 3, *quaesivī* or -īī, *quaesitum*, seek, ask, inquire. (382.)

**quaesō**, 3, -īvī, or -īī, — [old form of *quaerō*], beg, pray.



**quam**, adv.; interrog., *how, how much?* rel., *as much, as, than*; *quam saepissimē, as often as possible.*

**quantus**, -a, -um, adj. [*quam*], *how great, how much; as great as, as much as.*

**quā-rē**, adv. (*on account of which thing*), *wherefore.*

**quārtus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [*quatuor*], *fourth.* **QUART.**

**qua-si**, adv., *as if.*

**quater**, num. adv. [*quattuor*], *four times.*

**quattuor**, num. adj., indecl., *four.*

**quattuor-decim**, num. adj. [*decem*], *fourteen.*

**-que**, conj. enclitic, *and.* Cf. *et, atque, and ac.*

**quercus**, -ūs, F., *oak.* (11. 4.)

**qui**, quae, quod, rel. and adj. pron., *who, which, what, that.* (279.)

**quia**, conj., *because.* Cf. *quod.*

**quidam**, quaedam, quid(quod)-dam, indef. pron., *certain, a certain one, a.* (279. 4.)

**quidem**, adv. (*never the first word*), *indeed, certainly, in truth; nē . . . quidem, not even.*

**quīn**, conj. [*quī, nē*], *but that, that.*

**quīngenti**, -ae, -a, num. adj., indecl. [*quīnque, centum*], *five hundred.*

**quīnquāgintā**, num. adj., indecl. [*quīnque*], *fifty.*

**quīnque**, num. adj., indecl., *five.*

**quīntus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [*quīnque*], *fifth.*

**quīntus decimus**, num. adj., *fifteenth.*

**quis**, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who? which? what?* (279.)

**quisquam**, quidquam (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron., *any, any one (at all).* (279. 4.)

**quisque**, quaeque, quid(quod)que,

indef. pron., *each one, each, every* (279. 4.)

**quō**, adv., *where, whither.*

**quod**, conj., *because.* Cf. *quia.*

**quondam**, adv., *once, formerly.* Cf. *aliquandō* and *olim.*

**quoniam**, adv. [*cum (quom), jam*], *since, because.* Cf. *cum.*

**quoque**, conj. and adv. (following the emphatic word), *also, too.*

**quot**, interrog. and rel. adj., indecl., *how many; as many as.*

**radius**, -ī, M., *beam, ray.*

**rādō**, 3, rāsī, rāsum, *shave.* **RAZOR.**

**rāna**, -ae, F., *frog.*

**rapāx**, -ācis, adj. [*rapīō*], *snatching, greedy, ravenous.* **RAPACIOUS.**

**rapīō**, 3, -uī, -tum [*rapāx*], *seize, snatch, drag away.* **RAPTURE.**

**rārus**, -a, -um, adj., *far apart, dispersed, single.* **RARE.**

**ratio**, -ōnis, F., *plan, method; reason.*

**re-ci-piō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [*capīō*], *take back, get again, receive.* *Sē recipere, withdraw, retreat.*

**recitō**, 1, *read aloud, recite.*

**re-creō**, 1 [*creō, make*], *refresh, recreate.*

**rēctē**, adv. [*rēctus*], *rightly.*

**red-eō**, -īre, -īī, -itum [*re(d)*], *go back, return.* (327. 2.)

**reditus**, -ūs, M. [*redeō*], *return.*

**re-dūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead back, bring back.* **REDUCE.**

**re-ferō**, -ferre, rettulī, -lātum, *carry back, bring back.* (321.) **REFER.** Cf. *reportō.*

**re-ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [*factō*], *make again; repair, restore, rebuild.*

**rēgina**, -ae, F. [*regō*], (*the ruling one*), *queen.*

**regiō**, -ōnis, F., *region.*

**rēgnō**, 1 [rēgnum, rēx], *be king, rule, reign.*

**rēgnum**, -ī, n. [rēx], *kingdom.*

**regō**, 3, rēxī, rēctum [rēx], *rule.*

**Rēgulus**, -ī, m., *Regulus, a Roman consul.*

**re-iciō**, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], *throw back, drive back. REJECT.*

**re-linquō**, 3, -līquī, -līctum [re-līquus], *leave behind, leave. RELINQUISH.*

**reliquus**, -a, -um, adj. [relinquō], *remaining, the rest.*

**re-mittō**, 3, -mīsī, -mīssum, *send back. REMIT.*

**rēmus**, -ī, m., *oar.*

**Rēmus**, -ī, m., *Remus, twin brother of Romulus.*

**re-pellō**, 3, reppulī, repulsum, *drive back, repel, repulse.*

**re-periō**, 4, repperī, repertum [pariō, procure], *find, discover, ascertain. Cf. inveniō.*

**re-petō**, 3, -petīvī or -īī, -petitum, *seek again, demand back; rēs re-petō, demand restitution.*

**re-pleō**, 2, -ēvī, -ētum, (fill again), *fill up, fill. REplete.*

**re-portō**, 1, bring back, carry back. Cf. referō.

**re-prehendō**, 3, -dī, -hēnsūm, hold back, restrain, reprove. REPReHENSIVE.

**re-putō**, 1, (count over), reckon; think over.

**rēs**, reī, f., *thing, event, circumstance, affair (254); rēs publica, republic, state, commonwealth.*

**re-scindō**, 3, -scidī, -scissum, *tear away, break down. RESCIND.*

**re-spondeō**, 2, -dī, -spōnsum, (promise in return), answer, reply, respond.

**re-stituō**, 3, -ui, -ūtum [statuō],

*replace; give back, return, restore. RESTITUTION.*

**re-stō**, 1, restitī, —, stop behind, stand still, remain.

**re-tineō**, 2, -tinuī, -tentum [teneō], hold back, restrain, retain.

**re-vertor**, 3, -tī, -sum (deponent in pres. imp. and fut.), turn back, return. REVERT.

**re-vocō**, 1, call back, recall.

**rēx**, rēgis, m. [regō], (ruler), king. (105.)

**Rhēa Silvia**, -ae, f., *Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.*

**Rhēnus**, -ī, m., *the Rhine.*

**Rhodus**, -ī, f., *Rhodes, an island in the Aegean Sea.*

**riētus**, -ūs, m. [ringor, open the mouth], jaws wide open; jaws.

**rideō**, 2, risī, risum, laugh. Cf. cachinnō. DERIDE.

**risus**, -ūs, m. [rideō], laughter.

**rivus**, -ī, m., *brook, stream. RIVAL.*

**rōbur**, -oris, n., *strength.*

**rogō**, 1, ask, question. Cf. interrogō. (382.)

**Rōma**, -ae, f., *Rome.*

**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma], *Roman; noun, a Roman.*

**Rōmulus**, -ī, m., *Romulus, first king of Rome.*

**rosa**, -ae, f., *rose.*

**rōstrum**, -ī, n. [rōdō, gnaw], beak of a vessel. ROSTRUM.

**rubeō**, 2 [ruber], be red.

**ruber**, -bra, -brum, adj. [rubeō], red. RUBY.

**ruīna**, -ae, f. [ruō, fall], (a falling down), downfall, disaster, ruin.

**rūpēs**, -is, f. [ru(m)pō, break], (the broken thing) cliff, rock.

**rūrsus**, adv. [re-vorsus, revertō], (turned back), back, again.

**rūs**, rūris, n., *the country. (336.)*



**rūsticus**, -ī, m. [rūs], *countryman, peasant*. RUSTIC.

**sacer**, -cra, -crum, adj., *sacred*.

**saepe**, adv., *often, frequently*.

**sagitta**, -ae, f., *arrow*.

**Saguntum**, -ī, n., *Saguntum, a town in Spain*.

**Sallustius**, -ī, m., *Scitust, a Roman historian*.

**salūs**, -ūtis, f., *safety, welfare*. SALUTARY.

**Samnis**, -ītis, m., *a Samnite*.

**sanguis**, -inis, m., *blood*. SANGUINARY. Cf. CRUOR.

**sapiēns**, -entis, adj. [sapiō, *be wise*], *wise, sensible*.

**sapienter**, adv. [sapiēns], *wisely*.

**satis**, adv., *enough*. SATISFY.

**Sāturnus**, -ī, m., *Saturn, god of agriculture*.

**saxum**, -ī, n., *rock*.

**schola**, -ae, f., *school*.

**sciō**, 4, scīvī, scītum, *know, know how*. SCIENCE.

**Scipiō**, -ōnis, m., *Scipio, a famous Roman general*.

**scriba**, -ae, m. [scribō], (*one who writes*), *clerk*. SCRIBE.

**scribō**, 3, scripsī, scriptum [scriba], *write*. SCRIBBLE.

**scriptor**, -ōris, m. [scribō], *writer, author*.

**scriptum**, -ī, n. [scribō], *writing, written work*. SCRIPT.

**scūtum**, -ī, n., *shield*.

**sē-cēdō**, 3, cēssī, cēssum, *go apart, withdraw, retire; secede*.

**secundus**, -a, -um, adj. [sequor], *following, next; second; favorable*.

**sed**, conj., *but*. (393.)

**sedeō**, 2, sēdī, sēssum, *sit*. SESSION.

**sēdēs**, -is, f. [sedeō], *seat, abode*.

**semper**, adv., *always, ever*.

**sempiternus**, -a, -um, adj. [semper], *everlasting*.

**senātor**, -ōris, m. [senex], *senator*.

**senātus**, -ūs, m. [senex], *council of elders, senate*.

**senectūs**, -ūtis, f. [senex], *old age*.

**senex**, senis, adj., *old*; noun, *old man*. (262.) SENILE.

**senior**, -ōris, adj. [comp. of senex], *elder, old person*.

**sēnsus**, -ūs, m. [sentiō], *feeling, sense, perception*.

**sententia**, -ae, f. [sentiō], *opinion, purpose*. SENTENCE.

**sentiō**, 4, sēnsī, sēnsū [sēnsus], *feel, know (by the senses), see, perceive*.

**septem**, num. adj., indecl., *seven*.

**September**, -bris, m. [septem], *September*. Often as adj.

**septem-decim**, num. adj. [decem], *seventeen*.

**septiēs**, num. adv. [septem], *seven times*.

**septimus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [septem], *seventh*.

**sequor**, 3, secātus, *follow*. SEQUENCE.

**serō**, 3, sēvī, satum, *sow, plant*.

**serta**, -ōrum, n. [serō, *plait*], *garlands, wreaths of flowers*.

**sērus**, -a, -um, adj., *late*.

**serviō**, 4, [servus], *be a slave to, serve*; w. dat.

**servitūs**, -ūtis, f. [servus], *slavery, servitude*.

**servō**, 1, *save, keep; preserve*.

**servus**, -ī, m. [serviō], *slave, servant*. (60.)

**sexāgintā**, num. adj., indecl. [sex], *sixty*.

**sextus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [sex], *sixth*.

**si**, conj., *if, whether*.

**sic**, adv., *so, thus, in this manner*.  
Cf. *ita*.

**Sicca**, -ae, *m.*, *Sicca*, a friend of Cicero.

**Stella**, -ae, *f.*, *Sicily*.

**sidus**, -eris, *n.*, *star, constellation*.  
**SIDEREAL**. (301.)

**signum**, -i, *n.*, *mark, sign, signal*.

**silva**, -ae, *f.*, *wood, forest*. **SILVAN**.

**similis**, -e, *adj.* [*simul*], *like, resembling, similar*. (207.)

**simplex**, -icis, *adj.*, *simple, plain, artless*.

**simul**, adv. [*similis*], *at the same time*.

**sīn**, conj. [*sī-nē*], *but if, however, if*.

**sine**, prep. w. *abl.*, *without*.

**singuli**, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, *separate, sing'ly, one by one*. (311. 8.)

**sinister**, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, *left (hand)*. **SINISTER**.

**sino**, 3, *sivī*, *situm*, *allow, permit*.  
Cf. *permittere*.

**sinus**, -ūs, *m.*, *bosom, lap, folds of a garment*.

**sitis**, -is, *f.* (*acc. -im, abl. -i*), *thirst*.

**socer**, -erī, *m.*, *father-in-law*.

**socius**, -i, *m.*, *ally, companion*. **AS-SOCIATE**.

**Sōcratēs**, -is, *m.*, *Socrates*, a famous Greek philosopher.

**sōl**, *sōlis*, *m.*, *sun* (no *gen. plur.*).  
**SOLAR**.

**soleō**, 2, *solitus*, *be accustomed, wont*.  
(p. 177, note 2.)

**Solōn**, -ōnis, *m.*, *Solon*, the great law-giver of Athens.

**sōlus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, *alone, single; sole*. (200.)

**solvō**, 3, *solvī*, *solūtum*, *loose, loosen; break; weigh anchor, set sail*.

**SOLVE**.

**somnus**, -i, *m.*, *sleep*.

**soror**, -ōris, *f.*, *sister*.

**sors**, -tis, *f.*, *lot, condition*. **SORT**.

**sortior**, 4 [*sors*], *draw lots, obtain by lot*.

**spargō**, 3, -sī, -sam, *strew, scatter*.  
**SPARSE**.

**Spartacus**, -i, *m.*, *Spartacus*, a gladiator.

**spatium**, -i, *n.*, *room, space; period*.

**spetō**, 1 [*speciō*], *look at, behold, witness*. **SPECTACLE**.

**speculor**, 1, *spy out, watch*.

**specus**, -ūs, *m.*, *cave, den*.

**spērō**, 1 [*spēs*], *hope, hope for*.

**spēs**, *spei*, *f.* [*spērō*], *hope, expectation*.

**spoliō**, 1, *rob, plunder, spoil, de-spoil*.

**statim**, adv. [*stō*], (*standing there*), *on the spot, immediately, at once*.

**statua**, -ae, *f.* [*statuō*], (*the thing set up*), *statue*.

**statuō**, 3, -uī, -ūtum, *put, place; determine, think, believe*.

**stella**, -ae, *f.*, *star*. (301.) **STELLAR**.

**stō**, 1, *stetī*, *statum*, *stand*.

**strāgēs**, -is, *f.*, *slaughter, carnage*.

**stringō**, 3, -nxī, *strietum* (*draw tight*), *graze; draw, unsheath*.

**studeō**, 2, -uī, — [*studium*], *be eager, strive earnestly for; study; w. dat.*

**studium**, -i, *n.* [*studeō*], *zeal, eagerness; study*.

**stultitia**, -ae, *f.* [*stultus*], *folly*.

**stultus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, *foolish, silly*.

**suāvis**, -e, *adj.*, *sweet, delightful*.  
Cf. *dulcis*. **SEAVITY**.

**suāviter**, adv. [*suāvis*], *sweetly, delightfully*.

**sub-dūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *draw from under, draw up*.

**subeō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, *go under or up to, enter; undergo*. (327.)

**subitō**, adv. [subeō], *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

**sub-moveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum (move from beneath), *remove, drive away.*

**subsidiū**, -ī, n. [subsidiō], *aid, support, relief, assistance.*

**sub-siliō**, 4, -uī, — [siliō, leap], *jump up.* Cf. dēsiliō and trānsiliō.

**sub-veniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum (come to one's relief), *help, aid, assist.* Cf. succurrō.

**suc-currō**, 3, -currī, -cursum [sub], (run up to), *help, aid, succor.*

**suf-ferō**, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum [sub], *bear up under, undergo.* SUFFER.

**suī**, reflex. pron., *of himself (herself, itself, themselves).* (264.)

**Sūlla**, -ae, m., *Sulla, a famous Roman general and statesman.*

**sum**, esse, fuī, —, *be, exist.* (72.)

**summus**, -a, -um, adj., superl. of superus, *highest.*

**sūmō**, 3, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take, take up; assume.*

**super**, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over, above, on top of.*

**superbē**, adv. [superbus], *proudly, haughtily.*

**superbus**, -a, -um, adj. [super], *proud.* SUPERB.

**superior**, -us, adj., comp. of superus, *higher, superior.*

**superō**, 1 [super], *pass over; surpass, overcome; conquer.* (186.)

**super-sum**, -esse, -fuī, —, *remain over; survive, exist.*

**suprēmus**, -a, -um, adj., sup. of superus, *highest; last.*

**sus-ci-piō**, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [sub, capiō], *undertake.*

**sus-pendō**, 3 -dī, -pēnsūm [sub], *hang up, suspend, hang.*

**suspicio**, 1 [suspiciō, look askance at], *mistrust, suspect.*

**sustineō**, 2, -tinuī, -tentum [sub, teneō], *hold up, bear, endure; sustain.*

**suus**, -a, -um, poss. pron. [suī], *his, hers, her, its, theirs, their (own).*

**taceō**, 2, tacuī, tacitum, *be silent, be silent about.* TACIT.

**taedet**, 2, taeduit, taesum est, *impers., it disgusts, wearies; (one) is disgusted, wearied.* (416.)

**tālea**, -ae, f., *thin bar.*

**tam**, adv., *so; tam . . . quam, as . . . as.* Cf. ita and sic.

**tamen**, adv., *yet, but, nevertheless.*

**tandem**, adv. [tam], *(just so far), at length, finally.*

**tangō**, 3, tetigī, tactum, *touch.*

**tantō**, adv. [tantus], *by so much, so much the (with comparatives).*

**tantum**, adv. [tantus], *only.*

**tantus**, -a, -um, adj., *so great.*

**Tarentinus**, -a, -um, adj., *of Tarentum, Tarentine.*

**Tarquinius**, -ī, m., *Tarquin the Proud, seventh king of Rome.*

**tectum**, -ī, n. [tegō, cover], *covering, shelter, roof.*

**tēlum**, -ī, n., *weapon.*

**temerārius**, -a, -um [temerē], *rash, inconsiderate.*

**temerē**, adv., *rashly, inconsiderately.*

**temeritās**, -ātis, f. [temerē], *chance; rashness, temerity.*

**tempestūs**, -ātis, f. [tempus], *(state or condition of time), weather; stormy weather, storm, tempest.*

**templum**, -ī, n., *temple.*

**tempus**, -oris, n., *time.* TEMPORAL.

**tenebrae**, -arum, f., *darkness, shades.*

**tenebricōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [tenebrae], (*full of darkness*), dark, gloomy.

**teneō**, 2, -uī, tentum, *hold, keep, have*; memoriā tenēre, *remember*.

**tener**, -era, -erum, adj., *soft, delicate, tender*.

**tenuls**, -e, adj., *thin, light*.

**ter**, num. adv. [trēs], *thrice, three times*.

**Terentius**, -ī, m., *a Roman family name*.

**tergum**, -ī, n., *back*.

**terra**, -ae, f., *earth, land*. **TER-  
RACE**.

**terreō**, 2 [terror], *frighten, alarm, terrify*.

**terror**, -ōris [terreō], *terror, alarm*.

**tertiō**, adv. [tertius], *the third time*.

**tertius**, -a, -um, num. adj. [trēs], *third*.

**tertius decimus**, num. adj., *thirteenth*.

**testimōnium**, -ī, n. [testor, bear witness], *witness, evidence, testimony*.

**testūdō**, -inis, f. [testa, shell], *tortoise; shed or covering to protect besiegers*.

**Teutonēs**, -um, m., *the Teutons, a German tribe*.

**Thalēs**, -is, m., *Thales, a Greek philosopher*.

**Themistoclēs**, -is, m., *Themistocles, a famous Athenian*.

**Ticinus**, -ī, m., *the Ticinus, a river of Italy*.

**tigris**, -is, or -idis, *tiger*.

**timeō**, 2, -uī. — [timor], *fear, be afraid of*.

**Timoleōn**, -ontis, m., *Timoleon, a Corinthian general*.

**timor**, -ōris, m. [timeō], *fear, dread, alarm*. **TIMOROUS**.

**tolerō**, 1, *bear, endure*. **TOLERATE**.

**tollō**, 3, sustulī, sublātum, *lift, raise, pick up; weigh (anchor)*.

**tot**, adj., indecl., *so many*. Cf. quot.

**tōtus**, -a, -um, adj., *whole, all, entire*. (200.) **TOTAL**.

**tractō**, 1 [trahō], *handle, manage, treat*.

**trā-dō**, 3, -didi, -ditum [trāns], *give over, deliver; relate, recount*. **TRA-  
DITION**.

**trahō**, 3, traxī, -ctum, *draw, drag; derive*.

**trā-icō**, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [trāns, jaciō], *throw across; pass over, cross*.

**trājectus**, -ūs, m. [trāicō], *a crossing over, passage*.

**tranquillitās**, -ātis, f. [tranquillus], *calmness, tranquillity; a calm*.

**trāns**, prep. w. acc., *across, beyond, over*.

**trān-scendō**, 3, -dī, -scēsum [scandō, climb], *step or pass over; cross*. **TRANSCEND**.

**trāns-eō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, *go over, cross*. (372.)

**trāns-figō**, 3, -fixī, -fixum, *pierce through, pierce, stab; transfix*.

**trān-silīō**, 4, -iī, and -uī, — [salīō, leap], *leap over or across*. Cf. dēsiliō and subsiliō.

**trecenti**, -ae, -a, num. adj. [trēs, centum], *three hundred*.

**tredecim**, num. adj., indecl. [trēs, decem], *thirteen*.

**trēs**, tria, num. adj., *three*. (311. 4.)

**tribūnus**, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe], *tribune*.

**trigintā**, num. adj., indecl. [trēs], *thirty*.

**tripartitō**, adv. [trēs, partior], *in three divisions*.

**trīstis**, -e, adj., *sad, gloomy*.  
**trīumphus**, -i, *triumph*.  
**tū**, pers. pron., *thou*. (264.)  
**tuba**, -ae, f., *trumpet*. (14.)  
**tueor**, 2, *tuitus*, and *tūtus*, *look at; watch, defend, guard*. Cf. *dēfendō*.  
**Tullia**, -ae, f., *Tullia*, Cicero's daughter.  
**tum**, adv., *at that time, then*.  
**tunc**, adv. [tum], *at that time, then*.  
**turgidulus**, -a, -um, adj., *swollen*.  
 Tergid.  
**turpis**, -e, adj., *ugly, foul; base, disgraceful, shameful*.  
**turpiter**, adv. [turpis], *foully, basely, shamefully*.  
**turpitūdō**, -inis, f. [turpis], *ugliness, baseness*.  
**turris**, -is, f., *tower*. (149.)  
**tūtus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of tueor], *safe*.  
**tuus**, -a, -um, poss. pron., *thy, thine; your, yours* (of only one).  
**tyrannus**, -ī, m., *tyrant*.

**ubi**, adv., *where, when*.  
**ūllus**, -a, -um, adj. [for *ūnulus*, diminutive of *ūnus*], *any, any one*. (200.)  
**ūltior**, -us, adj., comp. (no positive), *further*.  
**ūltimus**, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *ūltior*), *furthest, last*. ULTIMATE.  
**umerus**, -ī, m., *shoulder*.  
**unde**, adv., *whence*.  
**undique**, adv., *from all parts, on all sides, everywhere*.  
**uni-versus**, -a, -um, adj., (turned into one), *all together*.  
**unquam**, adv., *at any time, ever*.  
**ūnus**, -a, -um, num. adj., *one; alone*. (200, 311, 3.)

**urbs**, -is, f., *city*. (163.) SUB-URBS.  
**urgeō**, 2, *ursī*, —, *press, drive, impel, urge*.  
**usque**, adv., *all the time, continually*.  
**ut** or **uti**, adv. and conj., *how, as; that, in order that, so that*.  
**uter**, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron., *which of two*. (200.)  
**uterque**, *utraque*, *utrumque*, indef. pron., *each of two, both*. (200.)  
**ūtills**, -e, adj. [ūtor], *useful, advantageous*.  
**utī nām**, adv., *would that, O that, I wish that*.  
**ūtor**, 3, *ūsus*, *use, employ*; w. abl.  
**utrum**, adv., *whether*; used chiefly in double questions.  
**ūva**, -ae, f., *grape, bunch of grapes*.  
**uxor**, -ōris, f., *wife*. Cf. *conjunx*.

**vagor**, 1, *go to and fro, wander*.  
 VAGRANT.  
**valeō**, 2, -uī, -itum, *be strong or well; valē, farewell, good by*. Cf. *convalescō*.  
**valētūdō**, -inis, f. [valeō], *state of health, health*.  
**validus**, -a, -um, adj. [valeō], *strong, stout, sturdy*. VALID.  
**vallis** (or *vallēs*), -is, f., *valley, vale*.  
**varius**, -a, -um, adj., *different, changeable, various*.  
**Varrō**, -ōnis, m., *Varro*, a Roman consul.  
**vastō**, 1 [vastus, waste, desolate], *lay waste, ravage*.  
**vehō**, 3, *vexi, vectum*, *carry, draw, convey; pass, ride, sail*.  
**velōx**, -ōcis, adj., *swift, fleet, quick*. (179.) VELOCITY.  
**vērātor**, -ōris, m. [vērōr, hunt], *hunter*.

**venenum**, -i, n., *poison*. VENOM.  
**venia**, -ae, f., *indulgence, mercy, kindness*. VENIAL.  
**veniō**, 4, vēnī, ventum, *come*.  
**ventus**, -i, m., *wind*.  
**Venus**, -eris, f., *Venus, goddess of love*.  
**Venusia**, -ae, f., *Venusia, a town in Apulia*.  
**venustus**, -a, -um, adj. [Venus], *lovely, charming*.  
**vēr**, vēris, n., *spring*. VERNAL.  
**verbum**, -i, n., *word*. VERB.  
**vereor**, 2, *reverence, respect, fear*.  
**vērō**, adv. and conj. [vērus], *in truth, in fact, but in fact*.  
**vērūm**, -i, n. [vērus], *the truth*.  
**vērus**, -a, -um, adj., *true, real*.  
**vester**, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., *your, yours (of more than one)*.  
**veterrimus**, -a, -um, adj., *superl. of vetus*.  
**vestiō**, 4 [vestis, garment], *clothe*.  
**vetō**, 1, -uī, -itum, *forbid, prevent*. VETO.  
**vetus**, -eris, adj. (comp. vetustior, superl. veterrimus), *old*. (141, 208.)  
**vetustior**, -us, adj., *comp. of vetus*.  
**vīa**, -ae, f., *way, road, street*.  
**vicinus**, -a, -um, adj. [vīcus], *near, neighboring*. VICINITY.  
**victor**, -ōris, m. [vi(n)cō], *conqueror, victor*.  
**victōria**, -ae, f. [victor], *victory*.  
**vīcus**, -i, m., *village*.  
**videō**, 2, vīdī, vīsum, *see, perceive; pass., be seen, seem*. VISION.  
**vigil**, adj. [vigēō, be lively], *watchful*. (151. 4.) VIGILANT.  
**vigilla**, -ae, f. [vigilō, vigil], *a watching, watch, i.e., the fourth part of the night*.  
**vigilō**, 1 [vigil], *watch*.

**viglati**, num. adj., indecl., *twenty*.  
**vinciō**, 4, vīxī, vīctum, *bind*.  
**vincō**, 3, vīcī, vīctum, *conquer, defeat*. (136.)  
**vindicō**, 1, *claim; avenge, punish*. VINDICATE.  
**vīnum**, -i, n., *wine*.  
**viola**, -ae, f., *violet*.  
**vir**, virī, m., *man, hero*. (138, 262.)  
**virgō**, -inis, f., *maiden, virgin*.  
**virtūs**, -ūtis, f. [vir], *(manliness), courage, bravery; virtue*.  
**vis**, vis, f. (gen. and dat., rare), *strength, power*. (262.)  
**vita**, -ae [vivō], *life*. VITAL.  
**vītis**, -is, f. [vīcō, twist together], *vine*.  
**vītium**, -i, n. [vītis], *(a moral twist), fault, blemish, vice*. Cf. culpa.  
**vītō**, 1, *avoid, shun*.  
**vītum**, -i, n., *woad, a dye*.  
**vituperō**, 1, *blame, censure*. VITUPERATION. Cf. culpō.  
**vīvō**, 3, vīxī, vīctum [vīvus], *live*. (191.)  
**vīvus**, -a, -um, adj. [vivō], *alive, living*.  
**vix**, adv., *hardly, with difficulty*.  
**volō**, velle, voluī, —, *wish, be willing, desire, intend*. (316, 344.)  
**voluptās**, -ātis, f., *pleasure, enjoyment*.  
**vōx**, vōcis, f. [vocō, call], *voice*.  
**vulnerō**, 1 [vulnus], *wound, hurt, injure*. VULNERABLE.  
**vulnus**, -eris, n. [vulnerō], *wound*.  
**vulpēs**, -is, f., *fox*.  
**vultus**, -ūs, m., *countenance, looks, features*.  
**Zama**, -ae, f., *Zama, a town in Africa*.



# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

## a

**a**, *commonly not translated*; quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (279. 5).  
**able** (be), possum (292).  
**about**, dē, *w. abl.*  
**absent** (be), absum (297).  
**accept**, accipiō, 3.  
**accompany**, comitor, 1.  
**accord** (own), ipse, -a, -um (270. 6).  
**accuse**, accūsō, 1.  
**across**, trāns, *w. acc.*  
**act**, agō, 3.  
**admire**, admiror, 1.  
**admonish**, moneō, 2 (112).  
**adorn**, ōrnō, 1.  
**advance**, prōcēdō, 3; prōgredior, 3.  
**advice**, cōsiliū, -ī, n.  
**advise**, moneō, 2 (112).  
**afar**, longē.  
**affair**, rēs, rei, f. (254).  
**afraid** (be), metuō, 3; timeō, 2.  
**Africa**, Āfrica, -ae, f.  
**after**, post, *w. acc.*; cum, *w. subj.*; postquam, *w. ind.*  
**afterwards**, postea, deinde.  
**again**, iterum, rursus.  
**against**, adversus, contra, *acc. w. acc.*  
**age** (old), senectūs, -ātis, f.  
**agriculture**, agrī cultūra, -ae, f.  
**aid**, auxilium, -ī, n.  
**air**, āer, āeris, m.  
**Alexander**, Alexander, -dri, m.  
**alive**, vivus, -a, -um.

## arrangement

**all**, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um (200).  
**Alps**, Alpēs, -ium, f.  
**alone**, sōlus, -a, -um (200).  
**aloud** (read), recitō, 1.  
**altar**, āra, -ae, f.  
**always**, semper.  
**ambassador**, lēgātus, -ī, m.; ōrātor, -ōris, m.  
**among**, in, *w. abl.*; inter, *w. acc.*  
**ancient**, antiquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris (141).  
**and**, et; atque, or āc; -que.  
**Androclus**, Androclus, -ī, m.  
**anger**, ira, -ae, f.  
**angrily**, cum irā (144).  
**animal**, animal, -ālis, n. (149).  
**another**, alius, -a, -ud (201); *one . . . another*, alius . . . alius.  
**another's**, aliēnus, -a, -um.  
**answer**, respondeō, 2, *w. dat.*  
**any**, ūllus, -a, -um (200); aliquis, -qua, -quid, or -quod (279); quis (p. 211, note 15); quisquam, —, quidquam (270. 6).  
**approach**, appropinquō, 1, *w. dat.*, and ad, *w. acc.*  
**arm**, n., brachium, -ī, n.  
**arm**, v., armō, 1.  
**arms**, arma, -ōrum, n.  
**army**, exercitus, -ūs, m., *the general word*; *on the march*, āgmen, -inis, n.; *in order of battle*, aciēs, -iēs, f.  
**Arpinum**, Arpinum, -ī, n.  
**arrangement**, ōrdō, -inis, m.

**arrival**, adventus, -ūs, m.  
**arrive**, adveniō, 4; perveniō, 4.  
**arrow**, sagitta, -ae, f.  
**art**, ars, artis, f.  
**as**, ut; *as . . . as*, tam . . . quam;  
*same . . . as*, idem . . . quī; (= *since*), cum; (= *when*), cum.  
**Asia**, Asia, -ae, f.  
**ashamed (be)**, pudet, 2 (415).  
**ask of**, quaerō, 3.  
**assemble**, conveniō, 4.  
**at**, in, *w. acc. or abl.*; ad, *w. acc.*;  
 apud, *w. acc.*; *in combination w.*  
*verbs (wonder at, etc.)*, see the  
*verbs*; *w. names of towns, locative*  
*case* (334).  
**Athenian**, Athēniēnsis, -e.  
**Athens**, Athēnae, -ārum, f.  
**attentively**, diligenter.  
**author**, auctor, -ōris, m.  
**away (go)**, abeō (327); discēdō, 3.  
**away from**, ā or ab, *w. abl.*; ē or  
 ex, *w. abl.*

**back (bring or carry)**, referō  
 (321); reportō, 1.  
**bad**, malus, -a, -um; improbus, -a,  
 -um.  
**basely**, turpiter.  
**battle**, pūgna, -ae, f.; proellum,  
 -ī, n.  
**be**, sum (73).  
**bear**, ferō (321); vehō, 3; tolerō,  
 1; (off), auferō.  
**beast**, bēstia, -ae, f.  
**beautiful**, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.  
**beauty**, pulchritūdō, -inis, f.  
**because**, quod; quia.  
**become**, fiō (327); it becomes,  
 decet, 2 (415).  
**beg**, petō, 3; ōrō, 1.  
**begin**, incipiō, 3; ordior, 4.  
**believe**, crēdō, 3, *w. dat.*

**benefit**, n., beneficium, -ī, n.  
**benefit**, v., prōsum (293), *w. dat.*  
**besiege**, obsideō, 2; oppugnō, 1.  
**best**, optimus, -a, -um.  
**better**, melior, -us, *compar. of* bo-  
 nus (208).  
**between**, inter, *w. acc.*  
**big**, māgnus, -a, -um.  
**bind**, vinciō, 4.  
**bird**, avis, -is, f. (154).  
**black**, niger, -gra, -grum; āter,  
 ātra, ātrum.  
**blame**, vituperō, 1; culpō, 1.  
**blind**, caecus, -a, -um.  
**blood**, sanguis, -inis, m.; cruor,  
 -ōris, m.  
**boar**, aper, aprī, m.  
**boat**, nāvicula, -ae, f.; cymba,  
 -ae, f.  
**body**, corpus, -oris, n.  
**bold**, audāx, -ācis.  
**boldly**, audācter.  
**book**, liber, -brī, m.  
**booty**, praeda, -ae, f.  
**born (be)**, nāscor, 3.  
**Boston**, Bostonia, -ae, f.  
**both (each of two)**, uterque, utra-  
 que, utrumque (200); both . . .  
 and, et . . . et.  
**boy**, puer, -erī, m.  
**bow**, arcus, -ūs, m. (247).  
**brave**, fortis, -e.  
**bravely**, fortiter.  
**bravery**, fortitūdō, -inis, f.  
**break**, frangō, 3; (through) 1;  
 fringō, 8.  
**breeze**, ventus, -ī, m.; aura, -ae, f.  
**bribe**, corrumpō, 3.  
**bridge**, pōns, pontis, m.  
**bring**, portō, 1; ferō (321); (up),  
 educō, 1.  
**Britain**, Britannia, -ae, f.  
**broad**, lātus, -a, -um.  
**brook**, rīvus, -ī, m.



**brother**, frāter, -tris, M.

**Brutus**, Brūtus, -ī, M.

**bulld**, aedificō, I.

**burden**, onus, -eris, N.

**but**, at; autem; sed (393); (**that**), quin.

**buy**, emō, 3.

**by**, ā, ab, *w. abl.*; (*denoting means or instrument*), *w. abl. alone*.

**Caesar**, Caesar, -aris, M.

**call**, nōminō, I; appellō, I; vocō, I.

**calm**, aequus, -a, -um; placidus, -a,

**camp**, castra, -ōrum, N. [-um.

**Campania**, Campānia, -ae, F.

**can**, possum (292).

**care**, cūra, -ae, F.

**carefully**, diligenter; cum cūrā (144).

**carry**, portō, I; ferō (321); (**back**), referō; *carry on war*, bellum gerere.

**cart**, carrus, -ī, M.

**Carthage**, Carthāgō, -inis, F.

**Cato**, Catō, -ōnis, M.

**certain (a)**, quīdam, quaedam, quid(quod)dam (271.4); *sure*, certus, -a, -um.

**chance**, fors, -tis, F.; cāsus, -ūs, M.

**change**, mūtō, I.

**cherish**, colō, 3.

**chief**, princeps, -cipis, M.

**children**, puerī, -ōrum, M.; liberī, -ōrum, M. (60).

**Cicero**, Cicerō, -ōnis, M.

**Cimbri**, Cimbri, -ōrum, M.

**circumstance**, rēs, rei, F.

**citadel**, arx, arcis, F.

**citizen**, cīvis, -is, M. and F. (154.)

**city**, urbs, -is, F.

**clerk**, scrība, -ae, M.

**cliff**, rūpēs, -is, F.

**clothe**, vestiō, 4.

**cold**, *adj.*, frīgīdus, -a, -um.

**cold**, *n.*, frīgus, -oris, N.

**Collatinus**, Collatīnus, -ī, M.

**come**, veniō, 4; (**down**), dēscendō, 3; (**out**), ēgredior, 3; (**together**), conveniō, 4; (**off**), abeō (327).

**coming**, *n.*, adventus, -ūs, M.

**command**, imperō, I, *w. dat.*; jubēō, 2, *w. acc.*; praesum, *w. dat.*

**commander**, imperātor, -ōris, M.; dux, ducis, M.

**commonwealth**, rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae, F.

**comrade**, comes, -itis, M. and F.

**companion**, comes, -itis, M. and F.

**compel**, cōgō, 3.

**condemn**, damnō, I.

**conquer**, superō, I; vincō, 3 (186).

**consul**, cōsul, -is, M.

**consulship**, cōsulātus, -ūs, M.

**contemplate**, contemplor, I.

**contented**, contentus, -a, -um, *w. abl.*

**converse**, colloquor, 3.

**Corinth**, Corinthus, -ī, F.

**Cornelia**, Cornēlia, -ae, F.

**correct**, corrigō, 3.

**counsel**, cōsiliū, -ī, N.

**country (fatherland)**, patria, -ae, F.; (*not city*), rūs, rūris, N.

**courage**, virtūs, -ūtis, F.

**covered with leaves**, frondōsus, -a, -um.

**cowardice**, ignāvia, -ae, F.

**cowardly**, ignāvus, -a, -um.

**create**, creō, I.

**creator**, creatōr, -ōris, M.

**cross**, *tr.*, transcendō, 3; *tr. and intr.*, transeō (327).

**cruelly**, crūdēlter.

**cultivate**, colō, 3.

**Cumae**, Cūmae, -ārum, F.

**cunning**, *n.*, calliditās, -ātis, F.

**cup**, pōculum, -ī, N.  
**Cyrus**, Cŷrus, -ī, M.

**Dædalus**, Daedalus, -ī, M.  
**daily**, cotīdiē.  
**danger**, perīculum, -ī, N.  
**daughter**, fīlia, -ae, F.  
**day**, diēs, -ēī, M. and F. (254).  
**daybreak** (at), primā lūce.  
**dear**, cārus, -a, -um.  
**death**, mors, -tis, F.  
**deep**, altus, -a, -um; profundus, -a, -um.  
**defeat**, n., clādēs, -is, F.  
**defeat**, v., vincō, 3; superō, 1 (186).  
**defend**, dēfendō, 3.  
**defender**, dēfēnsor, -ōris, M.  
**delay**, mora, -ae, F.  
**delight**, dēlectō, 1.  
**deliver**, dēferō (321).  
**demand restitution**, rēs repetō, 3.  
**Demosthenes**, Dēmōsthenēs, -is.  
**depart**, discēdō, 3; exeō (327).  
**deprive**, prīvō, 1; w. *abl.*  
**descend**, dēscendō, 3.  
**desert**, dēserō, 3.  
**deserve**, mereō, mereor, 2.  
**design**, cōnsilium, -ī, N.  
**desire**, volō (316); dēsīderō, 1 (319); cupiō, 3.  
**despair**, dēspērō, 1.  
**despise**, contemnō, 3.  
**destroy**, dēlēō, 2.  
**difficult**, difficilis, -e. (207).  
**difficulty** (with), vix.  
**diligently**, diligenter.  
**discharge**, fungor, 3, w. *abl.*  
**disclose**, ēnūtiō, 1.  
**disgraceful**, turpis, -e.  
**disgusted** (be), piget, 2 (416).  
**divide**, dividō, 3; (*share*), par-tior, 4.

**do**, faciō, 3; agō, 3.  
**dog**, canis, -is, M. and F.  
**doubt**, n., dubium, -ī, N.  
**doubt**, v., dubitō, 1.  
**doubtful**, dubius, -a, -um.  
**dove**, columba, -ae, F.  
**down** (tear), rescindō, 3; (*come*) dēscendō, 3.  
**draw**, trahō, 3; (*up*), subducō, 3.  
**drink**, bibō, 3.  
**drive**, agō, 3; (*off*), submoveō, 2.  
**duty**, officium, -ī, N.  
**dwell**, habitō, 1; vīvō, 3 (194).

**each** (one), quisque quaeque, quid(quod)que (279. 4); (*of two*), uterque utraque, utrumque (200).  
**eagle**, aquila, -ae, F.  
**earth**, terra, -ae, F.  
**easily**, facile.  
**easy**, facilis, -e. (207).  
**eat**, edō, 3.  
**egg**, ōvum, -ī, N.  
**eight**, octō.  
**eighth**, octāvus, -a, -um.  
**either ... or**, aut ... aut.  
**elegant**, ēlegāns, -antis.  
**elephant**, elephantus, -ī, M.  
**else**, alius, -a, -ud (201).  
**embark**, cōnscendō, 3.  
**employ**, admoveō, 2; ūtor, 3, w. *abl.*  
**encircle**, cingō, 3.  
**end**, n., fīnis, -is, M. (154).  
**end**, v., fīniō, 4.  
**endure**, patior, 3; ferō (321), tolerō, 1.  
**endurance**, fortitūdō, -inis, F.  
**enemy**, hostis, -is, M. and F.; inimicus, -ī, M. (172).  
**enjoy**, fruor, 3, w. *abl.*  
**Ennius**, Ennius, -ī, M.

**enough**, satis.  
**enter**, ingredior, 3; ineō (327).  
**entertain the hope**, veniō in spem.  
**entreaty**, precēs, -um, f.  
**Epirus**, Ēpīrus, -ī, f.  
**equally**, pariter.  
**equanimity**, aequus animus, m.  
**Europe**, Eurōpa, -ae, f.  
**even**, etiam; ipse (270. 6).  
**evident (it is)**, cōstat, l.  
**excellently**, optimē.  
**explain**, explicō, l.  
**expulsion**, P. of expellō.  
**eye**, oculus, -i, m.  
**Fabrielus**, Fabricius, -ī, m.  
**fact**, rēs, rei, f.  
**fall**, dēficiō, 3; dēsum (297).  
**fair**, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.  
**faithful**, fīdus, -a, -um; fīdēlis, -e.  
**faithfully**, fīdēlīter.  
**Faliscans**, Faliscī, -ōrum, m.  
**famous**, clārus, -a, -um.  
**far and wide**, longē lātēque.  
**farmer**, agricola, -ae, m.  
**father**, pater, -tris, m.  
**father-in-law**, socer, -erī, m.  
**fault**, vitium, -ī, n.; culpa, -ae, f.; *find fault with*, vituperō, 1; culpō, 1.  
**favor**, faveō, 2, w. dat.  
**fear**, n., metus, -ūs, m.  
**fear**, v., timeō, 2; metuō, 3.  
**few**, paucī, -ae, -a.  
**fidelity**, fīdēs, -eī, f.  
**field**, ager, agrī, m.  
**fierce**, atrōx, -ōcis; ferōx, -ōcis.  
**fiftieth**, quīnquāgēsīmus, -a, -um.  
**fifty**, quīnquāgīntā.  
**fight**, pūgnō, 1; dīmīcō, 1.  
**fill**, impleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum; com-pleō, 2.  
**finally**, dēnīque.

**find**, reperīō, 4; invenīō, 4.  
**finger**, digitus, -ī, m.  
**finish**, fīnīō, 4; cōficiō, 3.  
**fire**, īgnis, -is, m.  
**first**, prīmus, -a, -um.  
**fit**, aptō, 1.  
**five**, quīnque.  
**five hundred**, quīngentī, -ae, -a.  
**flee**, fugiō, 3.  
**fleet**, clāssis, -is, f. (154)  
**flight**, fuga, -ae, f.  
**flock**, grex, gregis, f.  
**flow**, fluō, 3.  
**flower**, flōs, flōris, m.  
**fodder**, pābulum, -ī, n.  
**follow**, sequor, 3.  
**folly**, stultitia, -ae, f.  
**food**, cibus, -ī, m.  
**foot**, pēs, pedis, m.  
**foot-soldier**, pedes, -itis, m.  
**for**, conj., nam; enim (*not the first word*).  
**for**, sign of dative; prep., dē, prō, w. abl.; of time, space, purpose, in, w. acc.  
**forces**, cōpia, -arum, f.  
**forget**, obliviscor, 3.  
**forgetful**, oblītus, -a, -um.  
**former (the)**, ille (275. 6).  
**forth (go)**, exeō (327); ēgre-dior, 3.  
**fortify**, mūniō, 4.  
**fortune**, fortūna, -ae, f.  
**forty**, quadrāgīntā.  
**forum**, forum, -ī, n.  
**forward (go)**, prōcēdō, 3; prō-gredior, 3.  
**foully**, turpiter.  
**fourteen**, quattuordecim.  
**fourth**, quārtus, -a, -um.  
**free**, liber, -era, -erum. (71.)  
**free from**, liberō, 1; w. abl.  
**friend**, amīcus, -ī, m.  
**frighten**, terreō, 2.

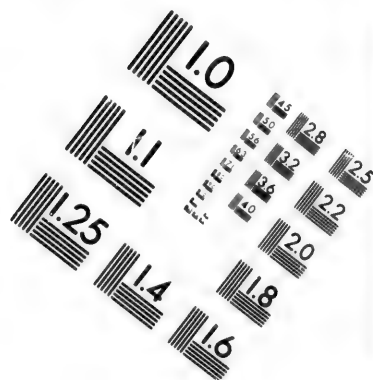
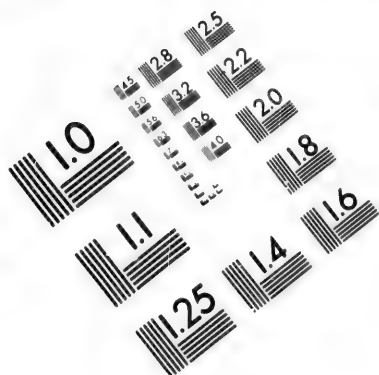
**frog**, rāna, -ae, F.  
**from**, dē, w. abl.; *away from*, ā or  
 ab, w. abl.; *out of*, ē or ex, w.  
 abl.; (*afar*), longē.  
**fruit**, frūctus, -ūs, M.  
**full**, plēnus, -a, -um.  
**furnish**, praebeō, 2.

**Galba**, Galba, -ae, M.  
**game**, lūdus, -ī, M.  
**garden**, hortus, -ī.  
**Gaul**, Gallia, -ae, F.  
**Gauls**, Gallī, -ōrum, M.  
**general**, dux, ducis, M. and F.;  
 imperātor, -ōris, M.  
**Germans**, Germānī, -ōrum, M.  
**get**, adipiscor, 3; (*possession*),  
 potior, 4, w. abl.; (*by lot*),  
 sortior, 4.  
**gift**, dōnum, -ī, N.  
**girl**, puella, -ae, F.  
**give**, dō, 1.  
**glory**, glōria, -ae, F.  
**go**, eō (327); (*forth or out*), exeō;  
 (*off or away*), abeō; discēdō, 3;  
 (*down*), dēscendō, 3.  
**God**, Deus, -ī, M. (262).  
**goddess**, dea, -ae, F.  
**gold**, aurum, -ī, N.  
**golden**, aureus, -a, -um.  
**good**, bonus, -a, -um (71, 208).  
**good thing**, bonum, -ī, N.  
**grain**, frūmentum, -ī, N.  
**great**, māgnus, -a, -um.  
**greatly**, māximē.  
**Greece**, Graecia, -ae, F.  
**Greek**, Graecus, -a, -um.  
**guard**, n., custōs, -ōdis, M. and F.  
**guard**, v., custōdiō, 4.

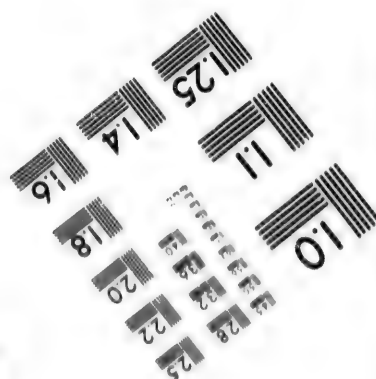
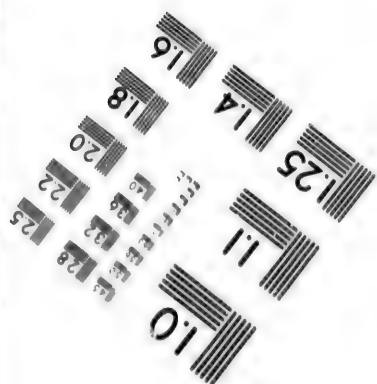
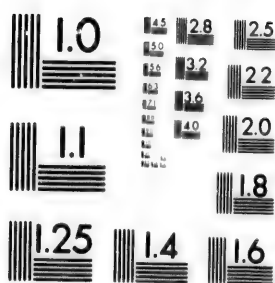
**hand**, manus, -ūs, F.  
**handsome**, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.  
**Hannibal**, Hannibal, -alis, M.

**happy**, beātus, -a, -um; fēlix,  
 -īcis.  
**hard**, dūrus, -a, -um; (*difficult*),  
 difficilis, -e.  
**hasten**, contendō, 3.  
**haughtily**, superbē.  
**have**, habēō, 2.  
**he**, is, hīc (270); ille (275).  
**head**, caput, -ītis, N.; *be at the*  
*head of*, praesum (297).  
**headlong**, praeceps, -cipitis.  
**hear**, audiō (223).  
**heart**, cor, cordis, N.  
**heat**, calor, -ōris, M.  
**heaven**, caelum, -ī, N.  
**heavy**, gravis, -e.  
**Hector**, Hector, -oris, M.  
**hero**, vir, virī, M. (262).  
**hesitate**, dubitō, 1; cunctor, 1.  
**high**, altus, -a, -um.  
**hill**, collis, -is, M. (154).  
**himself**, see self.  
**his**, ejus (270); illius (275);  
 (*own*), suus, -a, -um.  
**history**, historia, -ae, F.  
**hold**, habēō, 2; teneō, 2.  
**home**, domicilium, -ī, N.; domus,  
 -ūs, F. (262).  
**Homer**, Homērus, -ī, M.  
**honor**, n., honestās, -ātis, F.  
**honor**, v., honorō, 1.  
**hope**, spēs, -ei, F.  
**Horatius**, Horātius, -ī, M.  
**horn**, cornū, -ūs, N.  
**horse**, equus, -ī, M.  
**horseback** (*ride*), in equō vehī;  
 equitō, 1.  
**horseman**, horse-soldier, eques,  
 -itis, M.  
**hour**, hōra, -ae, F.  
**house**, domus, -ūs, F. (262).  
**how**, quam; (*many*), quot.  
**huge**, māgnus, -a, -um; immā-  
 nis, -e; ingēns, -entis.





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503





**human**, hūmānus, -a, -um.  
**hundred**, centum.  
**hunger**, famēs, -is, f.  
**hunter**, vērātōr, -ōris, m.  
**hurl**, coniciō, 3.  
**hurtful** (be), noceō, 2, *w. dat.*  
**hustle**, exturbō, 1.

**I**, ego (264).

**Icarus**, Icarus, -ī, m.

**if**, sī; *if not*, nisl.

**ignorant** (be), nesciō, 4; īgnōrō.

**illustrious**, clārus, -a, -um.

**imitate**, imitor, 1.

**immediately**, statim.

**in**, in, *w. abl.*

**increase**, augeō, 2.

**inhabitant**, incola, -ae, m. and f.

**inhabit**, habitō, 1; incolō, 3.

**injure**, noceō, 2; obsum; *w. dat.*

**instruct**, ērudiō, 4; doceō, 2.

**intend**, in animō est; *w. dat.*

**into**, in, *w. acc.*

**invite**, invitō, 1.

**iron** (of), ferreus, -a, -um.

**island**, insula, -ae, f.

**it**, is, ea, id (270).

**Italian**, Italus, -ī, m.

**Italy**, Italia, -ae, f.

**itself**, *see self*.

**Janus**, Jānus, -ī, m.

**javelin**, pilum, -ī, n.

**jewel**, ōrnāmentum, -ī, n.

**joy**, gaudium, -ī, n.

**judge**, iūdex, -icis, m. (105).

**judgment**, iūdicium, -ī, n.

**Julius**, Jūlius, -ī, m.

**Jupiter**, Jūpiter, Jovis, m. (262).

**justly**, iūstē.

**keen**, ācer, ācris, ācre.

**keep off**, arceō, 2.

**kill**, necō, 1; interficiō, 3; occīdō, 3.

**kind**, benīgnus, -a, -um.

**king**, rēx, rēgis, m.

**kingdom**, rēgnum, -ī, n.; imperium, -ī, n.

**knife**, culter, -trī, m.

**know**, know how, sciō, 4.

**known**, nōtus, -a, -um.

**labor**, labor, -ōris, m.

**lack**, dēsum (297)

**Laevinus**, Laevīnus, -ī, m.

**lake**, lacus, -ūs, m. (247).

**land**, ager, agrī, m.; terra, -ae, f.

**language**, lingua, -ae, f.

**large**, māgnus, -a, -um.

**last**, suprēmus, -a, -um.

**Latin**, Latīnus, -a, -um.

**latter** (the), hīc, haec, hōc (275. 5).

**laugh**, rīdeō, 2; (at), irrīdeō, 2; (aloud), eachinnō, 1.

**law**, lēx, lēgis, f.

**lazy**, piger, -gra, -gram.

**lead**, dūcō, 3; (out), ēdūcō, 3.

**leader**, dux, duels, m. and f.

**leaf**, folium, -ī, n.

**leap over**, trānsillō, 4.

**learn**, discō, 3.

**leg**, crūs, crūris, n.

**legion**, legiō, -ōnis, f.

**lesson**, pēnsum, -ī, n.

**let**, *sign of subj. or imperative.*

**letter**, epistula, -ae, f.; litterae, -ārum, f.

**levy**, dēlēctus, -ūs, m.

**life**, vīta, -ae, f.

**light**, *adj.*, levis, -e (150).

**light**, *n.*, lūx, lūcis, f.; lūmen, -inis, n.

**like**, amō, 1.

**likeness**, imāgō, -inis, f.

**line of battle**, acies, -ei, f.

**lion**, leō, -ōnis, M. (134).  
**listen**, audiō, 4 (223).  
**literature**, litterae, -arum, F.  
**little**, parvus, -a, -um.  
**live**, vivō, 3; habitō, 1 (194).  
**long**, longus, -a, -um; *a long time*, diū.  
**longer (no)**, jam, *w. neg.*  
**look at**, spectō, 1.  
**lose**, amittō, 3; perdō, 3.  
**lot (obtain by)**, sortior, 4.  
**loud (laugh out)**, cachinnō, 1.  
**love**, amō, 1 (319).  
**low**, humilis, -e.  
**lucky**, felix, -icls.

**maiden**, puella, -ae, F.  
**make**, faciō, 3; (**trial of**), experior, 4.  
**man**, vir, virī, M. (262); homo, -inis, M. (138).  
**Manlius**, Manlius, -ī, M.  
**manner**, mōs, mōris, M.  
**many**, multī, -ae, -a.  
**Marcellus**, Mārcellus, -ī, M.  
**marshal**, īstruō, 3.  
**master**, dominus, -ī, M.; magister, -trī, M.  
**may**, licet; *w. dat.*  
**means (by means of)**, *use abl.*  
**meet**, obeō (327); *go to meet*, obviam eō, *w. dat.*  
**memory**, memoria, -ae, F.  
**messenger**, nūntius, -ī, M.  
**migrate**, migrō, 1.  
**mind**, animus, -ī, M.; mēns, mentis, F. (273).  
**mindful**, memor, -oris (150).  
**mine**, meus, -a, -um (266).  
**Minerva**, Minerva, -ae, F.  
**miserable**, miser, -era, -erum.  
**miss**, dēsiderō, 1.  
**Mithridates**, Mithridātēs, -is, M.  
**modesty**, modestia, -ae, F.

**month**, mēnsis, -is, M.  
**monument**, monumentum, -ī, N.  
**moon**, lūna, -ae, F.  
**more**, plūs (208), magis.  
**most**, plūrimus, -a, -um (208).  
**mother**, māter, -tris, F.  
**mountain**, mōns, montis, M.  
**move**, moveō, 2.  
**much**, multus, -a, -um (208).  
**multitude**, multitūdō, -inis, F.  
**must**, oportet, 2; *gerundive*.  
**my**, meus, -a, -um (266).

**name**, nōmen, -inis, N.  
**nation**, gēns, gentis, F.  
**native land**, patria, -ae, F.  
**near**, prope, *w. acc.*  
**neighboring**, finitimus, -a, -um.  
**Neptune**, Neptūnus, -ī, M.  
**never**, nunquam.  
**new**, novus, -a, -um.  
**night**, nox, noctis, F.  
**nightingale**, lusciniā, -ae, F.  
**ninety**, nōnāgintā.  
**ninth**, nōnus, -a, -um.  
**no**, nullus, -a, -um (200).  
**nobody, no one**, nēmō, -inis, M. and F. (286); *that no one (neg. purpose)*, nē quis.  
**no longer**, jam, *w. neg.*  
**not**, nōn.  
**nothing**, nihil, *indecl.*  
**nourish**, alō, 3; nūtriō, 4.  
**now**, nunc; jam.  
**Numa**, Numa, -ae, M.  
**number**, numerus, -ī, M.  
**nurture**, nūtriō, 4.

**oak**, quercus, -ūs, F.  
**obey**, pāreō, 2, *w. dat.*  
**obtain**, adipiscor, 3; potior, 4, *w. abl.*; (**by lot**), sortior, 4.  
**ocean**, ōceanus, -ī, M.

- of**, *sign of genitive*; **dē**, *w. abl.*; (out of), *ē* or *ex*, *w. abl.*
- offer**, **prōpōnō**, 3; **offerō** (321); **praebeō**, 2.
- often**, *saepe*.
- old**, **antīquus**, -a, -um; **vetus**, -eris (141); (**man**), **senex**, -is (262); (**age**), **senectūs**, -ūtis, *F.*
- on**, *in*, *w. abl.*; (*of time*), *abl.*
- one**, **ūnus**, -a, -um (200); *one . . . another*, **alius** . . . **alius**; *the one . . . the other*, **alter** . . . **alter**.
- open**, *adj.*, **patēns**, -entis.
- open**, *v.*, **aperiō**, 4.
- opinion**, **jūdicium**, -ī, *N.*
- oppose**, **obsistō**, 3; *w. dat.*
- orator**, **ōrātōr**, -ōris, *M.*
- order**, *v.*, **imperō**, 1, *w. dat.*; **jubeō**, 2, *w. acc.*
- order** (*in order to*), *ut*, *w. subj.*
- other**, **alius**, -a, -ud (201); *some . . . others*, **aliī** . . . **aliī**; (*of two*), **alter**, -era, -erum.
- ought**, **dēbeō**, 2; *oportet*, 2; *gerundive*.
- our**, **noster**, -tra, -trum.
- ourselves**, *see self*.
- out**, *in combination w. verbs, see the verbs*.
- out of**, *ē* or *ex*, *w. abl.*
- over**, *in combination w. verbs, see the verbs*.
- overcome**, **vincō**, 3; **superō**, 1 (186).
- owe**, **dēbeō**, 2.
- own**, **proprius**, -a, -um; (**his**, **her**, **their**), **suus**, -a, -um; (**my**), **meus**, -a, -um; (**our**), **noster**, -tra, -trum; (**your**), **vester**, -tra, -trum; (**thy**), **tuus**, -a, -um.
- pain**, **dolor**, -ōris, *M.*
- parent**, **parēns**, -entis, *M. and F.*
- part**, **pars**, **partis**, *F.*
- pass** (**narrow**), **angustiae**, -ārum, *F.*
- pass by**, **praetereō** (327).
- patience** (**with**), **patienter**; *cum patientiā* (144).
- patiently**, **patienter**.
- peace**, **pāx**, **pācis**, *F.*
- people**, **populus**, -ī, *M.*; (**common**), **plēbs**, -is, *F.*
- peril**, **periculum**, -ī, *N.*
- perish**, **pereō** (327).
- Persians**, **Persae**, -ārum, *M.*
- physician**, **medicus**, -ī, *M.*
- place**, *n.*, **locus**, -ī, *M.*, *in plur.*, *M. and N.*
- place** *v.*, **pōnō**, 3.
- plain**, **planitiēs**, -ēī, *F.*
- plan**, **cōsiliū**, -ī, *N.*
- pleasant**, **grātus**, -a, -um.
- pleasing**, **grātus**, -a, -um.
- pleasure**, **voluptās**, -ātis, *F.*; (**with**), **libenter**.
- pledge**, **fīdēs**, -ei, *F.*
- plough**, *n.*, **arātrū**, -ī, *N.*
- plough**, *v.*, **arō**, 1.
- poem**, **poēma**, -atis, *N.*
- poet**, **poēta**, -ae, *M.*
- point** (**be on the**), *see* 422.
- Polyphemus**, **Polyphēmus**, -ī, *M.*
- Pompey**, **Pompējus**, **Pompēī**, *M.*
- poor**, **miser**, -era, -erum; **pauper**, -eris (167. 3).
- possess**, **habeō**, 2; **potior**, 4, *w. abl.*
- possession** (*get possession of*), **potior**, 4, *w. abl.*; **adipiscor**, 3.
- postpone**, **differō** (321).
- power**, **imperium**, -ī, *N.*
- praise**, *n.*, **laus**, **laudis**, *F.*
- praise**, *v.*, **laudō**, 1.
- precept**, **praeceptum**, -ī, *N.*
- prefer**, **mālō** (316).
- present** (**be**), **adsum**, *w. dat.*
- pretty**, **pulcher**, -chra, -chrum.
- prevent**, **prohibeō**, 2.

**prisoner**, captīvus, -ī, M.; captīva, -ae, F.

**proceed**, prōcēdō, 3.

**proclamation (make)**, ēdicō, 3.

**promise**, polliceor, 2; prōmit-  
tō, 3.

**property**, bona, -ōrum, N.

**proud**, superbus, -a, -um.

**province**, prōvincia, -ae, F.

**prow**, rōstrum, -ī, N.

**prudence**, prūdētia, -ae, F.

**punish**, pūniō, 4.

**punishment**, poena, -ae, F.

**pupil**, discipulus, -ī, M.

**purpose** (*for the purpose of*), ut  
or quī, *w. subj.*; ad, *w. gerund*  
or *gerundive*; *supine*.

**put (to flight)**, fugō, 1; (*off*),

differō (321); (*by*), dēpōnō, 3;

(*an end to*), finīō, 4.

**Pyrrhus**, Pyrrhus, -ī, M.

**queen**, rēgīna, -ae, F.

**quickly**, celeriter.

**raise**, tollō, 3; levō, 1.

**rather (wish)**, mālō (316).

**read**, legō, 3; (*aloud*), recitō, 1.

**receive**, recipiō, 3; accipiō, 3;  
excipiō, 3.

**recite**, recitō, 1.

**recognize**, agnōscō, 3.

**red**, ruber, -bra, -brum.

**refresh**, recreō, 1.

**Regulus**, Rēgulus, -ī, M.

**reign**, rēgnō, 1.

**relate**, trādō, 3; nārrō, 1.

**relieve**, liberō, 1; *w. abl.*

**remain**, maneō, 2; restō, 1.

**remember**, memoriā teneō.

**remove** (= *emigrate*), dēmigrō, 1.

**Remus**, Remus, -ī, M.

**render aid**, auxillium ferō.

**renown**, fāma, -ae, F.

**renowned**, amplus, -a, -um; clā-  
rus, -a, -um.

**report**, nūntiō, 1.

**republic**, rēs publica, rei publi-  
cae, F.

**respect**, vereor, 2.

**respects (in all)**, omnibus rēbus.

**rest (the)**, cēterī, -ae, -a.

**restitution (demand)**, rēs repe-  
tō, 3.

**restrain**, coerceō, 2.

**results (it)**, sit (327).

**retain**, retineō, 2.

**retreat**, sē recipiō, 3.

**return**, redeō, (327).

**reward**, praemium, -ī, N.

**Rhine**, Rhēnus, -ī, M.

**Rhone**, Rhodanus, -ī, M.

**rich**, dīves, -itis (167. 3).

**ride**, *pass. of* vehō, 3; equitō, 1.

**rightly**, rēctē.

**rise**, orior, 4.

**river**, amnis, -is, M.; fluvius, -ī,  
M.; flūmen, -inis, N. (172).

**road**, via, -ae, F.

**rob**, spoliō, 1; privō, 1; *w. abl.*

**robber**, latrō, -ōnis, M.

**Roman**, Rōmānus, -a, -um.

**Rome**, Rōma, -ae, F.

**Romulus**, Rōmulus, -ī, M.

**rose**, rosa, -ae, F.

**rough**, asper, -era, -erum.

**ruddy**, ruber, -bra, -brum.

**rule**, regō, 3 (180); rēgnō, 1.

**sad**, trīstis, -e.

**safe**, tūtus, -a, -um.

**sagacious**, prūdēns, -entis.

**sail**, *pass. of* vehō, 3; nāvigō, 1.

**sailor**, nauta, -ae, M.

**sake** (*for the sake*), causā, *w. gen.*

**Sallust**, Sallustius, -ī, M.

**same**, idem, eadem, idem (270).

**Samnite**, Samnīs, -itis.

**Saturn**, Sāturnus, -ī, M.  
**save**, servō, 1.  
**say**, dīcō, 3; (*keep saying*), dicitō, 1.  
**scare**, terreō, 2.  
**school**, schola, -ae, F.  
**Scipio**, Scipiō, -ōnis, M.  
**sea**, mare, -is, N.  
**see**, videō, 2; (*through*), perspiciō, 3.  
**second**, secundus, -a, -um.  
**seek**, petō, 3; quaerō, 3.  
**seem**, videor, 2.  
**seize**, rapiō, 3.  
**self**, ipse, -a, -um (270); suī (264).  
**send**, mittō, 3; (*back*) remittō, 3.  
**senate**, senātus, -ūs, M.  
**September**, September, -bris, M.  
**servant**, minister, -trī, M.; servus, -ī, M. (66).  
**set out**, proficiscor, 3.  
**seven**, septem.  
**seventh**, septimus, -a, -um.  
**share**, partior, 4.  
**sharply**, ācritēr.  
**she**, ea, ējus, F.  
**sheep**, ovis, -is, F.  
**shepherd**, pāstor, -ōris, M.  
**shield**, scūtum, -ī, N.  
**ship**, nāvis, -is, F. (154).  
**shore**, litus, -oris, N.  
**short**, brevis, -e.  
**shout**, clāmōr, -ōris, M.  
**Sicily**, Sicilla, -ae, F.  
**sick**, aeger, -gra, -grum. (71.)  
**side**, latus, -oris, N.  
**signal**, signum, -ī, N.  
**silent** (be), taceō, 2.  
**since**, cum, *w. subj.*  
**sing**, canō, 3; cantō, 1.  
**sister**, soror, -ōris, F.  
**sit**, sedeō, 2.  
**sixth**, sextus, -a, -um.  
**skillful**, perītus, -a, -um.

**slave**, servus, -ī, M. (66).  
**slavery**, servitūs, -ūtis, F.  
**slay**, necō, 1; interficiō, 3; occidō, 3.  
**sleep**, *n.*, somnus, -ī, M.  
**sleep**, *v.*, dormiō, 4.  
**small**, parvus, -a, -um.  
**smith**, faber, -brī, M.  
**Socrates**, Sōcratēs, -is, M.  
**soldier**, mīles, -itis, M.  
**Solon**, Solōn, -ōnis, M.  
**some one**, aliquis, -qua, (quid) -quod (279. 2); quīdam, quaedam, quod(quid)dam (279. 5); *some . . . others*, aliī . . . aliī; (*of two parties*), alterī . . . alterī; *often not expressed*.  
**something**, aliquid.  
**son**, filius, -ī, M.  
**song**, cantus, -ūs, M.; carmen, -inis, N. (278).  
**son-in-law**, gener, -erī, M.  
**soon**, mox.  
**soothe**, molliō, 4.  
**source**, fōns, fontis, M.  
**Spain**, Hispānia, -ae, F.  
**spare**, parcō, 3; *w. dat.*  
**speak**, loquor, 3; dicō, 3; *speak to*, alloquor, 3.  
**spear**, hasta, -ae, F.  
**spiritedly**, ācritēr.  
**spring**, fōns, fontis, M.  
**spy**, explōrātor, -ōris, M.  
**stab**, trānsfigō, 3.  
**stain**, maculō, 1.  
**star**, stella, -ae, F. (301).  
**start** (= *set out*), proficiscor, 3.  
**state**, cīvītās, -ātis, F.  
**statue**, statua, -ae, F.  
**step**, gradus, -ūs, M. (245).  
**story**, fābula, -ae, F.  
**street**, viā, -ae, F.  
**strong**, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.  
**study**, *n.*, studium, -ī, N.

**study**, *v.*, studeō, 2, *w. dat.*  
**sturdy**, validus, -a, -um.  
**successfully**, optimē; feliciter.  
**suddenly**, imprōvisō.  
**suffer**, patior, 3; tolerō, 1; sufferō (321).  
**suitable**, opportūnus, -a, -um.  
**summer**, aestās, -ātis, *F.*  
**summon**, invītō, 1.  
**sun**, sōl, sōlis, *M.*  
**surpass**, superō, 1; vincō, 3 (186).  
**surrender**, dēdō, 3.  
**surround**, cingō, 3; circumveniō, 4.  
**survive**, supersum (297).  
**swear**, iūrō, 1.  
**sweet**, dulcis, -e; suāvis, -e.  
**wift**, vēlōx, -ōcis; celer, -eris, -ere (179).  
**sword**, gladius, -ī, *M.*

**table**, mēsa, -ae, *F.*  
**tail**, cauda, -ae, *F.*  
**take**, capiō, 3; sūmō, 3; *take a walk*, ambulō, 1.  
**tall**, altus, -a, -um.  
**Tarentine**, Tarentīnus, -ī, *M.*  
**Tarquin**, Tarquīnius, -ī, *M.*  
**task**, pēsum, -ī, *N.*  
**teach**, doceō, 2.  
**teacher**, magister, -trī, *M.*; praeceptor, -ōris, *M.*  
**tear down**, rescindō, 3.  
**tedious**, longus, -a, -um.  
**tell**, nārō, 1; dīcō, 3.  
**temple**, templum, -ī, *N.*  
**tender**, tener, -era, -erum.  
**tenth**, decimus, -a, -um.  
**terrify**, terreo, 2.  
**terror**, terror, -ōris, *M.*  
**than**, quam; *abl.* (212).  
**that**, conj. (*in purpose or result*

*clauses*), ut; (*after verbs of fearing*), nē; (*not*), nē; (*after expressions of doubt*), quā; *after verbs of saying and the like, not translated.*

**that**, pron. (*determ.*), is, ea, id (270); (*demon.*), ille, -a, -ud (275); iste, -a, -ud (275); (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod (279).

**their**, gen. plur. of is; (*own*), suus, -a, -um.

**themselves**, see self.

**then**, tum; deinde.

**there**, ibi; *as an expletive, not translated.*

**thing**, rēs, -eī, *F.*

**think**, arbitror, 1; putō, 1 (429).

**thirst**, sitis, -is, *F.* (*acc.* -im, *abl.* -ī).

**thirty**, trīgintā.

**this**, (*determ.*), is, ea, id (270); (*demon.*), hic, haec, hōc (275).

**thou**, tū.

**though**, cum, *w. subj.*

**thousand**, mille (311. 6).

**three**, trēs, tria (311. 4).

**three hundred**, trecentī, -ae, -a.

**thrust forth**, exturbō, 1.

**through**, per, *w. acc.*

**throw**, jaciō, 3; coniciō, 3.

**time**, tempus, -oris, *N.*

**tired**, dēfessus, -a, -um.

**to**, sign of dative; ad, in, *w. acc.*; (*expressing purpose*), ut, *w. subj.*; ad, *w. gerund or gerundive*; supine.

**to-day**, hodiē.

**together with**, cum, *w. abl.*

**toll**, labōrō, 1.

**to-morrow**, crās.

**too**, quoque; (*much*), nimium.

**touch**, tangō, 3.

**towards**, ad, in, *w. acc.*

**tower**, turris, -is, *F.* (149).

town, oppidum, -ī, N.  
 townsman, oppidānus, -ī, M.  
 train, exerceō, 2.  
 tree, arbor, -oris, F.  
 trial (make), experior, 4.  
 true, vērus, -a, N.  
 trumpet, tuba, -ae, F.  
 truth, vērum, -ī, N.  
 try, experior, 4; cōnor, 1.  
 turn, convertō, 3; (from), āvertō, 3; (out), ēveniō, 4.  
 twenty, vīgintī.  
 two, duo, -ae, -o (311. 4); (which of), uter, -tra, -trum; (each of), uterque, utraque, utrumque.  
 tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, M.

uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.  
 undertake, suscipiō, 3; cōnor, 1.  
 unwilling (be), nōlō (316).  
 up, in combination w. verbs, see the verbs.  
 upon, in, w. acc. or abl.  
 use, ūtor, 3; w. abl.  
 useful, ūtilis, -e.

vain (in), frūstrā.  
 valley, vallis (or vallēs), -is, F.  
 valor, virtūs, -ūtis, F.  
 very, superl. degree; admodum.  
 victorious, victor, -ōris, M.  
 victory, victōria, -ae, F.  
 virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, F.  
 voice, vōx, vōcis, F.

wage (war), gerō, 3.  
 wagon, carrus, -ī, M.  
 walk (= take a walk), ambulō, 1.  
 wall, mūrus, -ī, M.  
 wander, vagor, 1.  
 want (= wish), volō (316); dē-siderō, 1.  
 want (= lack), careō, 2.

war, bellum, -ī, N.  
 warn, moneō, 2.  
 watch, vigilō, 1.  
 watchful, vigil, -is (151. 4).  
 water, aqua, -ae, F.  
 way, via, -ae, F.; (= respect), rēs, reī, F.  
 weapon, tēlum, -ī, N.  
 weary, dēfessus, -a, -um.  
 weep, fleō, 2.  
 welcome, excipio, 3.  
 well, bene.  
 well (be), valeō, 2.  
 what, interrog., quis, quae, quid (quod) (279); (= that which), id quod.  
 when, cum.  
 whether, num; utrum.  
 which, quī, quae, quod (279); (of two), uter, utra, utrum (200).  
 while, dum.  
 white, albus, -a, -um; candidus, -a, -um.  
 who, rel., quī, quae; interrog., quis, quae (279).  
 whole, tōtus, -a, -um (200).  
 why, cūr.  
 wide, lātus, -a, -um.  
 wife, uxor, -ōris, F.  
 wild, ferus, -a, -um.  
 wild beast, fera, -ae, F.  
 wind, ventus, -ī, M.  
 wine, vīnum, -ī, N.  
 wing, āla, -ae, F.  
 winter, hiems, -is, F.  
 wise, sapiēns, -entis.  
 wisely, sapienter.  
 wish, volō (316).  
 with, cum, w. abl.; sometimes abl. alone.  
 without, sine, w. abl.  
 witness, spectō, 1.  
 wonder, mīror, 1; (at), admī-ror, 1.



**wooden**, ligneus, -a, -um.

**woods**, silva, -ae, F.

**word**, verbum, -ī, N.

**work**, *n.*, labor, -ōris, M.; opus, -eris, N.

**work**, *v.*, labōrō, 1.

**world**, mundus, -ī, M.

**worthy**, dīgnus, -a, -um.

**would rather**, mālō (316).

**would that**, utinam.

**wound**, *n.*, vulnus, -eris, N.

**wound**, *v.*, vulnerō, 1.

**wretched**, miser, -era, -erum.

**write**, scribō, 3.

**writing**, scrīptum, -ī, N.

**wrong**, injūria, -ae, F.

**year**, annus, -ī, M.

**yesterday**, herī.

**yonder (that)**, ille, -a, -ud (275. 3).

**you**, *sing.* tū, *plur.* vōs.

**young man**, adulēscēns, -ent.s, M.; juvenis, -is, M.

**your**, *sing.* tuus, -a, -um; *plur.* vester, -tra, -trum.

**Zama**, Zama -ae, F.

**zeal**, studium, -ī, N.



## GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM.

### ablative

**ablative**, ablātīvus, -ī, M.; (*of instrument*) īnstrūmentī; (*of agent*) agentis; (*of manner*) modi; (*of specification*) respectūs; (*of separation*) sēparātiōnis; (*of description*) quālitātis.  
**absolute**, absolūtus, -a, -um.  
**accent**, accentus, -ūs, M.  
**accusative**, accusātīvus, -ī, M.  
**active**, actīvus, -a, -um.  
**adjective**, adjectivum, -ī, N.  
**adverb**, adverbium, -ī, N.  
**agent**, agēns, -entis, M.  
**agree**, congruō, 3; *v. abl.*; concordō, 1.  
**agreement**, concordātiō, -ōnis, F.  
**alphabet**, alphabētum, -ī, N.  
**answer**, *n.*, respōnsum, -ī, N.  
**answer**, *v.*, respondeō, 2.  
**antecedent**, antecēdēns, -entis, N.  
**apposition**, appositio, -ōnis, F.; (*be in*) appōnō, 3.  
  
**cardinal**, cardinālis, -e.  
**case**, cūsus, -ūs, M.  
**clause**, clausula, -ae, F.  
**common** *or* **appellative**, appellātīvus, -a, -um.  
**comparative**, comparātīvus, -a, -um.  
**comparison**, comparātiō, -ōnis, F.  
**compound**, compositus, -a, -um.  
**concessive**, concessivus, -a, -um.  
**condition**, hypothesis, -is, F.; conditiō, -ōnis, F.

### distributive

**conditional**, hypotheticus, -a, -um; conditiōnālis, -e.  
**conjugation**, conjugātiō, -ōnis, F.  
**conjunction**, conjunctiō, -ōnis, F.  
**consonant**, littera cōnsonāns, -antis, *or* cōnsonāns, -antis, F.  
**construction**, cōnstrūctiō, -ōnis, F.  
**conversation**, colloquium, -ī, N.  
**correct**, *adj.*, rēctus, -a, -um.  
**correct**, *v.*, corrigō, 3; ēmendō, 1.  
**correctly**, rēctē.  
  
**dative**, datīvus, -ī, M.  
**declension**, dēclīnātiō, -ōnis, F.  
**decline**, dēclīnō, 1.  
**declinable**, dēclīnābilis, -e.  
**defective**, dēfectīvus, -a, -um.  
**degree**, gradus, -ūs, M.  
**demonstrative**, dēmōnstrātīvus, -a, -um.  
**deponent**, dēpōnēns, -entis.  
**derive**, trahō, 3.  
**description** (*abl. of*), quālitās, -ātis, F.  
**determinative**, dēfīnītus, -a, -um.  
**difference**, discrīmen, -inis, N.  
**diminutive**, dēminutīvum, -ī, N.  
**diphthong**, diphthoagus, -ī, M.  
**direct**, dirēctus, -a, -um; rēctus, -a, -um.  
**discourse**, orātiō, -ōnis, F.  
**discuss**, tractō, 1.  
**dissyllable**, dissyllabus, -ī, M.  
**distributive**, distributīvus, -a, -um.

**end**, *v.*, dēsīnō, 3.

**English**, Anglicus, -a, -um.

**English** (**in**), Anglicō.

**etymology**, etymologia, -ae, *F.*

**example**, exemplum, -i, *N.*; (**for**)  
ut; exemplī causā.

**exception**, exceptiō, -ōnis, *F.*

**feminine**, fēminīnus, -a, -um.

**finite**, finītus, -a, -um.

**formation**, formātiō, -ōnis, *F.*

**future**, futūrum, -ī, *N.*

**future perfect**, futūrum exāctum.

**gender**, gēnus, -eris, *N.*

**genitive**, genētīvus, -ī, *M.*

**gerund**, gerundium, -ī, *N.*

**gerundive**, gerundīvum, -ī, *N.*

**govern**, regō; *pass. of* jungō *or*  
conjungō, *fol.* by cum *w. abl.*

**grammar**, grammatica, -ae, *F.*

**imperative**, modus imperātīvus  
*or* imperātīvus, -ī, *M.*

**imperfect**, imperfectum, -ī, *N.*

**impersonal**, impersonālis, -e.

**increase**, crēscō, 3.

**indicative**, modus indicātīvus,  
-ī, *M.*, *or* indicātīvus, -ī, *M.*

**indeclinable**, indēclīnābilis, -e.

**indirect**, indirēctus, a, -um; ob-  
liquus, -a, -um.

**infinitive**, modus infīnītīvus *or*  
infīnītīvus, -ī, *M.*

**instrument**, instrūmentum, -ī, *N.*

**interjection**, interjectiō, -ōnis, *F.*

**interrogative**, interrogātīvus, -a,  
-um.

**intransitive**, intrānsītīvus, -a,  
-um.

**irregular**, irrēgulāris, -e; anō-  
malus, -a, -um.

**Latin**, Latīnus, -a, -um.

**Latin** (**in**), Latīnē.

**lesson**, pēnsūm, -ī, *N.*

**letter**, līttera, -ae, *F.*

**limit**, *v.*, limitō, 1.

**liquid**, liquidus, -a, -um.

**locative**, locātīvus, -ī, *M.*

**long**, longus, -a, -um; prōductus,  
-a, -um.

**manner**, modus, -ī, *M.*

**masculine**, masculīnus, -a, -um

**mean**, sīgnificō, 1.

**meaning**, sīgnificātiō, -ōnis, *F.*

**mistake**, *n.*, error, -ōris, *M.*

**mistake**, *v.*, errō, 1.

**monosyllable**, monosyllabum, -ī,  
*N.*

**mood**, modus, -ī, *M.*

**mute**, mūtus, -a, -um.

**negative**, negātīvus, -a, -um.

**neuter**, neuter, -tra, -trum.

**nominative**, nōminātīvus, -ī, *M.*

**noun**, nōmen, -inis, *N.*; substan-  
tīvum, -ī, *N.*

**numeral**, numerālis, -e.

**object**, objectum, -ī, *N.*

**ordinal**, ordinālis, -e.

**paradigm**, paradigma, -atis, *N.*

**participle**, participium, -ī, *N.*

**particle**, particula, -ae, *F.*

**partitive**, partītīvus, -a, -um.

**passive**, passīvus, -a, -um.

**perfect**, perfectum, -ī, *N.*

**person**, persōna, -ae, *F.*

**personal**, persōnālis, -e.

**phrase**, phrasis, -is, *F.*

**pluperfect**, plūsquamperfectum,  
-ī, *N.*

**plural**, plūrālis, -e.  
**positive**, positīvus, -a, -um.  
**preposition**, praepositīō, -ōnis, F.  
**present**, praesēns, -entis, N.  
**principal**, principālis, -e.  
**pronoun**, prōnōmen, -inis, N.  
**proper**, proprius, -a, -um.

**quantity**, quantitās, -ātis, F.  
**question**, interrogātiō, -ōnis, F.

**reflexive**, reciprocus, -a, -um; reflexīvus, -a, -um.  
**regular**, rēgulāris, -e.  
**relative**, relātīvus, -a, -um.  
**remember**, memoriā teneō.  
**review**, recōgnōscō, 3; (lesson) pēnsūm recōgnōscendum.  
**root**, rādīx, -īcis, F.  
**rule**, rēgula, -ae, F.

**school**, schola, -ae, F.  
**sentence**, sententia, -ae, F.  
**separation**, sēparātiō, -ōnis, F.  
**sequence**, cōnsecutiō, -ōnis, F.  
**short**, brevis, -e; correptus, -a, -um.  
**sibilant**, sibilus, -a, -um.  
**singular**, singulāris, -e.  
**sound**, sonus, -ī, M.  
**specification**, respectus, -ūs, M.  
**speech (part of)**, ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.  
**stem**, basis, -is, F.  
**study**, n., studium, -ī, N.

**study**, v., studeō, 2.  
**subject**, subjectum, -ī, N.  
**subjunctive**, modus subjunctīvus, -ī, M., or subjunctīvus, -ī, M.  
**substantive**, substantivum, -ī, N.  
**substantively**, substantivē.  
**superlative**, superlatīvus, -a, -um.  
**supine**, supīnum, ī, N.  
**syllable**, syllaba, -ae, F.  
**syntax**, syntaxis, -is, F.

**teacher**, praeceptor, -ōris, M.; magister, -trī, M.; magistra, -ae, F.

**tense**, tempus, -oris, N.  
**termination**, terminātiō, -ōnis, F.  
**transitive**, trānsitīvus, -a, -um.  
**treat (= discuss)**, tractō, 1.

**verb**, verbum, -ī, N.  
**vocabulary**, vōcābulārium, -ī, N.  
**vocative**, vōcātīvus, -ī, M.  
**voice**, vōx, vōcis, F.; genus, -eris, N.  
**vowel**, littera vōcālis, -is, F., or vōcālis, -is, F.

**wish**, optātiō, -ōnis, F.  
**word**, verbum, -ī, N.; vōcābulum, -ī, N.; vōx, vōcis, F.

**yes**, certē, certissimē; vērō; ita est, ista sunt; *verb of question repeated.*

## INDEX.

THE general vocabularies are to be used as an index to *words* (with some exceptions) for which reference is needed. Full-face figures refer to sections, not pages. A superior figure (e.g. 10<sup>2</sup>) indicates a foot-note. Most abbreviations will readily be understood: ff. = and following; inv. = imperative.

### A.

**ā or ab, 61, 62.**

**ā-verbs, 86.**

**ABBREVIATIONS** beginning letters, 437<sup>1</sup>, 438.

**ABLATIVE**, translation of, 14<sup>2</sup>, 59<sup>1</sup>; of *agent*, 61, 62; of *means* or *instrument*, 90, 91; of *material*, 92, II, 8<sup>1</sup>; of *separation*, 128-130; of *time*, 135, 136; of *manner*, 144, 145; w. comparatives, 211, 212; of *specification*, 259, 260; w. *ūtor*, etc., 303, 304; w. preps., 333; of *place*, 335, 3; *descriptive*, 341, p. 222<sup>3,4</sup>; *absolute*, 412; abl. sing. of vowel stems in 3d decl., 151, 2.

**ABSTRACT NOUNS, 168<sup>1</sup>.**

**-ābus**, in dat. and abl. plu., 19<sup>1</sup>.

**ACCENT, 7**; before enclitics, 7, (1).

**ACCUSATIVE**, *direct obj.*, 25, 26; *predicate*, 92, I, 5<sup>2</sup>, 93, II, 7<sup>4</sup>, 171, II, 3<sup>1</sup>, 259, II, 4<sup>3</sup>; *two accs.*, 131, I, 8<sup>2</sup>, 197, II, 10<sup>3</sup>; w. verbs of remembering and forgetting, 305, 306; of *extent*, 312, 313; w. preps., 333, 4; of *limit*, 334, 335, 2; w. inf., 400, 401; w. some impers. verbs, 415, 3, 4, 416.

**AD**, w. gerunds and gerundives, 432, 3.

**ADJECTIVES**, of 1st and 2d decls., 44, 71; of 3d decl., 105, 134, 141, 150, 164; irregular, 200; comparison of, 205 ff.; poss. adj. prons., 266; interrog., 279, 3; numeral, 311; agreement with nouns, 45, II, 1<sup>1</sup>, 53, 54; used as nouns, 117; of one, two, or three terminations, 155; agreement with understood subject, 197, I, 8<sup>2</sup>; order w. prep. and noun, 64, I, 7<sup>1</sup>; order w. gen. and noun, 124, I, 6<sup>2</sup>; method of declining, 44<sup>2</sup>.

**ADVERBS**, formation of, 216 ff.; comparison of, 219; numeral, 311, 8.

**AGENT**, abl. of, 61, 62; dat. of, 425 (5), 426, 444<sup>4</sup>, cf. 428, II, 9<sup>6</sup>.

**Aliquod** as adj., 279, 2.

**ALPHABET, 1.**

**AND**, omitted, 57, II, 6<sup>3</sup>, 227, II, 1<sup>1</sup>, cf. p. 220<sup>2</sup>; inserted, 35, II, 5<sup>6,7</sup>, 50, II, 8<sup>4</sup>, 57, I, 8<sup>4</sup>.

**ANTECEDENT** of rel. pron., 280 ff.; omitted, 287, I, 10<sup>3</sup>, p. 221<sup>10</sup>.

**ANTEPENULT, 5, 5.**

*Anything at all*, **quidquam** not **aliquid**, 279, 6, 440<sup>11</sup>.

**APPOSITION**, 118, I, 2<sup>1</sup>, 157, 158, 197, II, 8<sup>7</sup>.

**Augustus et Iūlus** (Coll.), 9.

## B.

BATTLE OF CANNAE (for trans.), 339, 378.

BATTLE OF MARATHON (for trans.), 291.

## C.

CAESAR'S TWO INVASIONS OF BRITAIN (for trans.), 448.

CARDINAL NUMERALS, 311.

CASES, names of, 10; alike in form, 16.

CAUSE, expressed by *cum* clause, 375; *oy* part., 409, 7, 412, 3.

Charōn et Mercurius (Coll.), 187.

Cōgnōmen, 195, 204.

COLLECTIVE NOUNS, 168<sup>2</sup>.

COLLOQUIA, Augustus et Iūlus, 9, 58, 80; Pater et Filiolus, 95, 222, 302; Frāter et Sorōreula, 111, 162, 269, 274; Praeceptor et Discipulus, 126, 133, 195, 204, 234, 261; Magister et Discipulus, 139; Duo Puerī, 148; Father and Son, 173; Charōn et Mercurius, 187; Jacōbus et Augustus, 242; Sōcratēs et Rhadamanthus, 290; Tityrus et Meliboeus, 332; Jōhannēs et Jacōbus, 388.

COMMANDS AND APPEALS, 291.

COMPARATIVE DEGREE, formation of, 206, (1), 219; with and without *quam*, 211, 212; trans. by *too*, p. 220<sup>6</sup>.

COMPARISON of adjs., 205 ff.; of advs., 219.

COMPOUND TENSES, 97.

CONCESSION, expressed by *cum* clause, 372, 375, p. 219<sup>11</sup>; by part., 409, 4, 412, 3.

CONDITIONS, 383 ff.; expressed by part., 409, 5, 412, 3, p. 214<sup>2</sup>.

CONJUGATIONS: 1st, 86 ff., 351 ff.; 2d, 112 ff., 351 ff.; review of 1st and 2d, 127 ff.; 3d, 180 ff., 357 ff.; review of 1st, 2d, and 3d, 196, 197; 4th, 223 ff., 357 ff.; 3d in *-iō*, 235 ff., 357 ff.; review of the four conjs., 240, 241; periphrastic, 422 ff.

CONSONANTS, 3; sounds of, 4.

CONSONANT STEMS, 104, 134, 140.

*Cum*, conj., temporal, causal, and concessive, 372 ff.

*Cum*, prep., with *mē*, *tē*, etc., 265, 3; w. abl. of manner, 144, 145.

CUSTOMS AND HABITS OF THE BRITONS (for trans.), 449.

## D.

DATIVE of *possessor*, 32; *indirect obj.*, 31, I, 7, 8, 9, II, 2, 6, 10, 33, 34; w. comps. of *sum*, 295; of *service*, 291<sup>1</sup>, 296, II, 7<sup>3</sup>, 344; w. certain verbs, 342, 343; *double dative*, 344; w. intransitives, 417, 418; of *agent*, 425, 426; not to be taken for abl., 184, 6.

DEATH OF THE PET SPARROW (for trans.), 421.

DECLENSION, paradigms of: 1st, 14; 2d in *-us* and *-um*, 38; in *-er*, 59, 65; adjs. of 1st and 2d, 71; 3d, mute stems, 105; liquid stems, 134; sibilant stems, 140, 141; *i* stems, 149, 150; mixed stems, 163-165; comparatives, 209; 4th, 245; 5th, 254; special, 262; prons., 264, 270, 275, 279; *duo* and *trēs*, 311, 4.

DEFINITIONS, sometimes not given in vocabs., 57, I, 1<sup>1</sup>.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, 275.

DEPONENT VERBS, 1st and 2d conjs., 298 ff.; 3d and 4th conjs., 303 ff.

DERIVATION, 345.

DESCRIPTIVE abl. and gen., 341; abl., p. 222<sup>3,4</sup>.  
 DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS, 270; used like adjs., 270, 1.  
 Dīc, inv. of dicō, p. 150<sup>1</sup>.  
 DIPHTHONGS, 4; quantity of, 6, 2.  
 DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS, 311, 8.  
 -dō, nouns in, 168.  
 DOUBLE CONSONANTS, 3.  
 DOUBLE DATIVE, 344.  
 Dūc, inv. of dūcō, p. 150<sup>1</sup>.  
 DUM with pres. ind., 263<sup>13</sup>, 442<sup>10</sup>.  
 Duo Pueri (Coll.), 148.

## E.

ē-verbs, 112.  
 è-verbs, 180, 235.  
 ENGLISH METHOD of pronunciation, 8.  
 ENCLITICS, 7, (1).  
 -er, nouns and adjs. of 2d decl. in, 67; compar. of adjs. in, 206, (1), (3).  
 -ēvī, perfects in, 119<sup>2</sup>.  
 EXTENT, accusative of, 312, 313.

## F.

FABLES (for trans.), 441-447.  
 Fac, inv. of faciō, p. 150<sup>1</sup>.  
 FATHER AND SON (Coll.), 173.  
 FEMININE GENDER, 11, 2, 4; in 1st decl., 13; in 3d decl., 168, 2; in 4th decl., 244, 1; in 5th decl., 253.  
 Fer, inv. of ferō, p. 150<sup>1</sup>.  
 Ferō, compounds of, 322.  
 FIFTH DECL., 252 ff.  
 FIRST CONJ., 86 ff., 351 ff.; first periphrastic conj., 422.  
 FIRST DECL., 12 ff., 52 ff.  
 FOURTH CONJ., 223 ff., 357 ff.  
 FOURTH DECL., 243 ff.  
 Frāter et Sorōreula (Coll.), 111, 162, 269, 274.

FUTURE translated by Eng. pres., 116, I, 1<sup>3</sup>, 385, 3<sup>1</sup>; fut. inv., 391, (3); equivalent to inv., 438<sup>18</sup>.

## G.

GENDER, general rules of, 11; in 1st decl., 13; in 2d decl., 37; in 3d decl., 168; in 4th decl., 244; in 5th decl., 253. Agreement in, 45, II, 1<sup>1</sup>, 53, 54, 281.  
 GENITIVE, like Eng. possessive, 30, I, 6<sup>1</sup>; of nouns in -ius and -ium, 79; with verbs of remembering and forgetting, 305, 306; *partitive*, 340, 438<sup>17</sup>, 439<sup>5</sup>, 440<sup>12</sup>; *descriptive*, 341, with certain impers. verbs, 415, 3, 4, 416; order w. adj. and noun, 124, I, 6<sup>3</sup>.  
 GERUND, 430-452; nom. of supplied by inf., 431, 1.  
 GERUNDIVE, p. 34<sup>2</sup>; 423, 432; diff. between gerund and gerundive construction, 432.  
 -gō, nouns in, 168.

## H.

Hīc, demon. of 1st pers., 275, 1; in contrast with ille, 275, 5.  
 HISTORICAL TENSES, 347; pres. 444<sup>8</sup>.  
 HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE, 390, 391.

## I.

i-stems, 149 ff.  
 ī-verbs, 223.  
 Il'3, demon. of 3d pers., 275, 3; in contrast with hīc, 275, 5.  
 IMPERFECT, denoting continuance, 115, I, 5<sup>2</sup>; of customary action, 445<sup>12</sup>.  
 IMPERATIVE, 389 ff.; not common in prohibitions, 391, (2)<sup>3</sup>.  
 IMPERSONAL VERBS and verbs used impersonally, 415 ff., 425, (4).  
 Is not always to be translated by

- in, 146, I, 2<sup>1</sup>, 185, II, 7, 296, II, 10<sup>6</sup>.  
 In omitted, 291<sup>7</sup>.  
 INCREASE in the gen., 152, 1<sup>1</sup>.  
 INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, 279.  
 INDICATIVE in cond. sentences, 385.  
 INDIRECT DISCOURSE, 399 ff.  
 INDIRECT OBJECT 31, I, 7, 8, 9, II, 2, 6, 10, 33, 34.  
 INDIRECT QUESTIONS, 379 ff.  
 INFINITIVE as in Eng., 395 ff.; w. sub. acc., 399 ff.; tenses of, 402-403; fut. pass., 402<sup>1</sup>, 405, I, 2<sup>1</sup>.  
 INSTRUMENT, abl. of, 90, 91.  
 INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN, 279; adj., 279, 3, advs., 380, 1.  
 INTRANSITIVE VERBS used impersonally in the passive, 417, 418.  
 -iō, nouns in, 168; verbs in, of 3d conj., 235.  
 IPSE, distinguished from sē, 270, 4, 5; how translated, 270, 6.  
 IRREGULAR adjs., 200 ff.; verbs, 72 ff., 292 ff., 316 ff.  
 Is as pers. pron., 270, 2; *this* or *that*, 275, 6.  
 ISLANDS, names of, 334<sup>2</sup>.  
 It, expletive, 35, I, 1<sup>1</sup>, 56, I, 7<sup>2</sup>.  
 -ium in gen. plu., 151, 3.  
 -ius in gen. sing. of adjs., 200.  
 -ius and -ium, gen. of nouns in, 79; voc. of nouns in -ius, 79.  
 -ivi. perfs. in, often drop *v*, 231, I, 91<sup>2</sup>, 327, 2.  
 J.  
 Jacōbus et Augustus (Coll.), 242.  
 Jōhannēs et Jacōbus (Coll.), 388.  
 L.  
 LETTERS (for trans.), 437-440.  
 LIMIT, acc. of, 335, 2<sup>3</sup>.  
 LIQUIDS, 3.  
 LIQUID STEMS, 134 ff.  
 līa, superlative of adjs. in, 207.  
 LOCATIVE, 10, 3, 334, 335, 1; in 1st decl., 14, 2; in 2d decl., 40; in 3d decl., 175.  
 M.  
 Magister et Discipulus (Coll.), 139.  
 MANNER, how expressed, 144, 145.  
 Mārcus Porcius Catō, Puer (for trans.), 394.  
 MASCULINE GENDER, 11, 1, 3; in 2d decl., 37; in 3d decl., 168, 1; in 4th decl., 244; in 5th decl., 253.  
 MATERIAL, how expressed, 92, II, 8<sup>1</sup>.  
 MEANS, abl. of, 90, 91.  
 MIXED STEMS, 163 ff.  
 MOTION, verbs of, foll. by acc. with and without prep., 333-335.  
 MUTES, 2.  
 MUTE STEMS, 105 ff.  
 N.  
 NARRATIVE SENTENCES, 372, (3).  
 Nāsica and Ennius (for trans.), 407.  
 Ne, enclitic, 7, (1), 28, 1<sup>2</sup>, 51, 3<sup>3</sup>, 58<sup>3</sup>.  
 Nē, 358, 369, 391, (1); omitted after *cavē*, p. 178<sup>4</sup>.  
 NEUTER GENDER, 11, 5; in 2d decl., 37; in 3d decl., 168, 3.  
 Nōlī in prohibitions, 391 (1)<sup>1</sup>.  
 Nōmen, 195, 204.  
 NOMINATIVE, subj., 24; pred., 46, 47, 92, I, 6<sup>3</sup>, 93, II, 6<sup>3</sup>.  
 Nōnne, 51, 3<sup>3</sup>.  
 -ns, nouns in, 167, 1.  
 NUMERAL adjs., 311; advs., 311, 8.  
 O.  
 Ō, w. voc., 56, II, 1<sup>4</sup>.  
 OBJECT, direct, 25, 26; indirect, 31, I, 7, 8, 9, II, 2, 6, 10, 33, 34.



OF = because of, 330, II, 2<sup>8</sup>.

OMISSION of *my, thy, his*, etc., 100;  
of *ut*, 438<sup>9</sup>, 446<sup>11</sup>; of *in*, 291<sup>7</sup>;  
of *nē*, p. 178<sup>4</sup>; of *fore* in trans.,  
428, I, 4<sup>4</sup>.

ORDER of words in sentence, 23;  
35, 1; 56, I, 10<sup>3</sup>; 64, I, 7<sup>1</sup>; 69,  
I, 10<sup>1</sup>; 77, I, 5<sup>5</sup>; 93, I, 9<sup>2</sup>; 124,  
I, 6<sup>3</sup>; 202, I, 6<sup>5</sup>; 215<sup>11</sup>; *quis-*  
*que*, 287, I, 6<sup>2</sup>; *ferē*, 329, I, 6<sup>1</sup>;  
386, I, 3<sup>3</sup>; 404; 410, II, 9<sup>5</sup>;  
438<sup>10</sup>; 440<sup>10</sup>; 446<sup>7</sup>; p. 216<sup>3</sup>; p.  
217<sup>6</sup>; p. 219<sup>13</sup>.

ORDINAL NUMERALS, 311.

OUGHT, of past time, 419, I, 8<sup>3</sup>.

# P.

PARTICIPLES, 408 ff.; in principal  
parts, 86<sup>1</sup>; decl. of pres. act.,  
165, 408, 1, of perf. and fut.,  
408, 2; perf. in comp. tenses  
as adj., 192, I, 7<sup>1</sup>, 404, I, 4<sup>1</sup>;  
part. and verb trans. by two co-  
ordinate verbs, 409, 2, 410, I, 5<sup>4</sup>,  
412, 4; abl. absolute, 412, 413;  
Eng. perf. act. part., how ren-  
dered, 412, 6, 7; used as nouns,  
291<sup>3</sup>.

PASSIVE to be distinguished from  
progressive form in Eng., 69, II,  
8<sup>5</sup>, 123, II, 3<sup>1</sup>.

PATER ET FILIOLUS (Coll.), 95, 222,  
302.

PARTITIVE GEN., 340, 438<sup>17</sup>, 439<sup>5</sup>,  
440<sup>12</sup>.

PENULT, 5, 5.

PERFECT, sometimes distinguished  
from pres. by long penult, 119<sup>5</sup>,  
191, I, 2<sup>1</sup>, 232, I, 1<sup>1</sup>; *definite* and  
*indefinite*, 347; perf. subj. in pro-  
hibitions, 391, (2); perf. part.  
trans. by pres., 442<sup>12</sup>, p. 217<sup>8</sup>; w.  
*ubi, ut*, etc., 444<sup>9</sup>; perf. subj.  
really fut. perf., 391, (2)<sup>2</sup>.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS: act.,  
422; pass., 423; paradigms, 424.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS, 264, 265;  
when nom. of is expressed, 265, 2.

PLACE, expressions of, 334 ff.

POSSESSIVE ADJ. PRONS., 266; when  
omitted, 100.

POSSESSOR, dat. of, 32; cf. 441<sup>4</sup>.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS (Coll.),  
126, 133, 195, 204, 234, 261.

PRÆNOMEN, 195, 204.

PREDICATE NOM., 46, 47, 92, I, 6<sup>3</sup>,  
93, II, 6<sup>3</sup>; acc., 92, I, 5<sup>2</sup>, 93, II,  
7<sup>4</sup>, 171, II, 3<sup>1</sup>.

PREPOSITIONS, 333; order w. adj.  
and noun, 64, I, 7<sup>1</sup>.

PRESENT, translation of, 43<sup>1</sup>; de-  
noting continuance, 115, I, 5<sup>2</sup>;  
Eng. pres. for Lat. fut., 116, I,  
1<sup>3</sup>, 385, 3<sup>1</sup>; for Lat. fut. perf.,  
413, II, 10<sup>2</sup>; sometimes distin-  
guished from perf. by short pe-  
nult, 119<sup>5</sup>, 191, I, 2<sup>1</sup>; w. *dum*,  
263<sup>13</sup>, 442<sup>10</sup>; historical, 444<sup>8</sup>; pres.  
subj. trans. as fut., 369, 1, 4.

PRIMARY TENSES, 347.

PRINCIPAL PARTS of verbs, 86<sup>1</sup>.

PRINCIPAL TENSES, 347.

PROHIBITIONS, 391, (1), (2).

PROGRESSIVE FORM in Eng. to be  
distinguished from passive, 69,  
II, 8<sup>5</sup>, 123, II, 3<sup>1</sup>.

PRONUNCIATION, Roman method,  
4; English method, 8.

PRŌSERPINA (for trans.), 139, 215,  
263.

PŪBLIUS CORNĒLIUS SCĪPIŌ (for  
trans.), 188.

PURPOSE, expressed by *ut* w. subj.,  
352, 353; *quī* w. subj., 364;  
fut. part., 410, I, 9<sup>5</sup>; ad w.  
gerundive, 432, 3; supine, 433,  
434; *causā* w. gen. of gerund or  
gerundive, 435, I, 3, p. 221<sup>6</sup>.



## Q.

QUANTITY of vowels and diphthongs, 6, 1, 2; of syllables, 6, 3, 4, 5.

Quin, w. subj., 349, 350.

Quis, indef. pron. w. *sī*, etc., 362, 1, 6<sup>1</sup>, 438<sup>15</sup>.

## R.

r, as sign of passive, 87<sup>1</sup>; for s, 73<sup>1,3,4</sup>, 142.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN, 264, 265.

RELATIVE PRONOUN, 279; agreement, 280 ff.; in purpose clause, 364.

REST, verbs of, foll. by abl., 333-335.

RESULT, w. *ut*, 368 ff.; to be distinguished from *purpose*, 352, 368, 447<sup>12</sup>.

ROMAN METHOD of pronun., 4.  
-rs, nouns in, 167, 1.

## S.

-s, monosyllables in, 167, 2.

SECONDARY TENSES, 347.

SECOND CONJ., 112 ff., 351 ff. Second periphrastic conj., 423.

SECOND DECL., in -us and -um, 36 ff., 52 ff., in -er, 59 ff.

SEMI-DEPONENTS, p. 177<sup>2</sup>.

SEPARATION, how expressed, 128 ff.

SEQUENCE of tenses, 347 ff.

SERVICE, dat. of, 291<sup>1</sup>, 296, II, 7<sup>3</sup>, 344.

SIBILANT, 3.

SIBILANT STEMS, 140 ff.

Sōcratēs et Rhadamanthus (Coll.), 290.

SOUNDS of letters, 4.

SPECIFICATION, abl. of, 259, 260, p. 218<sup>6</sup>.

STEM, 12<sup>1</sup>; in 2d decl., 36, 42; in

verbs, 86<sup>1</sup>; in 3d decl., 103, 104, 107, 151, 1, 152, 166, 167; in 4th decl., 243; in 5th decl., 252. Perf. stem w. long vowel, 119<sup>5</sup>.

SUBJECT NOM., 24; acc. 401; omitted, 50, I, 9<sup>1</sup>.

SUBJUNCTIVE of *purpose*, 352, 353, 364; of *result*, 368; w. *cum*, 372; in *ind. questions*, 379 ff.; in *wishes and conditions*, 383 ff.; *hortatory*, 390; perf. really fut. perf., 391, (2)<sup>2</sup>; fut. tense of, 425 (1). Meanings not given in paradigms, p. 26<sup>1</sup>.

SUPERLATIVE degree, formation of, 206, (2), (3); strengthened by *quam*, 437<sup>6</sup>.

SUPINE, 433, 434.

S. V. B. E. V., 437<sup>1</sup>.

SYLLABLES, 5; quantity of, 6, 3, 4, 5.

SYNONYMOUS WORDS, *puerī*, *liberī*, 60; *magister*, *dominus*, 66; *minister*, *servus*, 66; *homo*, *vir*, 138; *amnis*, *flūmen*, *fluvius*, 172; *hostis*, *inimicus*, 172; *celer*, *vēlōx*, 179; *superō*, *vincō*, 186; *habitō*, *vīvō*, 194; *animus*, *mēns*, 273; *cantus*, *carmen*, 278; *sīdus*, *stella*, 301; *amō*, *diligō*, *volō*, *dēsīderō*, 319; *interrogō*, *rogō*, *quaerō*, 382; *at*, *sed*, *autem*, 393; *jūdicō*, *cēnseō*, *existimō*, *arbitror*, *putō*, *opīnor*, 429.

## T.

TERMINATIONS, 15.

THERE, expletive, 35, I, 2<sup>2</sup>; 56, I, 7<sup>2</sup>; 220, I, 1<sup>2</sup>.

THIRD CONJ., 180 ff., 357 ff.; verbs in -iō, 235 ff., 357 ff.

THIRD DECL., mute stems, 105 ff.; liquid stems, 134 ff.; sibilant

- stems, 140 ff.; i-stems, 149 ff.; mixed stems, 163 ff.
- TIME** when or within which, 135, 136; how long, 312, 313; expressed by *cum* clause, 372, 373, by part., 409, 1, 2, 8, 412; relative time in tenses of inf., 402, 403, 405, II, 8<sup>3</sup>, of part., 409.
- Tityrus et Meliboeus** (Coll.), 332.
- TOWNS**, names of, 334, 335.
- TRANSLATION**, passages for, **Pūblius Cornēlius Scipiō**, 188; **Prōserpina**, 199, 215, 263; **Battle of Marathon**, 291; **Maxims**, 320; **Battle of Cannae**, 339, 378; **Mārcus Porcius Catō**, **Puer**, 394; **Nāsica** and **Ennius**, 407; **Death of the Pet Sparrow**, 421; **Letters**, 437-440; **Fables**, 441-447; **Caesar's Two Invasions of Britain**, 448; **Customs and Habits of the Britons**, 449.
- U.
- ubus** in dat. and abl. of 4th decl., 247.
- ULTIMA**, 5, 5.
- Ut**, of purpose, 352 ff.; of result, 367 ff.; w. ind., 437<sup>4</sup>, 439<sup>2</sup>; omitted, 438<sup>9</sup>, 446<sup>1</sup>.
- V.
- v**, sometimes dropped, 231, I, 9<sup>1,2</sup>, 327, 2, 421<sup>5</sup>.
- VOCATIVE**, 10, 2; in 2d decl., 39; of *filius*, etc., 79.
- VOCABULARIES** following exercises, 75, 2.
- VOWELS**, how marked, 2; sounds of, 4; quantity of, 6, 1, 2.
- W.
- WISHES**, 383 ff.
- WITH** not always to be translated by *cum*, 185, II, 5<sup>2</sup>.
- X.
- x**, monosyllables in, 167, 2.
- Y.
- You**, sing. or plu., 73<sup>2</sup>.



## LATIN TEXT-BOOKS

Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar .....	\$1.20
Allen and Greenough's Shorter Latin Grammar .....	.95
Allen and Greenough's New Caesar, with vocabulary .....	1.25
Allen and Greenough's New Cicero, with vocabulary .....	1.40
Allen and Greenough's Ovid, with vocabulary .....	1.50
Allen and Greenough's Sallust's Catiline .....	.60
Allen and Greenough's Cicero de Senectute .....	.50
Allen's (F. D.) Remnants of Early Latin .....	.75
Allen's (W. F.) Germania and Agricola of Tacitus .....	1.00
Allen's (W. F.) Introduction to Latin Composition .....	.90
Collar's Gate to Caesar .....	.40
Collar's New Gradatim .....	.50
Collar's Practical Latin Composition .....	1.00
Collar's Via Latina .....	.75
Collar and Daniell's First Latin Book .....	1.00
College Series of Latin Authors : See circulars for details.	
Crowell's Selections from the Latin Poets .....	1.40
Crowell and Richardson's Bender's Roman Literature .....	1.00
D'Ooge's Easy Latin for Sight Reading .....	.40
Ferguson's Questions on Caesar and Xenophon .....	1.12
Gepp and Haigh's Latin-English Dictionary .....	1.30
Ginn & Company's Classical Atlas .....	cloth, 2.00; boards 1.25
Gleason's Gate to Vergil .....	
Greenough and Kittredge's New Virgil: Aeneid, I.-VI., with vocabulary .....	1.50
Greenough and Kittredge's Bucolics and Aeneid, I.-VI., with vocabulary .....	1.60
Gudeman's Dialogus de Oratoribus .....	2.75
Keep's Essential Uses of the Moods .....	.25
Latin and Greek School Classics : See circulars for details.	
Lord's Roman Pronunciation of Latin .....	.35
Lord's Rivi Tiburtini. Metres of Horace set to Music .....	.50
Moulton's Preparatory Latin Composition .....	.80
Post's Latin at Sight .....	.80
Stickney's Cicero de Natura Deorum .....	1.40
Terence's Adelphoe, Phormio, Heauton Timorumenos. 1 vol. ....	1.00
Thacher's Madvig's Latin Grammar .....	2.25
White's Latin-English Lexicon .....	1.00
White's English-Latin Lexicon .....	1.50
White's Latin-English and English-Latin Lexicon .....	2.25

**GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,**

Boston.    New York.    Chicago.    Atlanta.    Dallas.

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S  
SHORTER LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES.

Condensed and Revised by Professor JAMES B. GREENOUGH,  
Assisted by ALBERT A. HOWARD.

---

12mo. Cloth. 371 pages. For introduction, 95 cents.

---

Space does not allow here a full description of this book, but attention is called to the following points :

**First.** Allen and Greenough's Shorter Latin Grammar does not attempt the impossible. It does not aim to be at once a brief grammar and a full one, to cover both preparatory and college Latin courses in a space sufficient for only the former.

**Second.** The reduction of size is secured not by retaining arbitrarily what one or two scholars deem essential, but by ascertaining minutely what points are involved in the study of preparatory Latin. It must be admitted that any one who attacks the problem in this way will find that a great deal more information is required for thorough reading of the preparatory texts than any *a priori* maker of a short Latin grammar would suppose.

**Third.** It has been found entirely feasible to follow the section numbering of the large Allen and Greenough Grammar, so that the full and the short grammars can be used in the same classes and the same set of references apply. If a class includes boys who are going to college and also boys who are not, the former may purchase the full grammar and the latter the short one.

**Fourth.** The Latin grammar that shall be thoroughly satisfactory under all the conditions it is to meet in thousands of schools of every sort, must be a growth, and it is believed that the experience of making a full and complete grammar and of watching the use of it in schools for years, is almost a prerequisite to the preparation of a thoroughly satisfactory small one.

---

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

# ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S NEW CAESAR

EDITED BY

JAMES B. GREENOUGH, Professor of Latin in Harvard University, B. L. D'OOGHE, Professor of Latin and Greek in Michigan State Normal College, Ypsilanti, and M. GRANT D'HELLE, recently Principal of Chauncy-Hall School, formerly Master in the Roxbury Latin School, Boston.

Seven books. 12mo. Half moreocco. Fully illustrated. 1x + 452 pages.  
With a special vocabulary of 162 pages.  
For introduction, \$1.25.

THIS new edition of Caesar's "Gallic War" keeps prominently in view the needs of the beginner, on the ground that a large majority of those who read Caesar take it up immediately after finishing their first lessons. It is believed that all this class of students' needs have been fully met in the present edition.

Professor Greenough has specially qualified himself for editing this edition by traveling and making recent investigations in France. Not only the notes, but the illustrations have profited greatly. A considerable number of the pictures in this edition are from photographs made especially for it. In other cases, pictures not previously seen in this country have been obtained. The museums have been visited and many new illustrations drawn from them. At the same time, all the standard and essential illustrations are used. It is believed that this part of the editing will be found of signal excellence and practical value.

Several reading courses are suggested, each one of which, while embracing an amount of text equal to the first four books, contains choice selections of narrative and adventure from the various books. It is believed that this feature will be especially acceptable to teachers who have found the monotony of Caesar irksome, but have seen no way to vary the course.

The text has been revised, many changes having been made, and the whole presents the commentaries in an ideal form for rapid and enjoyable reading. Quantities of long vowels are marked.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

# TEXT-BOOKS FOR HIGHER SCHOOLS.

WILLIAM C. COLLAR, Head-Master of Roxbury Latin School,  
Boston, and M. GRANT DANIELL, recently Principal  
of Chauncy-Hall School, Boston.

**Collar and Daniell's First Latin Book.** 12mo. Cloth. Illustrated.  
286 pages. For introduction, \$1.00.

**Collar and Daniell's Beginner's Latin Book.** Complete with Grammar  
Exercises, Selections for Translating, and Vocabulary. 12mo. Cloth. 283 pages.  
For introduction, \$1.00.

**Latine Reddenda.** The English-Latin exercises from "The Beginner's Latin Book."  
With Glossarium Grammaticum. 12mo. 41 pages. Paper. For introduction,  
20 cents.

With Glossarium Grammaticum and English-Latin Vocabulary, 12mo. 58 pages.  
Cloth. For introduction, 30 cents.

**Collar and Daniell's Beginner's Greek Composition.** Based mainly  
upon Xenophon's Anabasis, Book I. Sq. 16mo. Cloth. 201 pages. Illustrated.  
For introduction, 90 cents.

By WILLIAM C. COLLAR.

**Collar's Via Latina.** A new Latin Reader. 12mo. Cloth. 203 pages.  
For introduction, 75 cents.

**Collar's New Gradatim.** Revised. 16mo. Cloth. 189 pages. For  
introduction, 50 cents.

**Collar's Practical Latin Composition.** 12mo. Cloth. 268 pages. For  
introduction, \$1.00.

**Collar's Gate to Caesar.** Sq. 16mo. Cloth. 141 pages. For intro-  
duction, 40 cents.

**Caesar, Gallic War. Book II.** Edited, with Notes and a Vocabulary.  
16mo. Cloth. 96 pages. For introduction, 35 cents. *Latin and Greek School  
Classics.*

**Vergil's Aeneid. Book VII.** Issued both with and without translation.  
16mo. Cloth. Illustrated. For introduction, 45 cents. *Latin and Greek School  
Classics.*

**Collar's Shorter Eysenbach.** Eysenbach's Practical German Grammar.  
Revised and largely rewritten, with Notes to the exercises and Vocabularies.  
Revised by CLARA S. CURTIS. 12mo. Cloth. 242 pages. For introduction,  
\$1.00.

**Collar's German Lessons.** Eysenbach's Practical German Grammar.  
Revised and largely rewritten, with Notes, Selections for Reading, and Vocab-  
ularies. 12mo. Cloth. 360 pages. For introduction, \$1.20.

**Collar's English into German.** The English Exercises from Collar's  
Eysenbach's German Lessons. 12mo. Paper. 51 pages. For introduction,  
25 cents.

---

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

# SCHOOLS.

Latin School,  
Principal

loth. Illustrated.

ete with Grammar  
mo. Cloth. 283 pages.

eginner's Latin Book."  
er. For introduction,  
ulary, 12mo. 58 pages.

1. Based mainly  
01 pages. Illustrated.

Cloth. 203 pages.

189 pages. For

268 pages. For

pages. For intro-

and a Vocabulary.  
*tin and Greek School*

thout translation.  
*tin and Greek School*

German Grammar.  
ses and Vocabularies.  
s. For introduction,

erman Grammar.  
Reading, and Vocab-  
.20.

ses from Collar's  
s. For introduction,

ners,

Dallas.